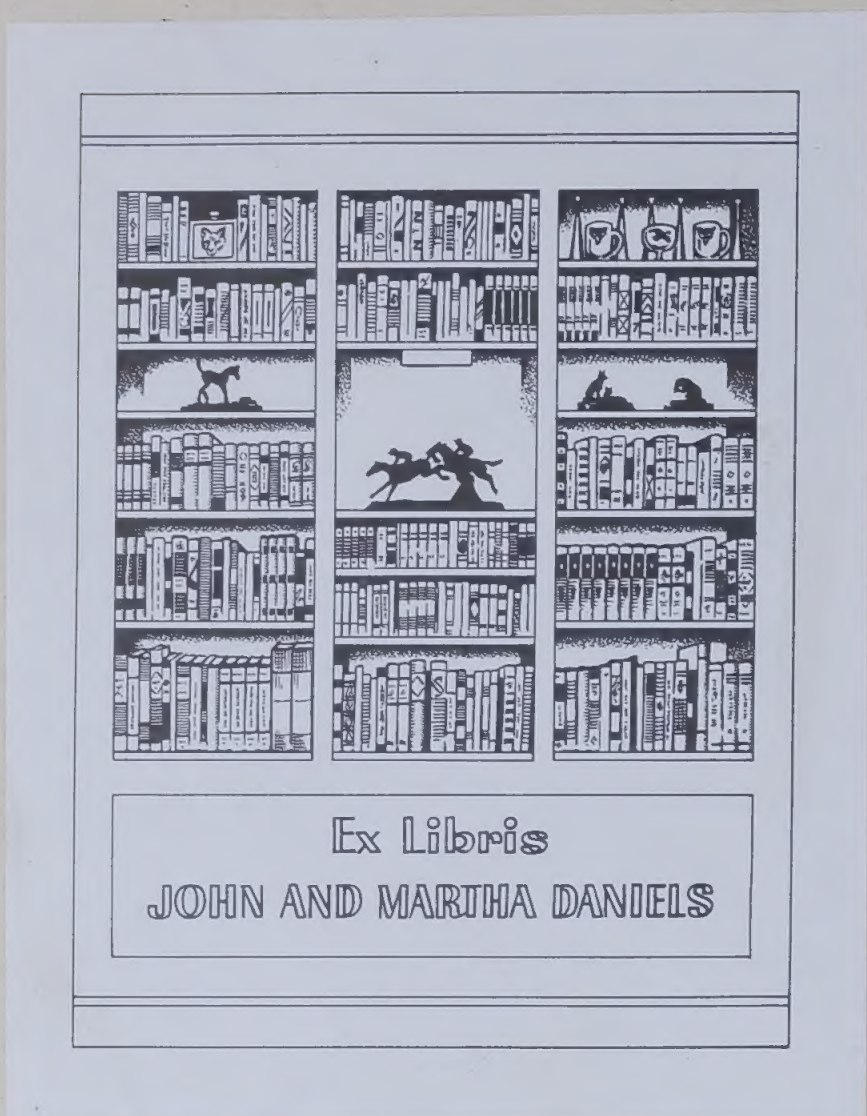






a-k  
8  
4-  
Cob













A  
GENERAL SYSTEM  
OF  
HORSEMANSHIP  
In all it's BRANCHES:

CONTAINING,

- I. Directions for the Choice of *Stallions* and *Mares*, and for Weaning and Managing of Foals, until they come to a proper Maturity for Service, fuitable to the Uses they are design'd for.
- II. The Manner of Keeping, Soiling, Training, and Exercising *Race-Horses*, and Preparing them for the Course: Also Instructions for the Choice and Management of *Hunters*; and a Supplemental Discourse concerning *Hounds*.
- III. *The Perfect Knowledge of Horses*; being a succinct Account of their various Disorders, both internal and external, and their good and bad Qualities; shewing the Seat, Cause, and Symptoms of all Diseases; with proper Recipes, and Methods of Cure, whether by manual Operation or otherwise; the like not hitherto extant in any Book of Farriery whatsoever in the *English* Tongue. Translated from the *French* Edition, published at the *Hague*, under the Inspection of the learned Dr. *Boerhaave*, by *Gasper de Saunier*, Riding-Master and Director to the Academy of *Leyden*; with the Addition of all his Father's Recipes and Remarks, who was forty Years Inspector-General of *Lewis* the XIVth's Great Stable.
- IV. The *Osteology* and *Myology* of a Horse: Or, an Anatomical Description of all the Bones and Muscles, that compose that most noble and useful Animal; pointing out their various Uses and Affections, and accounting for many other Particulars in the Oeconomy of a Horse, that are not generally known. Illustrated with near thirty Copper-plates, in which the Seats of all Diseases are not only exactly described, but with several new Instruments requisite in the Cure of them most accurately described. And to give a more perfect Idea of the different Subjects, all the Anatomical Prints, representing the Muscles, Bones, &c. are wrought off in their proper Colours.

To. which is added,

A large COLLECTION of RECIPES,  
Communicated by several Persons of Experience and Distinction:

TOGETHER WITH

TWO COMPLETE INDEXES,  
The one of DISEASES, the other of MEDICINES.

ALSO

A DICTIONARY, explaining all the Technical Terms that belong to the Stud, the Stable, the Manage, Farriery, or whatever relates to HORSES.

V O L. II.

L O N D O N :

Printed for *J. Brindley*, Bookseller to His Royal Highness the PRINCE OF WALES, in *New Bond-street*.

M.DCC.XLIII.









T O

D<sub>R</sub>. M E A D.

S I R,

**T**Hrough the great Progress that has of late Years been made in *Comparative Anatomy*, there is known to be so great a Similitude of Parts in every Species of Animals, that no Body can wonder to see me dedicate a *Treatise of the Diseases of Horses* to him who is the greatest Judge of the Diseases of Mankind.

I should not however have ventur'd to make thus free with *your Name*, if the Favours with which you have honour'd me, and the *following Work*, had not encouraged me to make this Address.

All the Advantages requisite to a thorough Skill in his Profession, seem to have been united in my Author, Monsieur *de Saunier*. With a Genius turn'd for Studying the *Nature of Horses*, he had a very large Stock  
of



## DEDICATION.

of his Father's Experience to set out upon; to which he added as much of his own, before he pretended to commit his Sentiments to *Writing*.

This Treatise then is founded not upon any *Theory*, either received or invented, but upon certain *Knowledge* and repeated *Experiments*; and perhaps it is the *first* Book of the Kind that was ever written in this Manner.

The great Pains he took to get over all the *foolish Prejudices* of the Farriers, his Predecessors, and Contemporaries; the Frankness with which he owns *how far* he was sometimes guided by them, and how many *Trials* he found requisite to make him intirely shake them off, are Qualities hardly to be found in any *other Writer* upon *Farriery*.

Every Improvement in *Natural Knowledge* must give Pleasure to Gentlemen of your *Taste* and *Sagacity*; and therefore as the Great *Boerhaave* shew'd a peculiar Regard for Monsieur de *Saurier*, so it is to be hoped one as Great will countenance his *English* Editor, who is,

S I R,

Your most obedient,

and most obliged,

Humble Servant,

JOHN BRINDLEY.



## P R E F A C E of the A U T H O R.

**I** Make no scruple to say, that it is with the Science of Horsemanship as with that of Physick; a simple Theory makes only ignorant Pretenders; there must be Practice, long and assiduous Practice, to render a Man Master of the perfect Knowledge of Horses, their Defects, their Diseases, the Causes of these latter, and the best Remedies that can be applied to them. A short Detail of the Employs through which I have passed will shew, that I have had more Opportunities than any Man living to perfect myself in this Science, concerning which I had received very ample Instructions from my Father, and for the Study of which I was born.

After having been a long time Riding-Master to the Duke du Lude, Grand-Master of the Ordnance in France, my Father's Reputation occasioned his being chosen, in 1680, to fill up the Place of Inspector of the King's great Stable, when his Majesty quitted St. Germain's to go and reside at Versailles. It was at the same time that he put me into the Royal Academy under Messieurs de Bournonville and du Pleffis, both Riding-Masters of that Academy; and under them, and Mr. Deno, who succeeded Mr. de Bournonville, it was that I completed my Knowledge in all that any way regarded the Art of Riding, and the Theory of Horsemanship.

The French King's Army having entered the Palatinate, under the Command of his Royal Highness the Dauphin, I attended the Duke of Bourbon thither, in quality of his Riding-Master; and after two Campaigns, in which I had occasion to begin the Practice of those Lessons that I had received from my Father, I was nominated Inspector of the Stud, which the King established at St. Leger in the Duchy of Monfort l'Amaury. I continued some Years in this Post, and only left it to be made Riding-Master to the Lieutenant-general Count de Montchevreuil, who was killed at the Battle of Norwingen. I went afterwards in the same Quality into the Service of the Count de Guiscard, Governor of Namur, who sent me into Frizeland, to make a considerable Purchase.

Though I had divers Opportunities, in these different Posts, to make many important Remarks, I could not help thinking that I still wanted Subjects for the making of new Experiments upon these Animals, so useful to Mankind. To satisfy this Passion, I entered myself into the Train of Provisions, and continued there to follow the Army till the Peace of Ryfwick. What a Multitude of Experiments had I opportunity to make upon such a Number of Horses, attacked with a thousand different Disorders! At the Peace, the Marquis de Courtenvaux, eldest Son of Mr. de Louvois, made me his Riding-Master; and it was then that I formed him a Stud at Montmirel in Brie. I returned at last to practise under my Father in the King's great Stable, and remained there till 1702, when entering Riding-Master in Italy, under Lieutenant-general Count de Medavi, I made three Campaigns there, during which, the Mortality that prevailed among the Horses furnished me with Opportunities without number to add to my former Experience in all Cases, and make my-  
a self



self perfect in my Art. I then entered again into the Train, where, in quality of Inspector-general, I had under my Direction almost two thousand five hundred Horses, which, both in Italy and Germany, had among them all Sorts of Maladies.

These are the different Schools in which I perfected, by a practice of more than 27 Years, the Precepts that I had received from my Masters, and in which I have experimentally known the Good from the Bad amongst that prodigious Number of Remedies that some Authors have so amply collected together, often without having made trial of one, and those many others that the greatest part of our Farriers know only by Tradition, and which they apply indifferently to all Sorts of Horses, without examining either their Constitution or Descent, (for the same Distemper must often be treated differently in a Spanish Horse and a Frizeland one) or even the true Cause of their Disorder, which however ought to determine the Nature of the Remedy.

The Work which I give the Publick therefore is composed of Lessons that I had received from my Father, (who I may venture to say, without speaking too much in his favour, was looked upon to be a very skilful Man) and the great Number of Experiments that I have made upon all Sorts of Subjects, and in all Sorts of Diseases; and can put the well-known Probatum at the Bottom of every Remedy, because I insert none that I have not tried more than once. For the 22 Years that I have practised in the illustrious University of Leyden, under the Protection of its Guardians and the venerable Magistrate, my Diligence has often occasioned my being sent for to different Parts, to restore Health to such Horses as ignorant Farriers had almost sent to the Dogs; and I have had the good Fortune to succeed.

Those who make use of this Work may have the same Success. It is the Labour of two Men's Lives, the Fruit of their Application and continual Study. I freely surrender it up to the Publick, in hopes of meeting with its Indulgence, and that I may spur on by it the natural Dispositions of some others, who may in Course of Time make new Discoveries.

I might make an Article here regarding the Stile, in which this Book is writ: But I think it sufficient to observe to my Readers, that I neither write as a Wit myself, nor for Gentlemen of Wit. Educated in the Stable, in the Stud, in the Manage, in the midst of Horses in the Army, I have never been a Member of the French Academy. I write for those, who, like myself, make it their Profession to be among Horses; it is enough that I make myself understood by them, by a proper Use of the Terms of Art, in which I presume I have pretty well succeeded.



# C O N T E N T S.

Chap. i.	<b>O</b> F making a proper choice of Stallions and Breeding-Mares, according to the several Uses they are designed for	Page 1
Chap. ii.	The manner of Soiling Horses	2
Chap. iii.	The manner of weaning and ordering Colts	ibid.
	A short Discourse of Hunting-Horses	3
	Observations and Instructions concerning Hounds	4
	The Perfect Knowledge of a Horse.	
Chap. i.	To know the Age of a Horse	5
Chap. ii.	Of the Barbs	6
Chap. iii.	Of the Lampas	7
Chap. iv.	Of Giggs upon the Lips	ibid.
Chap. v.	Of Gag-Teeth	ibid.
Chap. vi.	A Blow on the Eye	8
Chap. vii.	How to know a Moon-eyed Horse	ibid.
Chap. viii.	The manner of treating a Moon-eyed Horse	ibid.
Chap. ix.	How to unnerve a Horse	9
Chap. x.	A Remedy for a Web in the Eye	ibid.
	For a Horse that has a disordered Sight	ibid.
	Pills to purge the Brain of a Horse that has Sore-Eyes	ibid.
	A Powder to dissipate a Web	10
Chap. ii.	A Remedy for Wounds in the Eyes	ibid.
Chap. xii.	Of a Whitlow in the Eye	11
Chap. xiii.	Of the Strangles	ibid.
	The Bastard Strangles	12
	Morfoundering	ibid.
	Stranguillion	13
	Contagious Head-Evil	ibid.
Chap. xiv.	Of the Glanders	15
	To know the Glanders of the Glands	ibid.
	The Glanders from the Spine or Back-bone Marrow	ibid.
Chap. xv.	Of the different Kinds of Farcies	16
Chap. xvi.	Of the Mange, Itch, or Scab	20
Chap. xvii.	Of the Old-Reds	21
Chap. xviii.	Tetters or Ring-Worms	22
Chap. xix.	Of the Foundering of Horses	ibid.
Chap. xx.	Of Melted Grease	24
Chap. xxi.	The Stag-Evil	25
Chap. xxii.	The Vives	26
Chap. xxiii.	Of the Gripes or Colick	ibid.
Chap. xxiv.	Of the Vertigo or Spanish Evil	ibid.
Chap. xxv.	Remedy for Numbness of the Senses, which resembles a Vertigo	29
Chap. xxvi.	Of the Fever, or Fiery-Evil	30
Chap. xxvii.	Of the Fashions	31
Chap. xxviii.	Of Incontinence of Urine	32
Chap. xxix.	Of the Anticor, or Anticow	33
Chap. xxx.	Of a Purfive, or Broken-winded-Horse	34
Chap. xxvii.	* Heaving of the Flank	* 33
* Chap. xxviii.	Of Chest Foundering	* 34
* Chap. xxix.	Worms in Horses	35
* Chap. xxx.	Swelling of the Testicles	ibid.
Chap. xxxi.	Remedies against the Gangreen	36
Chap. xxxii.	A Remedy for the Bite of a Serpent, or other venomous Animal	37
Chap. xxxiii.	How to purge a Horse gently and fatten him	38
Chap. xxxiv.	For a Horse whose Tongue is cut with the Bridle or Halter	39
Chap. xxxv.	The best way of cutting a Horse's Tail	40
Chap. xxxvi.	The manner of gelding a Horse well, and treating him during the Cure	ibid.
Chap. xxxvii.	Hurts on the Withers, or Wither wrung	49
Chap. xxxviii.	Navel Galls	42
Chap. xxxix.	Of Impostumations in the Withers	ibid.
Chap. xl.	Faintness for want of Nourishment	43
		Chap.



# CONTENTS.

	Page
Chap. xli. <i>Of the Pole-Evil</i>	ibid.
Chap. xlii. <i>Of a Shoulder-slip or Shoulder-wrench</i>	ibid.
Chap. xliii. <i>Of the Spunge</i>	46
Chap. xliv. <i>Stiff Legs</i>	47
Chap. xlv. <i>Of an Ox-Kneed-Horse</i>	ibid.
Chap. xlvi. <i>Of the three Kinds of Splints</i>	ibid.
Chap. xlvii. <i>Of the three Kinds of Osselets</i>	49
Chap. xlviii. <i>Wind-Galls</i>	
Chap. xlix. <i>How to give a Horse the Fire</i>	51
Chap. l. <i>The Mallenders</i>	52
Chap. li. <i>Bow-Legs</i>	54
Chap. lii. <i>Tottering-Legs</i>	ibid.
Chap. liii. <i>A Horse that Forges</i>	ibid.
Chap. liv. <i>A Blow on the Nerve</i>	ibid.
Chap. lv. <i>A Blow between the Fetlock and the Heel</i>	56
Chap. lvi. <i>A Simple Javart, or Core in the Pastern</i>	57
Chap. lvii. <i>For a Prick in a Horse's Foot</i>	59
Chap. lviii. <i>A Halter Cast</i>	ibid.
Chap. lix. <i>Scratches or Chops</i>	ibid.
Chap. lx. <i>Mules</i>	60
Chap. xli. <i>Maltlongs</i>	ibid.
Chap. xlii. <i>Of a Cloven or Ox-foot</i>	61
Chap. xliii. <i>Of a Seyme</i>	ibid.
Chap. xliv. <i>Of a Bleyme</i>	62
Chap. xlv. <i>New Frogs or Frusbes</i>	63
Chap. xlvi. <i>Incastellated or Narrow-beels</i>	64
Chap. xlvii. <i>Incastellated Feet</i>	ibid.
Chap. xlviii. <i>A Numbness or Stunning of the Hoof</i>	66
Chap. xlix. <i>For a Horse that is Tender-Soled</i>	ibid.
Chap. lxx. <i>Of the Cepelet</i>	68
Chap. lxxi. <i>Of the Esperon or Spur</i>	ibid.
Chap. lxxii. <i>Relaxed or Extended Nerves</i>	ibid.
Chap. lxxiii. <i>Disorders in the Haunch</i>	69
Chap. lxxiv. <i>A False-Step</i>	ibid.
Chap. lxxv. <i>Of the Comb or Crown Scab</i>	70
Chap. lxxvi. <i>Watery Sores on the Legs</i>	71
Chap. lxxvii. <i>A Remedy for Warts</i>	72
Chap. lxxviii. <i>Fleshy Frogs</i>	ibid.
Chap. lxxix. <i>Full, or clogged-up Feet</i>	73
Chap. lxxx. <i>Circled Feet</i>	ibid.
Chap. lxxxi. <i>Battered Soles</i>	ibid.
Chap. lxxxii. <i>The Spone-Spavin</i>	74
Chap. lxxxiii. <i>Spavins, or Blood-Spavins</i>	ibid.
Chap. lxxxiv. <i>Varices</i>	76
Chap. lxxxv. <i>Veffigon</i>	ibid.
Chap. lxxxvi. <i>The Curb</i>	77
Chap. lxxxvii. <i>Contains general Remedies</i>	78
<i>A Treatise of the Stud.</i>	86
<i>Instructions for Commissioners who go to buy Horses in foreign Countries</i>	88
<i>To preserve and restore a Stable infected by the different Maladies of Horses</i>	89
<i>The Anatomical Description of the Bones and Muscles of a Horse</i>	90
<i>Explications of the Bones of the Head.</i>	92
<i>Explication of the Muscles of a Horse's Body</i>	93
<i>Of the Muscles, their Number to each Part, and their Offices</i>	107
<i>Explanation of the References that point out the Muscles in the Plate</i>	111
<i>A Supplement consisting of choice Receipts for most Distempers to which Horses are incident</i>	113
<i>Representation of the Jugular Veins</i>	123
<i>Figures representing the Moulds for cutting large Ears and other Instruments</i>	ibid.
<i>Descriptions of the different Sorts of Shoes, &amp;c.</i>	124
<i>A Table of the Remedies, &amp;c.</i>	127
<i>Indexes to Volume II.</i>	132





A

# GENERAL SYSTEM

OF

# HORSEMANSHIP

In all its BRANCHES.

VOL. II.

CHAP. I.

*Of making a proper Choice of Stallions and Breeding Mares, according to the several Uses they are design'd for.*



MONG the many Authors who have wrote on this Subject, Sir *William Hope* mistakes as to the *Spanish* Horse, No Body at present makes use of them, and they have never been known to get any thing good in *England*: But the *Arabians* or *Barbs* are much the best; tho' of late Years our Breed is spoiled in *England* in all sorts of Horses, by beginning to make use of them too early. By this Means we never know the Goodness of a Horse, while some People attribute to an Infirmary, either in the Horse, or the Mare, the Fault which is only in themselves. For by putting them to Running, Hunting, Travelling the Road, Drawing, or any Kind of Labour, before they come to be turn'd of four Years Old, we run the Hazard of spoiling them; and then they should be very gently used till they are turned of five, and still but moderately till after Six, which will make them prove more lasting and hardy.

CHAP.  
I.

B

But



CHAP.  
I, II, III.

But we have of late Years run too much into the *Barb* and *Arabian* kind; for, thro' in a great many Studs they have brought them to a Size tall enough, they want Substance to carry Weight; which is now the Cause so much complained of in *England*. We are also apt to breed out of too old Mares, as well as cover with too old Horses; whereas I would advise always to put an old Horse to a young Mare, and never cover an old Mare but with a young Horse. For an old Horse and an old Mare very often bring weakly Colts, such as are subject to Humours and other Infirmities, as weak Eyes, Spavins, and Ring-bones, &c. especially if the Sire or Dam has had the like Infirmities, by reason of their being hard strained in their youthful Days. If a fine, fresh, young Horse, that has Size and Strength, got by an *Arabian* or *Barb*, was put into training at four Years old, and kept until five Years old, and then tried whether he can run or not, provided he had been all along in careful Hands, and not hurried in his Exercise, but brought on gradually, he would certainly beget better Colts than his Sire. He must have been, however, out of a sound, healthful, young, fresh Mare.

I would not have a young Horse, that is designed for a Stallion, ever to have any Physick; for that only impairs Nature, and makes their Colts weakly. There ought to be the same regard as to the Mares; for it is a general Rule, that the first Colt of a hard strained Mare proves weakly; they wanting a natural Soil to bring their Body into good or regular Habit. For foiling them some time before, carries the Dregs of the Physick off, and brings their Bodies to be cool and temperate. It is a general Observation, that putting a Horse and Mare together, that have been both at hard Meat a considerable Time, may be liable to produce a dwindling Colt. One thing more ought to be observed, which is too often practised; that a Mare that brings good Colts, is apt to be put to Horse every Year; which must certainly weaken much her Off-spring; for if you cover a Mare every Year, you are obliged to take your Colt off early, otherwise you weaken the Mare, and likewise the Colt within her, which is greatly prejudicial to both; whereas if you cover a Mare but every other Year, you may then let the Colt suck till the latter End of *February*, which is more nourishing to it at that Age, than any Feed that can be given it.

## CHAP. II.

### *The Manner of Soiling Horses.*

**T**HERE are different Manners of Soiling in different Places; but these are the most approved of, especially in the North of *England*, viz.

In the Spring, as soon as you can have fresh Grass, give him a little of it two or three Times a Day, in order to keep his Body cool; whereby he won't want so much Water as they usually do in the Time of Covering, which when given too plentifully often causes broken Wind.

I by no Means approve of physicking a Stallion, only towards the latter End of *January*. If necessary, in *August*, take a little Blood from him, and if subject to Humours, give him walking Exercise to take them off.

As to breeding Mares, there is little Direction to be given, only let them have a Hovel to shelter themselves from the Inclemency of the Weather; and when there is a Scarcity of Grass, give them good Hay, and if of a tender Constitution, a little Corn.

N. B. *Always chuse your Paddocks or Pastures in an upland dry Ground.*

## CHAP. III.

### *The Manner of weaning and ordering Colts.*

**W**HEN you take your Colt from the Mare, put him into a Stable (not too warm); put a Halter upon him, and learn him by Degrees, and gentle Methods, to walk in after you. Stroak him with your Hand in the Stable; use him to be rubbed and clapt all over, every Day. Taking up his Legs, with your Hand pat his Feet, that by so doing he may be less shy when he comes to be shod. This must be practised till such time as he comes to be broke.

CHAP.



## A short Discourse of HUNTING HORSES.

**T**HERE are already extant so many Books concerning Sports, and every common Huntsman is so well acquainted with the general Rules of his Profession, that it is needless to expatiate here, upon a Subject universally known: I shall therefore touch chiefly upon such Particulars as are the Effect of Experience only, and not hitherto made public, as they were communicated to me by some of the oldest and best Sportsmen.

The Qualities of a good Hunter have a near Affinity with those required in a Running Horse; only in the Choice of a Hunter, you are to look for Strength more than in a Running Horse; the Fatigue of the former being often equally violent, and usually of longer Continuance than that of the latter. In a Word, the Business of the Course is limited and regular, that of the Chace altogether uncertain, and subject to Chances, or the Rider's Disposition.

In the Beginning give your Hunter moderate Exercise, till he has got Meat in his Belly. He need not be kept, like the other, to an exact Regimen of Diet: Any clean Food is fit for him, and he may eat what Quantity he pleases.

After an hard Chace, walk your Horse till he is quite cold; then take a Drachm of Saffron, pounded, half an Ounce of *Venice* or *London* Treacle, and a Spoonful of Honey. Dissolve them together in Beer over a gentle Fire, and give for a Draught.

The Cordial Balls, made according to the Prescription in this Work, are also excellent on the same Occasion. They likewise may be dissolved in Beer, and given in the same Manner. A small Ball is better than a large one in this Case, when the Stomach of the Horse is empty.

When your Horse is in the Stable, let him be well dress'd, and his Feet wash'd with warm Water; then give him a little scalded Bran, with some Beans in it.

Other good things, that may either of them be given after a Chace, are, an Ounce of Crocus Metallorum, mix'd with his Bran, or given in Corn; or only a Handful of Hempseed mix'd with a common Feed. Either of these, in case of the Failure of Appetite, will be very likely to restore it.

When you use the Crocus Metallorum, let the Corn be moistened; otherwise the Crocus will fall to the Bottom of the Manger, or be liable to be blown away by the Horse's Breath.

When a Hunting Horse has occasion to be purged, he should have three successive Doses, which may be thus prepared:

Take Succotrine Aloes, one Ounce and a quarter; Jalap Root, two Drachms; Ginger grated, one Drachm; Balsam of Sulphur, one Drachm; Chemical Oil of Anniseed, two Drachms: Make the whole up with Syrup of Buckthorn into a Ball.

This, upon a Medium, is sufficient for one Dose; but the Quantity may be lessen'd or increas'd according to the Strength of the Horse, or other Circumstances.

Tie up your Horse's Head an Hour before you give him his Purge, and let him stand two Hours after without Food. Give him warm Water in working. If the above Purge should not be strong enough, let some Additions be made, according to the Strength of your Horse, for his second and third Dose. Make this as stiff as possible, that it may not so soon dissolve in the Stomach, and thereby have a better Effect.

After Purging, exercise your Hunter moderately, as you do your Running Horse, in order to increase his Wind.

When you design to engage in a hard Hunting-Match, such as the Stag, Buck, or Fox, let your Horse be thoroughly prepared the preceding Day.

In other Particulars, the Hunting Horse comes under the same Regulations as have already been given in this Work.



## Observations and Instructions concerning Hounds.

**T**Hough Dogs are not strictly a proper Subject in a Book of Horsemanship; yet, as I can say a few Things concerning them upon the Authority of Mr. *Thomas Johnson*, (Huntsman to his Grace the Duke of *Richmond*, and one of the Keepers of the New Forest in *Hampshire*) I shall insert them here for the Use of the Curious.

It is proper always to breed out of fresh Hounds, and to cross their Strain continually, that they may never be too near a-kin.

A Dog that is any way cross shap'd should have a Bitch as contrary as possible. Thus, for Example, if a Dog be too long in the Fork, chuse a short Bitch to mend the Breed. But the finest Shape in the World should never induce you to breed from a Dog, unless he has at the same time a very good Nose, an open Nostril, and is well winded.

Other Qualifications, requisite in a Dog to breed from, are his having a good Back and Forehand; his being short-jointed, round, and well footed: In a Word, his being stout, and of a bold Appearance. The contrary Qualities to any of these should make you reject a Dog for this Purpose.

After Hounds have been upon a Chace, and when they can have two or three Days Rest, Flowers of Sulphur and Crocus Metallorum are excellent in their Meat. Two Pounds of the Sulphur, and four Ounces of the Crocus, is sufficient for 40 Couple of Hounds. Too much Crocus is unsafe, a single Pound being enough to make 30 Couple bring up their Meat.

As to purging of Hounds, it should be always done four Times a Year, and oftner upon extraordinary Occasions.

The Purge should consist of Syrup of Buckthorn, Cream of Tartar, *Epsom* Salts, and Sweet Oil, all mix'd together with their Meat. Let the Quantities of each be proportioned to the Number of Dogs, and the Nature of their Case.

Every three Hours after the Purge is given, let them have a little other Meat very thin, and made warm, to work it off.

It is indeed the best Way, on all Occasions, to make the Meat thin; and the leanest Dogs should be let in to it first, that they may grow in Flesh.

Hounds of all Sorts may be fed and purged in the same Manner, and therefore there is no Occasion for any Distinction on that Subject.

To prevent Madneſs in a Hound, it is proper, towards the latter End of *May*, to boil about four Pounds of Liverwort in a Copper of *Mange*, or Dogs Meat; but let no Flesh be boiled in it. This Quantity is sufficient for 20 Couple of Hounds, about the Changing of the *Midsummer* Moon, when they are more subject to grow mad than at any other Time of the Year; which perhaps may be attributed to the Overflowing of the Blood. It is always necessary, in such Cases, to bleed before you give them the above Prescription.

For a Dog that is poison'd take seven Grains of Emetic Tartar, and five or six Grains of Resin of Jalap; which mix up with *Venice* Treacle.

This Medicine is of quick Operation, and works immediately by Vomit or Stool.

Give your Dog some Liquid immediately after taking it, to wash his Mouth, and prevent its nauseating his Stomach, which might occasion him to fling it up before it has the Effect.

If the Mange should get among your Hounds, give them Flowers of Sulphur in Milk every Morning for one Week, and then bleed in the Neck. Afterwards take Tobacco Stalks three Pounds; steep them in four Quarts of Chamber-lye three or four Days; then squeeze them dry, and take half a Pound of Flowers of Sulphur, and as much Bole Armoniac, which put in a Pot, and let them boil half an Hour; then add Oil of Turpentine, and Train Oil, of each a Pint; boil the Whole over a slow Fire for five Minutes, and pour off into a Pot for Use. You apply it by tying a Rag to a Stick, and rubbing the Mangy-part. It is a never-failing Cure.

These Remarks, though few in Number, and very short, will be found of great Value to all Huntsmen, and Gentlemen who love the Sport. It is not the Number of Instructions, but their Propriety, and the Confirmation of long Experience, that does all in the Treatment either of Horses or Hounds.



T H E  
P E R F E C T K N O W L E D G E  
O F  
H O R S E S.

C H A P. I.

*To know the Age of a Horse.*

**A** HORSE that is fit for Work should have forty Teeth; twenty four Grinders, which teach us nothing; and sixteen others, which all have their Names, and discover his Age. CHAP. I.

As Mares have usually no Tusks, their Teeth are only thirty six. Those that have Tusks are esteemed barren; fit for Service, but not for the Stud: For, being warmer than others, they seldom have any Foals; except in a temperate Country, and some other Season than the Month of *May*; which however is the Time of getting them covered.

A Colt is foaled without Teeth. In a few Days he puts out four, which are called *Pincers*, or *Nippers*. Soon after appear the four *Separaters*, next to the *Pincers*. It is sometimes three or four Months before the next, called *Corner-Teeth*, push forth. These twelve *Colt's Teeth*, in the Front of the Mouth, continue without Alteration till the Colt is two Years, or two Years and a half old: Which makes it difficult, without great Care, to avoid being imposed on, during that Interval, if the Seller finds it for his Interest to make the Colt pass for either younger or older than he really is. The only Rule you have then to judge by, is his Coat, and the Hairs of his Mane and Tail. A Colt of one Year has a supple rough Coat, resembling that of a Water-Spaniel, and the Hair of his Mane and Tail feel like Flax, and hang like a Rope untwisted; whereas a Colt of two Years has a flat Coat, and strait Hairs, like a grown Horse.

At about two Years and a half old, sometimes sooner, sometimes later, according as he has been fed, a Horse begins to change his Teeth. Soft Nourishment, as Grass in particular, will forward, and a firm Diet in the Stable will retard his Change. The *Pincers*, which come the first, are also the first that fall; so that at three Years he has four Horse's, and eight Colt's Teeth, which are easily known apart, the former being larger, flatter, and yellower than the other, and streaked from the End quite into the Gums. These four Horse *Pincers* have in the middle of their Extremities a black Hole, very deep; whereas those of the Colt are round and white. When the Horse is coming four Years old, he loses his four *Separaters*, or middle Teeth, and puts forth four others, which follow the same Rule as the *Pincers*. He has now eight Horse's Teeth, and four Colt's. At five Years old he sheds the four *Corner*, which are his last *Colt's Teeth*, and is called a Horse. During this Year also his four *Tusks* (which are chiefly peculiar to Horses) come behind the others, the lower ones often four Months before the upper: But, whatever may be vulgarly thought, a Horse that has the two lower Tusks, if he has not the upper, may be judged to be under five Years old, unless the other Teeth shew the contrary: For some Horses, that live to be very old, never have any upper Tusks at all. The two lower Tusks are one of the most certain Rules that a Horse is coming five Years old, notwithstanding his Colt's Teeth may not be all gone.

It often happens that your Jockeys and Breeders, to make their Colts seem five Years old when they are but four, pull out their last Colt's Teeth: But if all the Colt's Teeth are gone, and no Tusks appear, you may be certain this Trick has been played. Another Artifice they use, is to beat the Bars every Day with a wooden Mallet, in the Place where the Tusks are to appear, in order to make them seem hard, as if the Tusks were just ready to cut.

When a Horse is coming six Years old, the two lower *Pincers* fill up, and, instead of the Holes above-mentioned, shew only a black Spot. Between six and seven, the two Middle



CHAP.  
II.

Teeth fill up in the same Manner, and between seven and eight, the Corner Teeth do the like; after which it is said to be impossible to know certainly the Age of a Horse, he having no longer any Mark in his Mouth. You can indeed only have recourse to the Tusks, and the Situation of the Teeth, of which I shall now speak.

For the Tusks, you must with your Finger feel the Inside of them, from the Point quite to the Gum. If the Tusk be pointed, flat, and has two little Channels within-side, you may be certain the Horse is not old, and at the utmost only coming ten. Between eleven and twelve the two Channels are reduced to one, which after twelve is quite gone, and the Tusks are as round within, as they are without. You have no Guide then but the Situation of the Teeth. The longest Teeth are not always a Sign of the greatest Age, but their hanging over and pushing forwards; as their meeting perpendicularly is a certain Token of Youth.

To come to the Explication of the Plates: Some, while they see certain little Holes in the middle of the Teeth, as in the first, third, and fourth Figure, where they are small in the middle, and something less in the corner Tooth, imagine that such Horses are but in their seventh Year, without Regard to the Situation the Teeth take as they grow old. When Horses are young, their Teeth meet perpendicularly, as in the first Figure; but grow longer and push forwards with Age, as in the following Figures. Besides, the Mouth of a young Horse is very fleshy within, in the Palate, and his Lips are firm and hard. On the contrary, the Inside of an old Horse's Mouth is lean both above and below, and seems to have only the Skin upon the Bones: The Lips are soft, and easy to turn up with the Hand.

All Horses are not marked in the same manner, but some naturally and others artificially. The natural Mark is called *Begue*; and some ignorant Persons imagine such Horses are marked all their Lives, because for many Years they find a little Hole, or a kind of Void in the middle of the *Separators* and *corner Teeth*: But when the Tusks are grown round, as well within as without, and the Teeth point forwards, there is room to conjecture, in proportion as they advance from Year to Year, what the Horse's Age may be, without regarding the Cavity above-mentioned.

The artificial Manner is made use of by the Jews and Jockeys, who mark their Horses, after the Age of being known, to make them appear only six or seven Years old. They do it in this manner: They throw down the Horse, to have him more at Command, and with a Steel-Graver, like what is used for Ivory, hollow the middle Teeth a little, and the corner ones somewhat more; then fill the Holes with a little Rosin, Pitch, Sulphur, or some Grains of Wheat, which they burn in with a Bit of hot Wire, made in proportion to the Hole. This Operation they repeat from time to time, till they give the Hole a lasting Black, in imitation of Nature. But, in spite of all they can do, the hot Iron makes a little yellowish Circle round these Holes, like what it would leave upon Ivory. They have another Trick therefore, to prevent Detection; which is, to make the Horse foam from time to time, after having rubbed his Mouth, Lips, and Gums, with Salt, and the Crumb of Bread dried and powdered with Salt. This Foam hides the Circle made by the Iron.

Another thing they cannot do, is to counterfeit young Tusks, it being out of their power to make those two Crannies above-mentioned, which are given by Nature. With Files they may make them sharper or flatter, but then they take away the shining natural Enamel: So that one may always know, by these Tusks, Horses that are past seven, till they come to twelve or thirteen.

Having thus taught how to know a Horse's Age, it is proper to describe his Defects, and the Maladies he is subject to. I begin with the Defects of the Mouth, which may destroy a Horse without any Distemper, especially if a Man is oblig'd to continue his Journey, when the Horse cannot eat nor drink without Pain.

CHAP. II.

*Of the Barbs.*

**I**F your Horse does not drink, look under his Tongue, and see if he has not two fleshy Excrecences on the Under-Palate, like little Bladders. It seems to be a mere Trifle; but these however will hinder a Horse from drinking as usual; and as he does not drink freely, he eats the less, and languishes from Day to Day, perhaps, without any one's taking Notice of it. When you have discovered the Disease, the Remedy is very easy. You are only to open



open the Horſe's Mouth, with a ſort of Iron that all Farriers have, or ought to have, called a Colt's Foot, and then cut off the two Bladders with a Pair of Sciffars. Some waſh their Mouths, after having blooded them with the Horn, as the meaneſt Farrier knows how, and then rub it well with Juice of Garlick, Salt, and Vinegar. This may do good, and can do no harm; but the main Work is to cut off the *Barbs*, as above directed.

CHAP.  
III, IV,  
V.

C H A P. III.

*Of Gag-Teeth.*

**T**HIS is known by opening the Mouth of a Horſe, and looking at his Upper-Palate, to ſee if the Fleſh comes down below the inner Teeth. This gives him Pain in eating his Oats, and even his Hay when it is too harſh; tho' he can very well manage Bran, Graſs, or kind Hay. The Remedy is as eaſy as that for the *Barbs*: It is only putting the Colt's Foot into his Mouth, and burning him with a hot Iron, taking of a Bit off Fleſh about as big as a Bean, which muſt be done delicately near the Teeth. Give him afterwards, for two or three Days, ſcalded Bran inſtead of Oats, and then he will come to his Feeding as uſual.

C H A P. IV.

*Of Giggs upon the Lips.*

**W**HEN you have looked in the Horſe's Mouth, without finding any of the two Diſorders above, you muſt turn up his Lips, both upper and under, and perhaps you may find ſeveral ſmall Elevations, like little white Bliſters, which make the Inſide of the Lips uneven. This Defect may even be felt with the Finger, and is what hinders Horſes from eating as uſual. To cure it, you muſt take the End of a good Iron Nail, beat thin and made ſharp, and ſcarify the Lips within-ſide both above and below, as directed hereafter.

Let as little Blood as poſſible come out of the Scarification. Bleed him afterwards with the Horn in the miſt of the Upper-Palate, between the two Tuſks and the corner Teeth; but carefully avoid entering a Cavity over-againſt the Corners, becauſe thro' that you may bleed him to Death. If thro' the Unſkilfulneſs of the Operator, a Horſe be pricked in this Place, immediately take a Nut-shell, or any thing elſe of the ſame Figure, with a little Bit of Spunge, or Lint, or fine Tow, enough to fill the Shell near half; and having wetted it, and rolled it in powdered Red-Lead, put it in the Shell, and apply it to the Orifice, binding it on with a Bandage over the Noſe. If it ſtay on two Hours, the Blood is ſtenched.

To return to the Bleeding. When it is ſkilfully performed, without any Accident attending, and the Horſe has been ſcarified, waſh his Mouth with Juice of Garlick, Salt, and Vinegar, rubbing it well with a Rag faſtened to the End of a Stick. Some Hours after give him a Maſh of ſcalded Bran, and afterwards feed him as uſual. The three Defects above-mentioned, ſeldom happen to any but young Horſes, whoſe Mouths are fleſhy.

C H A P. V.

*Of Gag-Teeth.*

**T**HIS Defect happens rarely to young Horſes, and is to be diſcovered by putting the Colt's Foot into their Mouths, and looking at the large Grinders, which in this Caſe appear unequal, and in eating catch hold of the Inſide of the Cheeks, cauſing great Pain, and making them ſometimes reſuſe their Food. You may obſerve alſo as the Horſe eats, that ſmall Pellets of chew'd Hay will ſlip out between the Teeth and Cheeks, into the Manger, or upon the Ground. The only Cure is to make the Teeth even, which may be done an eaſier Way than the Farriers commonly take, who ſtrike off the Parts that ſtick out with a Mallet and Chiſſel, and endanger the looſening of all the Teeth, beſides wounding, or even killing the Horſe, in Caſe the Hand ſhould ſlip. This is indeed the ſhorteſt Way; but mine is much the ſafeſt. It is only to take a good Steel File, not too coarſe, about two Fingers broad, and one thick, which is the ſame Size as the Farriers uſe to raſp the Hoof, after ſhoeing; put it in the Horſe's Mouth, between the great Grinders, ſometimes on one ſide, ſometimes on the other; which will oblige him to chew upon it, and by that Means wear off himſelf all the Inequalities, and make the Teeth even. After which he will eat better, and his Food will afford him more Nutriment.

If



CHAP. VI, VII, VIII. If any Horfe should be found who refuses his Food, and yet it is not sick, nor has any of the above-mentioned Defects, examine well his Manger, his Rack, the Pail he drinks out of, and every Place about him: For the least Nastiness or Stink turns a Horfe's Stomach, there not being a more cleanly Animal under the Sun. We now proceed to other Accidents, and especially those of the Eyes.

## C H A P. VI.

*A Blow on the Eye.*

**I**F a Horfe receives a Blow only on the Eye-lid, and the vitrous Humour be not hurt, the Cure is very easy. When his Eye appears swelled and inflamed from any such Accident, take Armenian Bole, powder it fine, and dilute it with White-Wine Vinegar and the Whites of Eggs to a pappy Consistence; use it five or six Times a Day till the Cure is effected, and then with warm Water clear away all the remaining Filth, which will enable him to open his Eye. But if the vitrous Humour has been hurt, after the foregoing Remedy apply the following.

*Take Rose and Plantain-Water of each 4 Ounces; Tutty in fine Powder 2 Drams; use it with a Feather.* Introduce it gently, opening the Eyelids, that you may come at the Speck. If the Whiteness be great, take 4 Drams of Tutty instead of two. You may apply it five or six times a Day.

## C H A P. VII.

*How to know Moon-eyed Horses.*

**A** Moon-eyed Horfe is known by his weeping, and keeping his Eyes almost shut at the Beginning of the Distemper. As the Moon changes he gradually recovers his Sight; and in a Fortnight or three Weeks sees as well as before. Your Dealers, when they have such a Horfe to sell at the time of his weeping, always tell you that he has got a Bit of Straw or Hay in his Eye, or that he has received some Blow. They also take great Care to wipe away the Humour, to prevent its being seen. But a Man should trust only himself in buying of Horses, and above all be very exact in examining the Eyes. In this he must have regard to the Time and Place where he makes the Examination. Bad Eyes may appear good in Winter, when the Snow is upon the Ground; and often good ones appear bad, according to the Position of the Horfe. Never examine a Horfe's Sight by the side of a white Wall, where the Dealers will chuse to shew one that is Moon-eyed. The surest Way is to take him just at the Stable-Door, when only his Head peeps out, and all his Body is still within; or to examine him in a dark Stable, with a Candle. If the White of the Eye appears reddish at bottom, or the Colour of a withered Leaf, I would not advise you to purchase that Horfe.

A Moon-eyed or lunatic Horfe has always one Eye bigger than the other, and above his Lids you may discover Wrinkles or Circles.

If he has been attacked but twice or three times with this Disorder, there are some hopes of a Cure, by pursuing the following Directions. At least you have a Chance to save one Eye, and prevent the Deformity of the other. If you take him at his being first affected, both Eyes will become as good as ever. This Distemper proceeds from different Causes, which every one is not acquainted with.

When young Colts have eat too much Oats, or other Grain, they are apt to strain the Vessels which feed the Eye. Others have the Eyes diseased by being rid and fatigued too young; and others owe it to the Soil where they were brought up. Fat, humid, or marshy Ground, which breeds a very juicy Grass, may cause the Head to swell with Humours, and weaken the Sight. Grey, Isabel, Whitish, are Flea-bitten Horses, or more subject than others to these Disorders. Not that any Colour is exempt from it, or that any Pasture may not produce it.

## C H A P. VIII.

*The Manner of treating a Moon-eyed Horfe.*

**P**UT him first to a Bran Diet, and give him no Oats during the whole Course. Make an Incision along the Vein that passes from the Temple to the Corner of the Eye, and a little above it. Having opened the Skin with a delicate Hand, take a small *wild Goat's Horn*, and an Incision-Knife, and divide all the Flesh from the Artery without cutting it. As you go



go on, pass the Goat's Horn underneath; and then with a Needle and strong double Silk, well waxed, make a Ligature on the upper side of the Artery; then open the Vein long-ways, without cutting it, and let it bleed for some time. When you have drawn away Blood enough, which will be in a Quarter of an Hour, pass the Goat's Horn again under the Artery, and in the same manner make another Ligature next to the Eye. Then cut the Artery between the two Ligatures, clip off the Silk pretty close to the Knots, and fill up the Wound with a Quarter of Butter, mixed with about an Ounce of Salt. Do the same on the other side the Head. Dress the Wounds afterwards twice a Day, for about a Week; and then continue to foment them three times a Day with hot Wine, sweetened with fine Sugar, till the Cure is compleated. This Operation is properly called Cutting the Temporal Arteries, and not Tying-up the Veins, as it has hitherto been ignorantly named by the Farriers and Grooms, who know no Difference between an Artery and a Vein.

Some perform it in an another Manner, by running a hot Wire a-crofs; but this Way is not always successful, and the other is most proper for those who have not a very nice Hand. A Month after this Operation, the Horse must be unnerved, as described in Fig. IV. N<sup>o</sup>. II. The Wounds here must be dressed with Salt Butter, as before: And observe to use no Waters nor Powders to Moon-Eyes, because the Disease is within the Eye, and not upon the Cornea.

C H A P. IX.

*How to to unnerve a Horse.*

**M**AKE your Incisions four Fingers breadth below the Eyes, and you will find a Sort of Muscle on both sides the upper Part of the Nose, descending along the Front. Make a third Incision at the End of the Nose, above the Nostrils, where the two Muscles join in the Middle, and are not bigger than a Goose-Quill; whereas above, at the other Incisions, they are severally as big as one's Thumb. You must draw them both out with the Goat's Horn thro' the lower Wound. A Horse that has not been lunatic above one or two Moons, will certainly recover his Sight after this last Operation, supposing the whole be well performed: Nay, sometimes after three or four Moons, a Horse has been perfectly cured. But in this there is Danger, and the Operations ought not to be deferred longer than the first or second Moon. They are not expensive, and depend only on the Address of the Operator.

C H A P. X.

*A Remedy for a Web in the Eye.*

**T**AKE of the Herbs, Celandine, Ground-Ivy, Night-Shade, of each two Handfuls; Scopolopendra, or Spleen-Wort, one Handful; beat them all together in a Marble Mortar, and press out their Juice thro' a Linnen Cloth. Dip a soft Feather in this Liquor, and put it into the Horse's Eye, three or four Times a Day. When you perceive the Web dissipate, you may take a little Rose and Plantain Water, in proportion to your Quantity of Juice, and use it every Day. If the Web be old and obstinate, add a little common Salt, and Verjuice, and you will seldom fail of Success.

*For a Horse that has a disordered Sight.*

Take Spring or Rain-Water, and Rose-Water, of each an equal Quantity; filter the former thro' a whited brown Paper; rasp in a little Castile Soap, and double-refined Sugar; beat up the whole together till the Sugar and Soap are dissolved: Then let it settle, and afterwards filter it again thro' another Paper. Use this with a soft Feather three or four times a Day, till the Eyes become clear.

*Pills to purge the Brain of a Horse that has sore Eyes.*

Take Agaric, Succotrine Aloes, Senna Leaves, Turbith Root, Gentian, and Ginger, of each three Drams; all in Powder; and with unsalted Butter, or Syrup of Buckthorn, make it into a sufficient Number of Balls, to be rolled in Liquorice Powder, for one Dose. Give after it a few Glasses of Wine, to make him swallow it the better. He should fast six Hours before and after taking this Dose.



*A Powder to dissipate a Web.*

Take of Garden *Thyme*, and *Serpillum* or *Wild-Thyme*, one Ounce ; dry one or both of these in the Shade, and make a fine Powder, which use with a fine Feather to the Horse's Eye three or four times a Day.

Remember never to blow any Powder into a Horse's Eye.

*Another Remedy for the same Purpose, or for other sore Eyes.*

Take *Celandine Juice*, 2 Ounces ; *White Sugar Candy*, 1 Ounce ; *White Vitriol*, *Florentine Orrice Root* powder'd, each half an Ounce. Put the Juice and Powders into a Pint of Plantain or Spring Water, beat it all well together, till the Water is in a Froth ; then let it settle all Night, and filter it thro' whited brown Paper, to use with a Feather.

Another Powder may be made with Bits of Chrystal, or Glafs, beat very fine, with an equal Quantity of Sugar-Candy ; sift it well, and use it either for a Web, or any other Spot on the Eye.

*The following is very good.*

Take *Ground-Ivy*, four Handfuls ; *Common Salt*, *Sugar Candy*, *White Copperas* calcin'd, each 1 Ounce ; fix new laid Eggs, boiled hard, and the Yolks to be taken away ; after which beat Shells and all well together in a Marble Mortar with a Pint of white Wine. Let it infuse twelve Hours, and filter it thro' Paper for Use.

*Another Powder.*

Take common *Slate*, *Calcined Snail-Shells*, *Kalt* or *Salt-Wort*, each 2 Ounces : Powder all these, and sift them thro' a fine Lawn Sieve. Use this as before described, and continue it till the Cure is finish'd.

## C H A P. XI.

*A Remedy for Wounds in the Eyes.*

**T**AKE *Armenian Bole pulverized*, mix it well with the Whites of Eggs, and beat up the whole with White-Wine Vinegar, till it is of the Consistence of Child's Pap : Anoint round the Eye with this three or four times a Day, till the Inflammation abates. If any Speck then remain, use the following Water.

Take *Rose Water*, *Plantain* and *Carduus Water*, each 2 Ounces ; Powder of *Tutty*, *Sugar Candy*, *Cyprus Vitriol*, each 1 Dram ; mix all together, and when it has stood long enough for the Water to be clear, filter it thro' Paper, and use it to the Eye with a Feather.

This is an excellent Eye-Water, in all Disorders of the Eye where is a Flow of Blood or Humours.

*Another Eye-Water.*

Before you undertake the Cure, examine carefully from whence the Web or Pearl proceeds ; there being two Sorts of them ; the first natural, the other accidental, and occasion'd by some Blow. As this latter must be the most recent, so it is the easiest to cure. In your Examination of the Eye therefore, upon the Discovery of a White Spot, if this Spot be streaked with Red, either in the Middle or towards the Edge, you may boldly conclude that the Horse has been struck, and may be easily cured, using only the Remedies already and hereafter prescribed.

If it be a natural Web, you must engage with the Humours that feed it : For which purpose nothing more is necessary than the *Lapis Mirabilis* (the Composition of which we shall give at the End of the Book) powdered fine. Mix an Ounce of this with 8 Ounces of *Plantain* and *Rose-Waters*, each in equal Quantities, and beat up the Whole together till it become as white as Milk. Put some of this in the Eye with a Feather three or four times a Day, shaking the Bottle every time. If the Web be very obstinate, increase the Quantity of *Lapis Mirabilis* ; and in Proportion as the Web decreases, fill up the Bottle with *Plantain* and *Rose-Water*, to make it weaker ; for by keeping the Composition still as strong as at the beginning, the Remedy may be made worse than the Disease.

In a Web that proceeds from Nature, you must deprive your Horse of Oats all the time of the Cure, and give him only scalded Bran, or Barley bruised in a Mill, to refresh him ; and in order to turn the Humours, make him from time to time take the following Draught.

Take



Take *Agarick* powdered, *Powder of Liquorice*, each 1 Ounce; *Sal-Prunel*, half an Ounce. Mix all these together in a Quart of small Gruel, and give it in a Horn, four Hours after eating any thing. He must afterwards fast four Hours more. If you are distant from any Town, and can get no *Rose* or *Plantain-Water*, use skimmed Milk or Whey in the room of it; or, for want of that, Spring or River Water.

CHAP.  
XII,  
XIII.

*Another very good and easy-made Water for the Eyes.*

Take one Dram of either *Cyprus* or *White Vitriol* in Powder; dissolve it in half a Pint of very clear Water; fling this Mixture into a large red-hot Copper-kettle not tinn'd, and let it remain in it three Days; then filter the Water for Use.

I hope the Reader will pardon my setting down so many different Remedies, since I do it only for his Advantage. A Man is not always near an Apothecary, nor in a proper Country to find the necessary Plants: I therefore refer him to those which are easiest come at. No one can blame me for being somewhat extensive upon the Accidents of the Eye, as nothing in the Knowledge of a Horse can be of more Importance than his Sight.

All Accidents in the Eyes of Horses are not of the same Nature, but some are much easier to cure than others. Some are made fore by being over-heated, and others by Pains in the Head. In the Army, at the Piquet, Horses are often hurt by standing with their Heads exposed to the Mid-day Sun. Others by feeding on Corn too young, before their Jaws were strong enough to grind it, have swelled, with the very Pains they have taken, the Arteries that carry the Blood to all the Extremities of the Body, especially to the Head and Eyes; which causes too great an Abundance of Humours, clogs the Sight, and at last occasions Defluxions or sore Eyes. Some again have this Disease by Inheritance, derived from the Father or Mother. Every one therefore who would raise a Breed of Horses, or form a Stud, should take care that both the Stallions and Mares have good Eyes, especially the former.

There is one Thing more which a Buyer should be guarded against. A Dealer who has a handsome Horse, but with a Dragon in the Eye, in order to sell him for a Stallion, will put that Eye entirely out, and pretend that he lost it by Accident; because a Horse that has lost an Eye by Accident is as good for a Stallion as another.

The best and shortest Way for watery Eyes, or Eyes that are inclined to be Moon-struck, is to bathe them several times a Day, above and below, with fresh clean Water, especially over the Lids; making use of a large Sponge. If this does not lessen the Inflammation, add to it a sixth part of White-Wine Vinegar, and use it with Patience; for nothing can be better for Humours and Inflammations. If these Defluxions come often, the Horse is in great danger of becoming Lunatic; to prevent which, cut the temporary Artery, as before directed.

CHAP. XII.

*A Whitlow in the Eye.*

**W**HAT I call by this Name is a fleshy Excrecence, that proceeds from the Corner of the Eye, and covers a Part of the Pupil. It is in Shape almost like the Beard of an Oyster; and, tho' seemingly not a Matter of great Consequence, if suffered to grow, it draws away a Part of the Nourishment of the Eye, and sometimes occasions a total Privation of Sight.

In order to a Cure, tie up the Horse that he cannot stir, and then dextrously slide a Piece of Gold or Silver under the Excrecence: Then with a large Needle, threaded with strong Silk, go thro' the middle of it, in order to draw it up; and so cut it off with Scissars. It is usually about as big as a Silver Penny. You have nothing to do after the Operation, but to wash the Eyes three or four times a Day with cold Spring Water.

CHAP. XIII.

*Of the Strangles.*

**W**E proceed from the Eyes to the other Distempers incident to Horses, beginning with the Strangles. But, before we define it, the Reader should be informed that Horses run at the Nose in eight different Diseases. Few People distinguish these, and only say in general that a Horse has the Strangles or Glanders. Five of these eight Sorts are curable, and three incurable; for want of knowing which, many run into unnecessary Expences, when they had better knock the Horse on the Head. Even of the five curable Sorts many Horses die, in spite



CHAP.  
XIII.

spite of the best Remedies, when they are in an ill State of Body, and the Disease is violent. The first or true Strangles may be compared to the Small-Pox; a critical Distemper, of which many Persons die, tho' under the Hands of the best Physicians. The second is the Bastard Strangles; the third is called Morfoundering; the fourth, the Strangullion; the fifth, the contagious Head-Evil.

In this the Strangles differ from the Small-Pox, that tho' many antient Persons escape the latter, there is no young Horse but is subject to have the former, either perfectly or imperfectly. It usually appears at about 3, 4, or 5 Years old; but after 5 it ought not to be called the Strangles, as I shall shew in the Sequel.

*How to know the Strangles.*

The only Sign is a large Swelling between the two nether Jaw-bones, which discharges a white Matter. The larger the Swelling, the more easy the Cure; but in severe cold Weather, when the Pores are shut, more Care is required than at another Time. The Horse must then be kept warm in the Stable, and suffered to drink only warm Water mixed with a little Flour or Bran. Keep him from Oats, and feed him with Bran and boiling Water, the Fumes of which will bring down the Matter, and you need not fear his burning his Nose. But in Summer or Spring, when this Distemper commonly appears, good Pasture alone is almost sufficient to effect a Cure.

You may use the following Ointment, to ripen the Swelling under the Jaws.

Take Ointment of Roses, Ointment of Marshmallows, Ointment of Poplar Buds, Virgin Honey, of each 4 Ounces; Basilicum, 8 Ounces. Melt them all together over a slow Fire; stir the Composition while it cools, and then, having rubbed the Part well, tie over it the hairy Side of a Lamb-Skin or Hare-Skin. When the Swelling breaks, put into it a Stopple of Tow covered well with Basilicum, or for want of that with fresh Lard, and fasten the Dressing on with more Tow. Continue this till a Cure is effected; for when the Impostume is broke, all Danger is over.

If your Horse loses his Stomach, give him such a Cordial Draught as the following, viz. Two Ounces of good Treacle, half an Ounce of powdered Rhubarb, and the same Quantity of Salt Prunel, dissolved in a Bottle of Wine; but let him fast 4 or 5 Hours before and after taking it.

*The Bastard Strangles.*

This appears sometimes like, and sometimes different from the true Strangles. In the former Case, treat it as you do that; but when it comes in the Foot, the Leg, the Ham, the Hanch, the Shoulder, the Breast, or the Eye, you must proceed otherwise. Without Care it may corrupt the Pupil of the Eye, as the Small-Pox does in Men. This Distemper proves that the Horse did not throw off his true Strangles, but that some foul Humours are still left behind. It may come at 4, 5, 6, or even at 7 Years of Age. You may know when a Horse is not clear by his continual Languor at Work, and seeming perpetually weary without any visible Ailment.

When you perceive virulent Swellings in any of the Parts before-mentioned, rub them with the same Ointments that you used in the true Strangles. If you cannot get any of those Drugs, take clean Barley or Oats, or, for want of those, Rye-Flour; boil it in Milk to a thick Pap; add Lamp-Oil at Discretion; and then with Tow apply it to the Tumour, every Day fresh, and as hot as the Horse can bear it, making him drink, from time to time, some such Draught as the following.

Take Venice Treacle, 3 Ounces; Assa Fœtida, 1 Ounce. Mix it with a Pint of Wine for a Draught.

*Morfoundering.*

Morfoundering appears by a Running at the Nose, much like the Strangles; but the Swelling under the Jaws is less. If by the above-mentioned Medicines you can make the Glands swell, you gain much Ground; and yet more when you bring them to a Discharge. Neglect nothing therefore at the Beginning of this Distemper, which may prove of dangerous Consequence; for if those Glands continue in the same Situation, and grow to one of the lower Jaw-bones, you have Reason to apprehend an incurable Glanders; whereas if you can soften the Glands, and make them fit to open, you may depend on a Cure, by only proceeding as in the Strangles.

This



*The Stranguillion.*

This is an extraordinary Distemper, and which, without instant Relief, will strangle a Horse, by pressing on the first Knot of the Throat, and preventing Respiration. It is known by a green Matter issuing from the Nose, and many ignorant People take it for the Glanders. The Horse that has it must either die, or be cured in a Fortnight, or at most in three Weeks. All the Glands round the lower Jaw, quite to the Corner of the Eye, are so swelled that a Horse cannot turn his Head, nor even stoop it towards his Breast. When you know the Distemper by these Symptoms, rub the Swelling first with the same Ointment prescribed for the Strangles, adding a little Oil of Bays; or, for want of that, with the Pap there directed, wrapping up the Part with the Skin of a Lamb or Hare. As a Horse in this Distemper swallows with Difficulty, take 5 or 6 dry Biscuits, or for want of them hard Crufts of Bread; pound them in a Mortar, and boil them in about three Quarts of strong Beer, to the Consistence of Child's Pap; then add half an Ounce of *Cinamon*, and two Ounces of *Liquorice*, both in Powder: Mix them well, and give the Horse of this, Morning and Evening, in the Form of a Draught.

If the Horse has a Difficulty of Respiration, bleed him well, which will give great Relief; but if the Passage and the Throat continue obstructed, take a Bull's Pizzle, and after having cut off the Hair, and beat the Point with a Hammer, to make it pliant, rub it over with Honey of Roses, and thrust it tenderly down the Throat, moving it easily backwards and forwards two or three times. After this, make him take the Pap, giving a little at a time in the Horn, and slackening his Cord between whiles, that he may stoop his Head and breathe. As a Horse is excessively weak in this Distemper, there should be a Man on each side of him, to support him; and let one of them stroke his Throat, while the other strikes upon his Flanks, to facilitate his swallowing. Cordial Powders are very good in these Diseases, given from two to three Ounces in a Bottle of Wine. For want of those Powders, you may use Venice Treacle, and Confection of Hyacinth in the same Quantity.

*The contagious Head-Evil.*

This Disease is called contagious, because it is easily communicated from one Horse to another, even without coming near. Sometimes it spreads fifteen or twenty Miles round, and seizes almost every Horse, which makes it ascribed to an ill Air. The Glands are swelled only below the nether Jaw; but swell to a prodigious Size, and the Matter which runs from the Nose is almost all yellow; whereas in the *Stranguillion* it is green. Many Horses burst with this Evil, in spite of all the Care that can be taken, especially when it is not looked after at the Beginning.

Give them at first plenty of Cordials, Morning and Evening, to enable them to throw off the peccant Matter by the Nose. Take also two Goose-Quills; rub the soft Part of the Feathers with Oil of Bays, and tie to the hard Ends a small String; then thrust up the Feathers into the Nostrils, one into each, as far as they will go, and fasten the String to the Nose-Band of the Halter; turning the Horse so that the Matter may not drop into the Manger. Repeat this three or four times a Day, half an Hour at each time. All Care must be taken to bring the Swelling to a Head, and if it ripens of itself, the Cure will be soon effected. If neither the Ointment nor the Pap prescribed for the Strangles are found sufficient, roast two large Lilly Roots in hot Embers, and apply them as hot as the Horse can bear, putting over them some Ointment and Tow, and keeping it on with a Bandage, or Skin as before. If after all, the Imposthume will not break in seven or eight Days, open it with a red-hot Iron, about as big as the End of one's Finger. Blood, mingled with the Matter that comes out, proves the Swelling to be ripe. Tho' no Pain follows, introduce every Day a Tent of Tow and Basilicum, till the Bleeding ceases; observing always to keep the Wound very warm. Feed the Horse with scalded Bran, as in the former Cases, and let him drink nothing cold. If no Blood comes from the Abscess, it will be to no Purpose to put any thing into the Wound; but continue only to rub it with the Ointment above. If the Horse has lost his Stomach, administer Cordials from time to time, in order to strengthen his Appetite.



*Cordials for Horses that are sick, and have lost their Stomachs.*

Take *Venice Treacle*, 1 Ounce and a half; *Rhubarb*, *Angelica Root*, *Salt Prunel*, each half an Ounce; mix all together in a Bottle of Wine for a Draught. If you cannot get these Drugs, give four Ounces daily of the Cordial Powders, and keep the Horse warm.

*Another Medicine for the Strangles.*

Take *Sage* and *Lavender*, a Handful of each, pounded well in a Mortar; add two Handfuls of Wheat Flour, and boil the Whole in a sufficient Quantity of Vinegar. Put it afterwards in a Pot, and apply it as hot as possible to the Glands under the nether Jaw, twice every Day, keeping the Horse very warm in the Stable, and making him drink Water whitened with a little Flour, and with about a Quartern of Honey mixed in each Pail. Leave his Draught every Time an Hour or two before him, and when you take it from him, throw away the Remainder, and wash the Pail well, lest the Taste should affect any thing else.

*The simple Strangles may be cured by the following Remedy.*

Take thirty Grains of black *Pepper-Corns*, and infuse them upon warm Embers, without boiling, the Space of twenty-four Hours, in ten or twelve Ounces of White-Wine; then take out the Pepper, and make the Horse drink the Infusion: Repeat this every Day, and, tho' a simple Remedy, it will be of great Effect.

*For a Horse that runs with the Strangles.*

Take a Handful of *Cheeril*, boil it in Water with two Ounces of Oil of Bays, and let it cool in the Pot: Mix the Water and the Oil, and stir in the two Ounces of *Agrippa's Ointment*. With this Composition rub under the Horse's Jaws, the Hair being shaved off, and cover the Part with a Lamb or Hare-Skin, to bring the Swelling to a Head; because when it is opened your Horse is half cured. Sometimes the Matter is curdled, so that the Glands will appear hard, when they are fit to open: To know when it is ripe therefore, observe when the Hairs begin to fall off, which is a sure Sign that you may perform the Operation. If any Gland is yet unripe, put a Tent of Tow and Basilicum into the Orifice; and to forward the Cure, use a Tent with a Digestive, made of four Parts Turpentine, and one Part of Yolks of Eggs, beat up together. Administer daily Venice Treacle and Cordial Powders, an Ounce of each, mixed in a Bottle of Wine: But if the Horse has lost his Stomach, use the following. Take powdered Sugar, or *Liquorice Powder*, *Cinnamon*, and *Nutmeg*, with half an Ounce of *Assa Fœtida*; mix them with Honey, to a Mass as big as one's Fist; and tie the whole up in a Linnen Cloth, that the Horse may hold it in his Mouth. Bring the Strings from both Ends of the Cloth, over the Horse's Head. Some People put a Bit of Wood into the Cloth; but I disapprove that Method; tho' indeed more Care is required without the Wood than with it. This Bag, which is good for many Disorders that take away a Horse's Appetite, should be put in the Mouth four or five times every Day, and kept there a full Hour at a time.

*For a Horse that has a Running at the Nose, without being glandery.*

Take the Herb which the French call *Racile*, and *Ground Ivy*, an equal Quantity of each; chop them and bruise them in a Mortar: Make them into six Pills with fresh Butter, each as big as a Nut, which roll up in *Liquorice Powder*, and give them one after another. Then mount your Horse, and trot and gallop him a little, till he sweats, and throws out more than usual by his Nose and Mouth. Ride him to the Water without letting him drink, and a Quarter of an Hour after trot him a little more. Then put him into the Stable, and cover him well. Give him this Exercise six times in ten Days, and a short time after you will see him quite well.

*A Remedy for a morfoundered Horse.*

Take two young *Puppies*, and boil them in two Gallons of White-Wine, with an Ounce of *Pepper*, an Ounce of *Ginger*, and four Ounces of Sugar, till the Wine is reduced to about half the Quantity; strain it well, and give it the Horse at four times, which will serve Morning and Night, two Days. The Horse must fast two or three Hours before and after taking it;



it ; and immediately after he has taken each Dose, walk him an Hour. If the Horfe continues bad, repeat the same Thing once or twice.

CHAP.  
XIV.

C H A P. XIV.

*The Glanders.*

**O**F the three Sorts of incurable Runnings at the Nose, the worst to a young Horfe is the Glanders from the Glands, as is manifest from the Experience of all who have writ of Farriery. In a Course of fifty Years I have tried all the known Experiments, which I have added to those of my Father, during a Life of eighty Years spent in the Army and the King's Stables: But all Remedies have been ineffectual for this Disease. The shortest way therefore is to kill the Horses that have it, to prevent their infecting others. A Saddle, a Bridle, a Covering that has been upon them, may communicate the Infection ; and it is a great Happiness when it falls out otherwise. The Place where they have been, six Months after, may do the same. When a Stable has been infected, it is not sufficient to change the Rack, the Manger, the Pillars, the Bars ; to scrape and white-wash the Walls ; but you must take up the Pavement, and at least half a Foot of Earth under it, and put fresh Earth and Stones in the Room.

*How to know the Glanders of the Glands.*

When a Horfe has a Running at the Nose, either on the one Side or the other, feel if he has any flat Glands fastened to the nether Jaw, which give him Pain, when you press them ; observe if the Matter he discharges be yellow and stinking, or if it sticks at the Bottom of the Nostril ; for these are all bad Signs, and a Running at one Nostril is worse than at both. Many throw down such a Horfe, to take away his Glands, by cutting the Skin under his nether Jaw, either with a Razor, or an Incision-Knife. The Operation is not difficult, and I have been so weak as to perform it above fifty Times, not one of which succeeded ; nor have I heard any Man who had tried it say otherwise than my self. For some time after the Operation indeed, the Horfe often throws out no more Matter ; but this is only till the Wound is healed, and then he becomes as bad as ever. New Glands will arise, and I have cut them off three times successively, all to the same Purpose. It is in vain, therefore, to think of a Remedy for the Glanders.

I own that some morfoundered Horses have been glanderous, and that it is often difficult to distinguish Morfoundering from the Glanders : Hence many who have cured the former, pretend they have cured the latter. But, in a Word, if you cannot, by good Remedies, ripen the Gland in a Month or six Weeks, it is needless to be at any more Expence.

*The Glanders from the Spine, or Back-Bone Marrow.*

This is equally contagious with the former ; from which it differs, in that the Matter ejected is green and stinking. Some Horses in this Distemper have no Glands ; others, one only under the nether Jaw, and that not growing to the Bones. They eat and drink as if they were well ; yet gradually waste away, their Coats growing rough, in spite of all the Care that can be taken of them. If the Running continues a Month or six Weeks, the Gland remaining hard, as at first, give over all Thoughts of a Cure ; and the same Direction may be observed in what follows.

*The cancerous Glanders.*

When a Horfe ejects a yellow Matter mixed with Blood, which proceeds from the Tendons at the upper Part of the Nostrils, this Matter, whether any Glands appear or not, issues from ulcerated Lungs. The very Corrosiveness of the Pus breeds the Ulcers that yield the Blood. If the Lungs are not attacked, the Cancers may be healed by proper Medicines applied with a Feather : But when the Lungs are seized there is no Cure. It is not with Horses as with Men, whose Lives in this Condition may be prolonged by a proper Regimen : But a Horfe is good for nothing when his Work is done, and therefore it is a needless Expence to keep him alive.

*A Medicine for all Horses who have a Running at the Nose.*

Take half a Pound, 6 Ounces, or a Quarter of *Black Soap*, in Proportion to the Strength of the Horfe ; dilute it in a Pint of hot Water ; then add to it as much Wine, and give it



CHAP.  
XV.

it for a Draught. Repeat this nine Days, observing that the Horse fasts five or six Hours before and after taking it.

Give him his Food on the Ground, in a very clean Place, in order to make him lower his Head; which will enable him to throw off the Matter more easily. Give him Remedies from time to time, to purge his Blood.

*Another Medicine for the same Purpose.*

Take *Cloves*, *Ginger*, *Grains of Paradise*, *Liver of Antimony*, and *White Hellebore*, each 1 Drachm: All powder'd, and mixt with a Pint of Vinegar. Add the Yolks of four fresh Eggs. Beat all well together, and give it your Horse. Throw a little of it, at last, up each Nostril, and continue this Prescription eight or ten Days. Keep him warm, and give him warm Water to drink every Morning and Evening, having first dissolved in it a Bit of leavened Dough, as big as an Egg. If he refuses to drink because of the Leaven, keep him a-dry till he alters his Mind.

*A Perfume for Glandery Horses, that have a Running at the Nose.*

Take *Olibanum*, *Mastick*, *Storax Calamit*, *Nettle Seed*, *Agarick*, *Juniper*, and *Bay Berries*, each one Ounce. Having powdered and mixed all these Drugs, take a large Sack, open at both Ends, and put one End over the Horse's Head, and the other over a Chafing-dish of live Charcoal: Then by little and little sprinkle an Ounce of the Powder upon the Coals, that the Horse may receive the Smoak. Continue this ten or twelve Days, as the Case requires.

There is another Disease that comes under the nether Jaw, which is a Sort of Gland that does not run, but which gradually wears out a Horse notwithstanding, and takes away his Stomach. For this take *Wormwood*, *Smallage*, and *Nettles*, of each a Handful; bruise them well in a Mortar, and add a sufficient Quantity of Hog's Grease: Make a Plaister of the whole; and, after having shaved off the Hair, bind it on with a Bandage. Renew it every twenty-four Hours, till the Malady decreases.

*Another Medicine.*

Take two or three Heads of *Garlick*, and a Handful of *Juniper-Berries*; bruise them in a Mortar, and add a Glas of *Briony-Water*: Then take *Pepper* and *Ginger*, of each an Ounce; *Cinnamon* and *Cloves*, of each half an Ounce: These being all reduced into Powder, take a Glas of *Aqua Vita*, a Quarter of *Honey*, and an Ounce of *Tobacco*: Put the Whole into a Pint of *White-Wine*, and let it infuse the Space of a Night in an earthen Pot close covered, upon hot Embers. The next Day give him a little Broth; and having strained the Infusion thro' a Cloth, make him take it; observing that he has fasted four Hours before. Take him out when he has drank it, trot and gallop him alternately, but walk him chiefly, especially at last, for the Space of two Hours. Then put him in the Stable, rub him well down with Straw, cover him close, and let him fast two Hours longer. You may repeat this Remedy five or six times in a Fortnight, and if it does not cure him, it will be in vain to look for any other.

CHAP. XV.

*Of the Farcy.*

THERE are six Sorts of Farcy; five curable, with good Treatment; but the sixth absolutely incurable; though that is more than every one knows. When a Man has cured four or five Horses of the Farcy, imagining every Farcy to be the same, he pretends to have an universal Remedy. For this Reason, I will describe the six Sorts by their Names and their Effects; it being necessary to know them before their Cure is undertaken. The First is called the *Farcy Farini Oculus*. The Second, the *Flying Farcy*. The Third, the *Corded Farcy*. The Fourth, the *Hen's Arse Farcy*. The Fifth, the *Cancerous Farcy*. The Sixth, the *Internal Farcy*.

I. *The Farini Oculus.*

This sort of Farcy appears in small Pimples, which issue only from the Skin; fresh ones still rising as the former dry away. It is of little Consequence, and gives way to the slightest Remedy



Remedy: Which is only to put the Horse to Bran instead of Oats, and give him one or two Bleedings. If these fail, you may purge him gently, and afterwards cure him by washing his Pimples with Urine. But great Precaution should be used before one undertakes to purge a Horse; for a Medicine that may have worked successfully with hundreds of Horses, may yet kill one at last, in certain Dispositions of Body.

Thus if his Dung be hard, black, and burnt as it were, you must administer a Glister or two, the Evening before you give him the Purge, in order to open his Body. For as nothing can purge a Horse, unless it stays with him twenty-four Hours before it works, a hot Body and hardened Excrement may cause a Fermentation in his Bowels sufficient to burst him: The giving Bran, therefore, five or six Days, and a few Glisters, make way for the Medicine to have its Operation. If it does not work at the end of twenty-four Hours, take the Horse out, and walk and trot him alternately, till the Effect begins; then cover him well, and keep him warm, till the Purging is over; which will be in half a Day, or sometimes, perhaps, longer, according to the Force of the Medicine. If the Horse be well prepared, according to the Directions above, you have nothing to fear, and the Cure will be soon accomplished.

## II. *The Flying Farcy.*

This Farcy comes almost like the preceding; except that as that appears only on the Back, a little on the Neck, and sometimes a little on the Head, this may appear in all Parts of the Body; but never runs up the Veins, or Nerves. Every Pimple that breaks, discharges a Matter, but it does not flink like the following Sorts. This kind too is very easy to cure, by using much the same Means as before, and giving the Horse after his Purge an Ounce and a half of *Affæetida*, and an Ounce and a half of *Salt Prunel*, dissolved in a Bottle of Wine. Repeat this Draught three or four times every other Day, and wash the Pimples with fresh Urine as fast as they break, twice every Day, which will effectually dry them up. It is to be observed in all Farcs, that the first Pimple that appears, is generally the last that heals; and so long as that remains the Remedies must be continued.

## III. *The Corded Farcy.*

This Sort may come all over the Body, as well as upon the Legs. It differs from others in this, that it shoots between the Skin and the Flesh, as if Bits of Cord were put there, and at last breaks, sometimes at one End, sometimes at the other, and sometimes in the Middle. It frequently extends four Inches, half a Foot, and sometimes even a Foot, but not along the Veins or Nerves like the two following Sorts; and when broke, discharges a white Matter very thick, and the Edges of the Orifice are extremely red. It is not very difficult to cure, any more than the preceding Sorts; not even if a Horse has it all over his Body, and upon his Legs too. You have only to prepare the Remedies hereafter prescribed, which are numerous, that so the most convenient may be administered. The Horse, by Way of Preparation, should be kept from Oats, and his Bran wetted. He must not be suffered to lick his Pimples, which might poison him afresh, and render ineffectual all the Medicines that can be given. After having prepared him a few Days with Bran, let him be blooded in the Veins of the Neck; and the next Day, or the Day after, let him take one of the Purges hereafter prescribed.

## IV. *The Hen's Arse Farcy.*

This Kind of Farcy, tho' curable, requires more Care and Application than either of the preceding. It comes almost like the last, but with this Difference, that it runs along the Veins, either of the Neck or Legs, which occasions the Difficulty of the Cure. When it breaks, it discharges a white Matter mixt with Blood, and the Lips of every Orifice turn inward, as if the Wound was going to close; whence it assumes the Name of Hen's Arse. The Horse's Body should be properly prepared with wetted Bran, to loosen the Habit of it, for some Days before he is bled or purged; and some Caustic, as *Black Hellebore*, *Sublimate*, *Cyprus Vitriol*, or any Composition found in the Chapter of Medicines, should be put to every Orifice: But beware never to use *Arsenick*, because it eats a long Time, inflames violently, and may lame a Horse if the Farcy-Bud be near the Nerves or Tendons.

## V. *The Cancerous Farcy.*

This discovers itself almost like the preceding; except that it creeps along the Nerves instead of the Veins, and is consequently more difficult to cure: But the worst is that which  
E begins



CHAP.  
XV.

begins near the Fetlock-Joint, and running up the great Nerve almost to the Haunch, makes the Leg very thick. Sometimes it is only in one Leg; and then, if immediately taken in Hand, it may be hindered from affecting the other, and consequently all the Body, which may in Time render it incurable. From every Pimple that breaks there issues a Matter almost like the former, mixed with Blood. The Matter being discharged, instead of an Orifice remaining, an Elevation of proud Flesh appears, which must be artfully taken down, observing not to injure the Nerves by Causticks, which should not be too violent for that Reason. In this Sort of Farcy, the Horse should be separated from others, as in the preceding, and that which follows. For the former Sorts, it is sufficient that he come not too near those that are sound. But this by its Stench may communicate itself from one Stable to another, at least, if they are not pretty distant; for if the Vapours of the infected Air, or any thing else enter the other Stable, the Horses may be infected by it. It is proper to say here, that a Horse in this Condition should be work'd, provided the Weather be fair, and there is no Dirt under Foot. His Wounds should be wash'd with fresh Urine. When a Horse has the Farcy, it is wrong to put him to Grass, because the Rain and Dew always make the Pimples revive in the Sort we are speaking of. Never think your Horse cured till after the third Moon, tho' nothing appears; but if then one of the Legs should be still a little swelled, Labour alone will dissipate the Tumour in time. Some Legs have continued swelled a whole Year, and yet afterwards have look'd as handsome as ever.

#### VI. The Internal Farcy.

It would be needless to speak of this Sort, if it were not to make it known, to prevent the Using of Remedies to no purpose. It appears like the two former, only with this Difference; that besides the Stench, it throws out a green and yellow Corruption mixed with Blood, as well by the Nose, as thro' the Wound. Add to this, that little Kernels are found growing to the nether Jaw-Bones, as in Glandery Horses. They are only Quacks who pretend to cure this Distemper, which repeated Experience has hitherto proved to be impossible.

#### The First Remedy for a Beginning Farcy.

The Horse must be prepared in the Manner prescribed, and afterwards well blooded in the Vein of his Neck, according to his Strength: The next Day give him the following Purge.

Take *Succotrine Aloes*, *Venice Treacle*, each two Ounces; mix them in a Bottle of White-Wine. Keep your Horse fasting ten or twelve Hours, then administer this Medicine, and let him continue as long after without Eating or Drinking. You may purge him thus three or four times in eighteen or twenty Days; and this alone is sufficient to cure him, if given at the Beginning.

#### An Ointment for all Sorts of Farcys.

Take four Ounces of Flowers of Brimstone, two Ounces of Quick-Silver; rub them together in a Mortar till the Quick-Silver disappears; after which, mix them with the following Powders; *Verdigrease*, *Yellow Arsenick*, *Euphorbium*, *Spanish Flies*, *Cotton-weed*, or *Cud-weed*, *White Copperas*, *Green Copperas*, each one Ounce; *Gall-nuts*, half an Ounce: Mix all these well together with a Pound and a half of *Black Soap*, for an Ointment; add from time to time a little *Vinegar*. It will keep long in a Pot, and dries up all the Buds of a Farcy.

#### Another Ointment for all Sorts of Farcys.

Take two Ounces of Oil of Bays, and one Ounce of *Euphorbium* in Powder; mix them together, and add a handful of *Deer's Dung*, or *Goat's Dung*, for an Ointment.

Shave off the Horse's Hair, and rub the Pimples or Cords of the Farcy. If once Rubbing is not sufficient, repeat it the third Day, and so on for three or four times.

#### A Remedy for all Sorts of Farcys.

Take the Herb *Spleen-wort*, and *Long Pepper*, each 1 Ounce; both powdered, and mixed with a Bottle of White-Wine. Warm the Wine, and give your Horse, he having been first blooded, three or four Draughts in a Fortnight; mean Time applying outwardly the following Composition.

Take four Ounces of double *Aqua Fortis*, one Ounce of Quick-Silver, one Ounce of Brass; cut



cut the *Brass* into very small Pieces, that it may be consumed more easily in the *Aqua Fortis*, as well as the *Quick-Silver*; after which, take an Ounce of *Roch. Allum*, burnt and powdered, and put it with the other Things into a glazed Pipkin, and set it over hot Ashes, or a slow Fire, which you are to continue till the Matter be turned into a Stone, which it will be as soon as the *Aqua Fortis* is evaporated. Powder it as you have Occasion, and apply it with an easy Hand, and in small Quantities; because putting too much at a Time may damage the Nerves. This is particularly excellent in Cancerous Farcys, and surpasses almost every other Caustic for Proud Flesh, after other Remedies have been found ineffectual. Prepare your Horse with Mash of Bran, bleed him, and feed him only with Straw, abridging him even of that the Night before he takes the following Remedy; which, if he be robust, you may give all at once; if not, abate in Proportion.

*Another Remedy.*

Take *Æthiops Mineral*, made with equal Parts of *Quick-Silver* and *Brimstone*, four Ounces; *Succotrine Aloes* and *Manna*, each two Ounces; make it into Balls of a proper Size, which roll in *Liquorice Powder*. After every Ball, give him a Glas of Wine or Ale to wash it down, and keep him seven or eight Hours without eating or drinking. He may then have some wetted Bran, and must be kept well covered. The next Day, at the same Hour, walk him till the Purge begins to operate, and then put him up again. Afterwards use the following Ointment, along the Farcy-Cords, or upon the Pimples, whether they are broke or not.

*An Ointment.*

Take Oil of *Aspick*, and *Bay Berries*, each three Ounces; *Corrosive Sublimate*, one Ounce; *Æthiops Mineral*, two Ounces; *Honey*, two Ounces; *Arsenick* and *Cyprus Vitriol*, each one Ounce; make an Ointment according to Art, and apply it with a *Spatula*, or spread upon Tow.

*An Internal Remedy.*

Take two large Handfuls of *Plantain*, pound it well in a Mortar, and, having squeezed out the Juice, put it in a Bottle of Wine. Give this Draught every Morning for fifteen Days, the Horse being tied up from eating three or four Hours, both before and after taking the Medicine. Bleed him every fifth Day of the Course, that is to say, thrice in the whole. Then make the following Lye, with which wash his Body once in two Days, to prevent the Distemper breaking out in any other Part.

*The Lye.*

Take thirty or forty *Crab Apples*, and pound them; eight or ten Pounds of *Vine-Wood-Ashes*; put them together in a large Copper, and boil them till the Water has extracted all the Salt of the Ashes, which will be in about an Hour's Time. Let them settle in the Copper, and take off the clear Lye for Use, warming it every time, except it be in Summer. For Want of Vine-Ashes, common Wood-Ashes will make a very good Substitute, which will dry up all the Farcy-Buds as fast as they break.

*Another Ointment.*

Take half a Pound of *Quicksilver*, and the same Quantity of Flowers of *Brimstone*; mix these well together till the Mercury disappears, and add the following all in Powders; six Ounces of *Black Hellebore*, four Ounces of *Spanish Flies*, two Ounces of *Cyprus Vitriol*, one Ounce of *Salt Petre*; mix the whole with twelve Ounces of *Hog's Lard*, for an Ointment to be rubbed into the Farcy-Cords or Buds.

After having prepared your Horse with Bran and Bleeding, give the following:

Take *Assafetida*, *Salt Prunel*, each one Ounce and a half; *Gentian Root*, *Olibanum*, each one Ounce; put these Powders well mixed together in a Bottle of warm White-Wine, to be given the Horse for one Dose.

If the Farcy be fresh, three or four of these Draughts will kill it; but if inveterate, after a few Days Rest, begin again as above, and you may work the Horse in fair Weather, upon dry Ground. One thing observe, that when the Farcy begins just as the Grass sprouts, and the Sap rises in Trees, it is harder to kill than in any other Season. While you drive it out by internal Remedies, apply outwardly the following Caustic to the Buds.

Take



CHAP.  
XV.

Take *Black Hellebore*, *Spanish Flies*, *Euphorbium*, and *Sublimate*, all in very fine Powder, each one Ounce; and with one Ounce of Oil of Bays, make the Whole into an Ointment, which is to be applied to the Farcy-Buds, spread thick upon Hemp or Tow, (after having first shaved off the Hair,) which will form an Escar or Slough, that will come off in three or four Days, by the Application of any greasy or digestive Medicine; after which the Wounds may be dried up with burnt Alum powdered.

*A Composition to eat off Proud-Flesh.*

Take *Green Copperas*, one Pound; Wine Vinegar, a Quart; fresh Urine, one Pint: Put these three Things into a glazed Pipkin, and evaporate them over a slow Fire, to a hard Consistence, which beat to Powder, and use as before directed. If the Pimples or Cords have not been opened, strew it lightly upon the Buds or Proud-Flesh, or mix it with Turpentine, or any other Ointment. This Powder is not only good for the Farcy, but for all Ulcers where there is Proud-Flesh, as also for all Excrescences whatsoever, that grow on the Legs or Fetlocks, or within-side the Foot, near the Frog; as also for Warts, Rat-Tails, &c. It is the more valuable, as it never causes any Inflammation. I could give many more Remedies for this Distemper, but these are the best of all I have ever tried: For tho' an empirical Medicine may now and then succeed, where a Bleeding or two only would have done the Affair; yet on the whole, I have always had Recourse to, and had Success only, from such whose Properties have been to purify the Blood.

N. B. The Publisher has purposely omitted translating certain Methods of Cure in this Distemper, proposed in the Original, such as putting Medicines into the Horse's Ears, &c. being informed there is not the least Probability of Success to be hoped for, from such Means; (Anatomy, neither human nor comparative, having as yet discovered any Passage whatsoever from the External Ear to the Blood-Vessels) and consequently all such Proceedings, hitherto used, can only have been the Effect of Ignorance.

## C H A P. XVI.

*Of the Mange, Itch, or Scab.*

THE two chief Causes of the Mange in Horses, are, 1. A corrupted Blood, occasioned by Want of Nourishment, the Fatigue of a Journey, or Serving in the Army; or, 2. The being in Company with mangy Horses. It appears like the Itch in Men, by Pimples as big as small Pease, which break successively, and are succeeded by others as they dry away. The Horse that has it, rubs himself against the Manger, the Bars, the Pillars, or whatever stands in his Way; and it is hard to make the Hair come again when once off. You must begin the Cure by giving him scalded Bran instead of Oats, and then bleed, purge, and administer the following Remedies.

Tie half a Pound of *Flowers of Sulphur* up close in a Linnen-Cloth, and put it into three Quarts of *Nut-Oil*, or, for Want of that, *Oil of Olives*. Let it just boil up in an earthen Pot, setting it on Charcoal, that no Flame may come at the Oil. Having taken it from the Fire, rub all the mangy Parts with your Bag of Sulphur, as hot as the Horse can bear it. Do this three times, or at least twice a Day, for a Week or better: And to forward the Cure, mix *Liquorice Powder* and *Sulphur*, of each a Pound, and give the Horse two Ounces at a Time, Morning and Evening, in his scalded Bran.

*Another Remedy for the Mange.*

After having kept your Horse on Bran, blooded him, and given him two or three Purges; Take *Oil of Bays*, four Ounces; *Quicksilver*, two Ounces: Rub them together in a Stone-Mortar, till the *Quicksilver* disappear. Anoint all the scabby Parts. If it be warm Weather, dry in the Ointment in the Sun: But in Winter rub it on in the Stable, and never be too free with a hot Iron, like some ignorant Farriers, because it destroys the Roots of the Hair. Five or six Rubbings, once a Day, will effect a Cure.

*Another*



*Another Remedy for the Mange.*

Take *Brasil Tobacco* stripped, *Roch Alum*, *White* and *Green Copperas*, an equal Quantity of each; and to every half Pound of each a Quartern of *Gall-Nuts*, and a Quartern of *Cannon Powder*. Infuse the whole in *Vinegar* and *Aqua-Vitæ*, of each two Quarts, for the Space of twenty-four Hours, without suffering it to boil all the Time. Then with the soaked Tobacco-Leaves, or a Piece of Sponge, apply it every Day to the itchy Parts: But the first two or three Days rub the Scabs well, before Application, with a Wisp of Straw, that the Liquor may penetrate the better.

*Another Receipt.*

Take *Oil of Hemp-Seed*, one Pound; *Spanish-Flies*, and *Euphorbium*, each two Ounces. Let them just boil up together, and when cold, rub the Scabs with the Liquor three or four Days running, having fretted them first with Cow or Horse-Piss; in every two Quarts of which a Quartern of *White-Copperas*, or for want of that *Green*, has been dissolved.

In all these Cases a Bran Diet, Bleeding, and Purging are presupposed.

*Another Remedy for the Mange.*

Take the Herb called *Lyon's-Foot* dried and powdered, and put two good Handfuls of it into two Quarts of *Oil of Hemp-Seed*, where let it infuse over hot Ashes ten or twelve Hours, and then wash the Scabs with it.

*Another Wash.*

Take two Quarts of *Vinegar*, *White-Copperas*, *Roch-Alum*, each four Ounces; the Herb call'd *Ravens-Foot*, one Handful (which may be omitted). Boil all together to the Consumption of one Half.

*An Ointment.*

Take *Hog's Lard*, two Pounds; *Quicksilver*, four Ounces. Rub them well together, and add to it, *Euphorbium*, two Ounces; *Verdigrease*, one Ounce; *Spanish-Flies*, half an Ounce. Mix and make an Ointment.

*A Purge.*

Take *Succotrine Aloes* powdered, and *Manna*, each two Ounces; powdered *Sugar*, four Ounces; *Rhubarb*, half an Ounce; *fresh-Butter*, half a Pound: Make it into middle-sized Balls, rolled in *Liquorice Powder*. Let the Horse swallow after them three or four new-laid Eggs, in half a Bottle of *White-Wine*. He should fast eight or ten Hours before and after taking this: And if it does not begin to work in twenty-four Hours, walk him about till it does.

## C H A P. XVII.

*Of the Old-Reds.*

THIS is a Sort of Mange, that seldom comes but on large Stone-Horses, who go to Cart and Plough, are full of Humours, thick-chefted, have large Folds a-crofs the Mane, especially near the Withers, and sometimes in the upper Part of the Tail. Some take it for the true Mange, because it is equally infectious. From the Wrinkles or Folds in the Cheft there issues between whiles a red Humour, and sometimes a white Matter. They both stink, and make the Hair fall. In order to a Cure, you must shave the Part as close as possible, and rub it well with a Wisp of Straw, as if you would fetch out the Blood: Nor is there any Damage, if it bleeds in earnest. Then take *Black-Soap*, and rub it all over like an Ointment. In the Summer-time do it in the Sun, to make it penetrate the better; but observe to tie your Horse up short: In the Winter rub him in the Stable, and dry it in with a hot Iron-Shovel, which you may gradually bring near, to make it equal the Heat of the Sun. Be careful not to scorch the Roots of the Hair; and this Application, repeated once a Day for a Week or ten Days, will effect a Cure after the usual Preparations.



SOME confound this Disease with the Mange, or the Old-Reds, from both which however it differs. There is the Live-Tetter, and the White-Tetter; and they both appear on the Head, on the Cheek, and sometimes on the Body, as well as on the Shoulders. Their Cause is a fine subtile Blood, which insinuates between the Flesh and the Skin, and makes the Hair fall the breadth of a Crown-Piece, or sometimes of the Palm of one's Hand. Now and then the Head, and even a Part of the Cheek, is left naked. A Horse in this Disorder should be a long time refreshed with Bran and Honey; or with good Barley just cracked in a Mill, but not reduced to Meal, which is better than Bran. Put either in the Bran or Barley, Morning and Evening, an Ounce of *Liver of Antimony* for a Dose; and continue this a Month or six Weeks. All this while rub the bald Places every Day with *Black-Soap*, without exposing him to the Sun, or using the hot Shovel; and three or four times, during the whole Space, open his Jugular Vein. If this Remedy is not effectual, use one of those prescribed for the Mange.

*How to make the Hair come again, when fallen off by Tetters, Wounds, or Scabs.*

Take Ointment of *Poplar-Buds*, and *Honey*, of each an equal Quantity; mix them, and rub the Parts once a Day for a Fortnight. If it be Summer, and the Flies are plenty, put in a little Powder of *Bitter-Apple*, or for Want of that of *Succotrine-Aloes*, which will keep the Flies from touching it.

*For the same Purpose.*

Take the Roots of long flat *Flags* that grow in Rivers, and boil them to a Pap; then mix with it *Honey* and *Hog's-Lard*, of each an equal Quantity with the Pap, and make an Ointment, which rub in several times every Day. This will make the Hair come almost in any Place where Hair is used to grow.

THIS is a common and well known Distemper, which happens most frequently in the Army, and proceeds from many different Causes. A Horse may founder by drinking cold Water, or by standing still when he is hot; whereas he ought to be cooled gradually, by trotting and walking till he comes into Temper. The same may happen by putting a Horse hot into the Stable while others drink: To avoid which give him a Quart or two of Water in which the Hands have been dipped; or Water a little warm, or with a little Bran; or give him a Lock or two of wet Hay. It is equally dangerous to stop a Horse when warm upon the Road, or in any open Place exposed to the Wind, if it be only the Value of Half an Hour.

A Horse may founder also by getting to the Oat-crib, and eating too great a Quantity; or by eating too much Beans, Wheat, Rye, or Barley. To prevent this, especially in the Army, where the Want of Oats is often supplied by other Grain, you should soak your Morning-Corn all the Night, and your Evening-Corn all the Day.

Green Forage, that is apt to heat, may also occasion this Malady; an Accident that happens often in the Army, especially when Rye is in Blossom: But Founderings of this Sort are easy to cure, provided one has recourse to Means as soon as they are perceived.

The Foundering that smells is the most dangerous; because it comes by Degrees, and may be long before it is discovered. When a Horse that has been long in the Stable limps on one of his hind Legs, and can neither stand upon it nor lie down, he may be concluded in this Distemper; which is occasioned by the Contraction of the Nerves, and a difficult Circulation of the Blood. Fat heavy Horses are hard to cure, and scarce fix in a hundred, whatever Care is taken in looking after them, but feel the Effects of this Distemper as long as they live.

To prevent this Sort of Foundering, when a Horse is lame, it is not sufficient to remedy the immediate Cause of his Lameness: You must labour to remove whatever may affect the



the other Legs and Feet, fortifying them from time to time, by rubbing the Nerves with *Oil of Turpentine* and *Brandy*, beat together in equal Quantities; or by bathing all the Legs well, from Top to Bottom, with Lees of Wine; and using afterwards Cow-dung fried with Hog's Lard and Vinegar. If a Horse continues long lame, and his other Legs swell, have him well shod, and his Feet pared, continuing to put the Cow-dung into his hind Feet, and to rub his Legs and Nerves from time to time with Oil of Turpentine and Brandy, or Lees of Wine, which are the only Remedies in this Disorder.

A foundered Horse is easily known, by his drawing back from the Rack or Manger, bearing upon the Reins of his Halter, walking with difficulty, and bending his fore-Knees with Pain. When you make him go backwards, he drags his Feet, and scarce can lift them from the Ground; his hind Feet move with Violence, and fall down as soon as they are up.

I have before said that this Disease proceeds only from a Childness in the Blood, which hinders the Circulation thro' the Liver and Lights: To which I may add, that the Nerves stiffen, and have scarce any Motion; that the Horse eats little, and presently falls back from his Manger; and that when the Distemper is of long standing, he almost always lies. To know it certainly, observe if the Hair frizzles, and curls as it were on the side of the Knees, the Fetlock, the Hams, and near the Flat of the Thigh. A Man must have a great deal of Skill, to cure a Horse perfectly in this Condition. If it be a Draught-Horse, which may still serve for the Plough, take the two Shoes off his two fore-Feet, and pare his Hoofs almost to the Quick, taking care however not to draw Blood. Then shoe him as before, trot him till he begins to sweat, and if you are near any Water, open his Neck-Vein, and ride him in up to his Knees, catching the Blood, to the Quantity of two Quarts, in a Pot. After he has bled enough, put a Handful of Salt into the Pot, and stir it well with your Hand, that it may not curdle; then give the Horse to drink with a Horn, as soon as possible. Take afterwards a Quart or three Pints of Oil of Turpentine, and as much Brandy; beat them together, and rub with this Mixture down the four Legs, upon the Nerves, and across the Loins, all with the utmost Expedition; the Horse being tied short with four Reins, two to the Manger, and two to the Rack, to prevent his hurting himself. The more he struggles, the more Hope is there of a Cure; and his Uneasiness will not last above half an Hour. In Case he be unruly before you have done rubbing his Legs and Reins, pinch his Nose till you have finished, and then leave him at liberty to do as he pleases. Let some body stand behind him with a Whip, to prevent his doing himself any Mischief. When he has done struggling, rub round the Crown of his Hoofs with good Oil of Bays, and fill with it the two Fore-Feet that have been pared, keeping it in with Tow and Splinters.

The next Day, at the same Hour, be sure to give him a good purging Glisten, as directed in the Chapter of Medicines. If you see no Amendment, repeat the same Remedies without Bleeding, giving him, in the Room of Blood and Salt, two Ounces of good *Venice Treacle*, an Ounce of *Monk's Rhubarb* called *Raponti*, and half an Ounce of *Salt Prunel*, all mixed in a large Bottle of Wine; with this rub his Legs, and across his Reins, adding the Oil of Bays as before.

Glistens should be repeated Morning and Evening; and every other Day give the Draught above. If he be not thus well in nine or ten Days, conclude him incurable.

*Another Remedy for Foundering.*

When a Horse is foundered, ride him to a River or Pond, or any other Water; but a River is best, and still the better if it has a Mill on it. Lead him into the Mill-pool above his Thighs, and let him stand there an Hour, with his Head against the Stream. Then walk him till he sweats, and rub his Legs and Reins well with a Wisp of Straw; bleed him freely on both Sides his Neck, and rub the Nerves of his Legs well with the Blood mixed with Brandy. Afterwards put him in the Stable, and rub round his Hoofs with Oil of Bays, which bind on with Tow and Splinters. For want of Oil of Bays, use Hog's Dung, fried in Hog's Grease, Vinegar, and a handful of Salt. This will keep the Foundering out of the Hoofs. You must keep him to Bran and Water for the fifteen following Days; and the next Day after Bleeding administer this Draught.

Take four large Heads of Garlick picked, and pounded with a handful of Salt: Dilute this in a Bottle of White-Wine. Repeat the Draught three or four Days running.

If



CHAP.  
XX.

If the Horfe be bound, as is usually in thefe Distempers, and his Dung looks as if it were burnt, be fure not to neglect your Glisters.

*Another Way of treating a Foundered Horfe.*

If you perceive in the Morning that your Horfe is foundered, walk him in the Day; if in the Evening, walk him the fame Night; becaufe in this Distemper, no Time fhould be loft, unlefs you would run the hazard of never making a perfect Cure. If it be in the Spring, when you can have the Leaves or Tops of the wild Vine, make him eat as many of them as you can; and if you can keep him upon this and fcalded Bran for fome Days, it will do great Service. You muft give him Bran Water during the whole Courfe, and often put Reftingents into his Fore-Feet.

Thefe Reftingents may be compofed of White-Wine Vinegar, the Whites of Eggs, Dragon's Blood and Salt, powdering all that requires it. When the Nerves feem too ftiff, you may fupple them with the following. Take raw Eggs, and beat them as if you would make a Biscuit: Then take Oil of Turpentine, Cows Dung, Wine-Vinegar, in proportion, and mix all together. Rub the Legs with this, along the Nerves, every fix Hours.

It is not furprifing that many foundered Horfes are the worfe for it all their Lives, fome more, fome lefs, according to the Strength of the Distemper, becaufe moft People content themfelves with internal Remedies, without regarding the Feet and Legs.

## C H A P. XX.

*Of Melted-Greafe.*

**T**HIS Distemper often accompanies Foundering, and few Horfes that have them both are ever cured.

Melted Greafe is, when there is, or at leaft feems to be, Pieces of Fat intermixed with the Dung of a Horfe. Some ignorantly believe that this Fat comes from off the Kidneys: But how fhould the Fat of the Kidneys get into the Bowels? I will not difpute but that all the internal Fat may be over-heated: But what is voided with the Dung comes off of the Guts, and is only a Sort of greafy Filth that fticks to their Inſide, and is loosened by the Heat. This is proved from what may be feen in cleaning the Bowels of any Animal at all. If the Difcharge of this Matter cannot be ftopped, it is all over with your Horfe; for the Nutriment he takes cannot slide thro' the Bowels, which are no longer capable to receive it; fo that the Horfe lofes his Appetite, and frequently dies. You muft give him nothing that may heat, by the way either of Diet, Draught, or Glijter; and inftead of Wine, which is common in Horfe-Phyſick, uſe only Whey; or, if that cannot be got, Water, in which Lettuce, Beet, Purſlain, Succory, or other Herbs of the ſame Quality have been boiled; or, for want of the Herbs, Water ſoftened with Bran or Meal. Let the Draughts otherwiſe be much the ſame as for Foundering, adding only a Quartern or Half a Pound of Honey. Refreshing Glijters ſhould be often repeated. Tho' this Distemper is ſeldom curable when joined with Foundering, much leſs with the Stag-Evil; yet when alone there is room for Hopes.

*Another Way to know when a Horſe's Greafe is melted.*

A Horfe whoſe Greafe is melted loſes his Appetite at once, appears very forrowful, and often is ſeized with a Fever. To be certain look at his Dung, and if you find it ſlimy, or wrapped in a Sort of Membrane, or melted Fat, it is a Proof that the Kidney-Suet is heated, and that the Greafe within the Bowels comes away with the Dung. A Horfe in this Condition muſt be ſoon relieved, or not at all.

Such a Horfe, from the very firſt, deſires always to lie and be at Reſt, which is what deſtroys him. You muſt walk him gently therefore from time to time, either in the Stable in Winter, or in the Sun in Summer, in order to prepare him for taking the Remedies already and hereafter mentioned.

*For a Horſe whoſe Greafe is melted.*

Take a Pound or two of thoſe *Barbed Ruſhes* with a thick Leaf, that almoſt reſemble a ſmall Artichoke, and grow uſually upon old Houſes: Bruiſe them in a Mortar, ſqueeze out the Juice, and take a Quart of Whey, or a Pint of Milk: Mix the Whole together; warm



warm it, and add half an Ounce of *Salt Prunel*. Repeat this Draught twice a Day, and if in three or four Days it is not effectual, give the following.

Take *Virgin Honey*, and *Sweet Oil*, each four Ounces; *Venice Turpentine*, two Ounces: Mix the Whole well in a Bottle of warm White-Wine, and give the Horse. Avoid Bleeding in this Disease, because that would chill all the melted Grease within him. For want of the above Drugs take three Pints of Beef or Pork Brine (the former is best) and a Pint of the Juice of Rue. Incorporate the whole together, and boil it a Quarter of an Hour. Give it luke-warm; and if the Distemper be taken in time, you may hope for a Cure from it. When neither the Drugs nor the Brine can be got, take all the Blood of a Sheep that is killed (if possible let it be a Ram) with a Handful of Salt, which you must first dissolve in warm Water, and give the Whole for a Draught.

*Another Remedy for a Horse whose Grease is melted.*

Take *Venice Treacle*, and *Manna*, each two Ounces; *Senna Leaves*, and *Salt Prunel*, each four Drams; *Gentian Root*, one Ounce. Cut the Root into thin Slips, and infuse the Whole in a Bottle of White-Wine, for twenty-four Hours. Strain it thro' a coarse Cloth, and give it the Horse. This is good for all Sorts of Distempers.

#### CHAP. XXI.

##### *The Stag-Evil.*

**T**HIS Distemper is so called, because Horses afflicted with it are like Stags that have been long hunted, and while they are heated have passed some River, which brings a Stiffness in their Neck, Body, and Legs. Such a Horse opens his Mouth with Pain, his Jaws being so locked together that he cannot receive any Nourishment, and you may sooner break them than force them asunder. The sole Cause therefore of this Disease is being over-worked, and then suffered to stand still without a gradual Cooling. When it comes alone however, without melted Grease or Foundering, there is Hope of a Cure by treating it in the following Manner.

First, make a Sort of Wooden Wedge; then take Oils of *Spike* and *Turpentine* in equal Quantities, adding a double Quantity of Oil of *Bays*; put these in an earthen Pot, and dissolve them over a gentle Fire; stir the Composition till it is cold, and then rub with it both Sides of the Jaws, especially at the Joints, a little roughly, that it may the better penetrate. Then put your Wooden Wedge into the Horse's Mouth, and strike gently upon it, for fear of breaking the Jaws; and if he opens them ever so little, that is sufficient. As a Horse in this Distemper dies oftener with Hunger than with Thirst, because he cannot chew, in order to oblige him to take some Nourishment, set before him Water thickned with Bran or Meal, some of which he will swallow even in sucking. But if his Teeth continue shut, he must certainly die.

In this Distemper give Glysters two or three Times a Day: But when you have brought your Horse to open his Mouth a sufficient Width, good Nourishment should be preferred to Physick. Panada, given with a Horn, is very proper in this Case. You may make it with half a Dozen stale Biscuits, or an equal Quantity of dry Bread, powdered, and boiled up in the manner of Childrens Pap. Put to it half an Ounce of Cinnamon, half an Ounce of Nutmeg, two Ounces of Liquorice Powder, or powder'd Sugar, and mix the whole together. This will strengthen the Horse much. When he is very low, you may put five or six Yolks of Eggs into the Panada every Night and Morning, till he comes to eat; rubbing him every Day a-cross the Reins, and down the Legs, with Brandy and Oil of Turpentine in equal Quantities, according to the Directions for a foundered Horse.

##### *A Medicine for the Stag-Evil.*

Take *Venice Treacle*, and *Cordial Powder*, of each one Ounce; *Manna* and *Sugar*, of each two Ounces; mix them together in a Bottle of Wine, and let the Horse take two of these Draughts every Day, giving a Glyster between them. Whatever you give him by the Mouth, take care not to raise his Head too much, but rather sink it from time to time: For raising the Head will stupify, and may possibly make him fall, in which Case it would be difficult to get him up again. Nor must you force him to rise, but rather surround him with Dung, in order to keep him warm. Use the same Means to open his Mouth when he is down, as



CHAP. when he is standing, with as little Violence as possible. Some Horses have continued 2  
 XXII. Fortnight in this Condition, and yet have done well.  
 XXIII.

## C H A P. XXII.

*The Vives.*

**T**HIS Distemper is most frequent in high mountainous Countries, especially to Horses that are not used to the Crudities produced in the Stomach by the Spring and Fountain Waters that rise in hilly Grounds. Standing-Waters, or those that have very little Current, are the least dangerous, and seldom cause the Vives: But very deep Wells are bad.

To prevent this Malady, when one is obliged to reside in, or to pass thro' such a Country, where no other Water can be got, it is proper to take away the Rawsness of the Water with Bran or Meal, or to heat a Part of it, or to stir the Whole a good while with the Hands. When there is no Opportunity to do either of these, take care to trot your Horse immediately after he has drunk, in order to warm the Water within him. Without such Precautions your Horse will be always in Danger.

*Remedies for the Vives.*

In the first Place cover your Horse, and shut him up close in the Stable, that as little Air as possible may come to him. If there be any Sheep-fold at Hand, that is still better to shut him up in, bringing all the Dung together with a Fork, and heaping it about him like a Wall. Let him continue two Hours thus inclosed, and then give him the following Drink.

Take *Honey*, one Pound; *White-Wine*, two Quarts; *Juniper Berries*, one Handful; one *Nutmeg*, and thrice its Weight of *Cinamon*. Powder the Berries and Spices, and mix them with the White-Wine and the Honey.

*Another Remedy.*

When a Horse is attacked with the Vives, look in his Ears, and you will find a thick Lining, or Sort of Tumour, about as big as that in the Neck, between the Joint and the nether-Jaw, under the Ear. Open this with a Lancet or Incision-Knife, and it will discharge a kind of corrupted Blood, which will be mixed with Matter, if the Disease has been of long Continuance. Perform this Operation in both Ears, and the Horse will find Relief in an Hour or two after.

As this Disease is almost always accompanied with the Gripes, which proceeds from the same Cause, I shall in the next Place treat of that Distemper.

## C H A P. XXIII.

*Of the Gripes or Cholick.*

**T**HIS Disease resembles that of the same Name in human Bodies, and has much the same Cause: But I shall introduce it with saying a little more concerning the Vives.

If you are in a Place where Remedies may be had, walk your Horse till he is a very little warmed, and then beat his Glands gently with the Handle of a Hammer, or any other Piece of Wood, without opening them. After that, open the Jugular Vein. Then take four Ounces of Conserve of Elder, and dissolve it in a Bottle of Wine, with two powder'd Nutmegs and a Quarter of Sugar. When your Horse has drank this, wrap him up close, and leave him to sweat. Two Ounces of the Seeds of Garden-Cresses, in case the Elder-Conserve cannot be got, may be infused a Quarter of an Hour in a Bottle of Wine, and given for the same Purpose as hot as possible. For want of both, take four Ounces of Venice Treacle, with a small Handful of Salt, and dissolve them in Wine to give as the others.

When the Vives are accompanied with the Gripes, the same Remedy will operate, if you add to the Draught an Ounce of Salt Prunel. If it be still ineffectual, add four Ounces of Nut-Oil, or Oil of Olives, and half an Ounce of Oil of Petre. If the Horse continues in Pain, it is a Proof that the Passage of his Bladder is stopped, or that his Urine is detained in the Reins. In the former Case, take a Piece of Whalebone as long as your Arm, and reduce it to the Size of a Wheat Straw. Make it very round and smooth, with a little Knob at the End,



End, to which fasten a Bit of fine Muslin. Dip this in sweet Oil, and having dextrously drawn the Horse's Yard out of the Sheath, thrust it up the Passage to the Bladder. If this does not bring out any Water, it proves the Disorder to be in the Reins; but if a little comes, it shows the Bladder to be full. Let a Man then rub his Hand and Arm up to the Elbow with Oil or Butter, and thrust it up the Horse's Fundament, in order to pull all the Dung out of the great Gut, taking care not to scratch him with his Nails. The Gut being empty, he may carry his Hand to the Bladder, which, if he finds it swelled, he must gently press, and so oblige the Horse to piss. When nothing is thus found in the Bladder, it proves the Water to be still in the Kidneys.

If the Draught with Oil of Petre gives the Horse no Relief, but he continues in great Pain, lying down and rising every instant, take a large Quantity of Blood from his Neck-Vein, and then give him the following Remedies, *viz.* a Bottle of Emetic Wine, in which put a Quarter of Nut-Oil, and an Ounce of Oil of Amber. For want of the Oil of Amber, take four or five hundred Wood-Lice dried and powdered, and use them in its room. Give this for a Draught. It would be also proper to administer a Glyster twice or three Times in one Day, in which there should be an Ounce of Amber, and as much Oil of Petre. If you cannot get these, use two Ounces of Salt Prunel, or a large Handful of common Salt: And if this Remedy does not cure your Horse, depend upon it no other will.

*Another Remedy for the Gripes.*

Take a Handful of *Rue-Seed*, pound it in a Mortar, and mix it in a Pint of warm *White-Wine*, which give for a Draught. Immediately after walk your Horse an Hour, or an Hour and an half, without suffering him to lie down, which in this Disease he will continually endeavour to do: For which Reason you must give him no Repose till his Pain ceases.

*Another.*

When a Horse cannot urine, take *Black Rosin*, two Ounces, in Powder; mix it with two Yolks of Eggs, and add by Degrees a Pint of *Ale*, and give it the Horse warm. You may walk him an Hour or two after taking it.

*Another Way to make a Horse piss.*

Take *Parsley Root*, or the Heart of a *Leek*, of the greatest Length you can get, and endeavour to thrust it into the Orifice of the Yard. This alone is sufficient in a simple Retention.

*For the Gripes.*

Take *Green Anise* two Ounces, Oil of *Olives* a Pint, *White-Wine* a Bottle; bruise the *Anise*, mix with it the Oil and Wine, and give the Whole to drink warm. Walk him two or three Hours after, and let him not drink for twelve Hours; then give him warm Water, with Bran or Meal.

*Another Remedy.*

Take ten or twelve *Radishes*, in proportion to their Size, with the Greens on; boil them in three Pints of *White-Wine* to half the Quantity; strain the Liquor thro' a fine Cloth, and give it warm to the Horse. When he has taken it, thrust a slender Piece of *Mallows-Root* up his Yard as far as you can, which may be near half a Foot. A Piece of yellow Wax Candle, well greased, may serve when the *Mallows* cannot be had.

*To provoke Urine.*

Take two or three large Heads of *Garlick*; cut them and bruise them in a Mortar, with Oil of *Olives*, till they come to the Consistence of an Ointment, with which rub the Testicles and the naked Yard of the Horse, repeating it every Quarter of an Hour to the Number of five or six Times. If the Retention be not extraordinary, this will cure it.

There is another Disease called the Bloody Gripes, which happens most frequently to Choleric Horses, either for want of drinking at the usual Time, or by drinking their Water too cold, or thro' too violent Labour, or their own Restiveness. Tho' in some Points it resembles the Vertigo, or Spanish Evil, it must however be treated in a different manner.

*A Glyster*



*A Glyster for the Gripes of every kind.*

You must give no Rest to a Horse that is attacked with the Gripes, but keep him moving till he takes the following Remedy. Boil good Wheat Bran thoroughly in a sufficient Quantity of Water, which strain afterwards thro' a Linnen Cloth, and put to it a Quarter of Oil of Olives, a Quarter of Honey, two Ounces of strong Catholicon, Salt Prunel and Rock Oil, of each one Ounce. Admister this by way of Glyster as hot as the Horse can bear it without hurt, and if the Pain continues four Hours after, make him take the following.

*A Drink.*

Take *Venice Treacle* one Ounce and an half; *Salt Prunel*, Oil of *Petre*, each one Ounce; Oil of *Turpentine*, half an Ounce; *Sweet Oil*, two Ounces.

Mix them all well in a Pint of warm Wine. If this does not effect a Cure, repeat your Glysters two or three Times a Day till you perceive your Horse better; and towards the End of the Fit use Glysters composed only of Bran-water, Honey, Oil and common Salt.

I proceed now to another Distemper, which, tho' often from the same Cause, is worse than the Gripes. It is called the *Vertigo*, or *Spanish Evil*, because the *Spanish* Horses are more subject to it than those of other Countries; which however are not exempt from it, especially the *English* Horses.

## C H A P. XXIV.

*Of the Vertigo, or Spanish Evil.*

THIS Distemper proceeds from different Causes: Sometimes from the intense Heat of the Sun, when a Horse stands at Piquet in the Army, or elsewhere, with his Face to the *South*: Sometimes from the Indiscretion of a Rider, who fatigues the Creature too much in giving him his Lesson, either at Piroets with the Head to the Pillar, keeping him at them too long, and with too much Eagerness, or at the natural or reversed Piroets. When this Distemper seizes a Horse, he kicks and flings, runs his Head against a Wall, or any Thing else that he meets, and now and then falls as if he was drunk. Some will even jump down a Precipice, or thrust their Fronts against any Thing with so much Force, as to drop down dead. You must keep them out of the way therefore of every Thing they can lean against, and tie them between two Pillars with a double-rein'd Halter, to prevent their doing themselves any Mischief; which they certainly would if left at the Rack or Manger.

When you perceive a Horse attacked with this Distemper, make immediately a Hair Rowel under his Foretop, and keep it Running with *Basilicum* or any digestive Medicine for ten or twelve Days.

N. B. It should be made with a red-hot Iron, in order to draw more Humours to the Part from the Brain; and the Rowel should be stirred every Day, and anointed afresh, for the same Reason.

As soon as this first Operation is over, the very same Day, give him some refreshing Glysters, and administer Cordials with Wine, Day after Day, as directed in the preceding Article. Care must be taken, during the whole Cure, to put the Horse in a dark Stable, where nothing may disturb him. His Glysters, for the three or four first Days, must be two or three in twenty-four Hours. When the Wounds in his Head are cured, walk him about very leisurely, and be sure not to turn him short. Horses that have been seized with this Distemper will never be fit for the Manage, unless perhaps you have the Prudence to work them in Promenades, or the War-Manage, which is done in such extensive Lengths, that you may even put them on the Gallop. Volts or Piroets are very apt to make him relapse into his Vertigo.

*Another Method of Cure.*

If a Horse has been long vertiginous, and grows very desperate, make a Rowel as before under his Foretop, and four other Holes at the upper Part of his Mane, near his Ears, leaving only room to move his Halter. Let the Rowel run at least two Inches under his Foretop, and your four other Holes be at least two Inches distant. You must perform this Operation while the Fit is upon him, and put Pieces of Cord, dipped in *Basilicum*, into the Holes from



from one to the other, keeping them running, and afterwards healing them as the Rowel under the Foretop. Give plenty of Glysters and good Cordials during the Course of the Malady.

The *Italians* call this Distemper *Vermiforme*, because they imagine it to be a Worm between the Flesh and the Skin. Others make this Worm run along the spinal Marrow, and drop his Venom upon the Hole of the Brain, which kills the Horse, unless he be relieved in time, by catching and burning the Worm. You must take, say they, a large Handful of a fat Ram's Wool, and rub the Horse with it, from his Tail along his Reins, quite up to his Mane and Head. You must likewise twist all his Mane, proceeding from the Withers to the Ears, with the same Sort of Wool. They pretend there is an Antipathy between this Wool and the Worm, which facilitates the taking of the latter, who seats himself under the Foretop, where you destroy him with a red-hot Iron. But these are all so many Fables: That which they call a Worm is only a Humour, which indeed flies about from Place to Place, as the Gout does in Men. I do not deny that the Ram's Wool may change the Situation of the Pain: But Experience has taught me, that by rubbing the Horse well in the same Parts against the Hair, with a Wisp of Straw or Hay, without any Wool, the same Effects may be produced. The whole Cure therefore depends on the hot Iron, used as above directed.

C H A P. XXV.

*A Remedy for Numbness of the Senses, which resembles a Vertigo.*

**T**AKE a small Stick, or a Bull's Pizzle, and fasten to the End of it a Bit of Linnen Rag two or three times double: Dissolve Canary-Soap in a little Brandy, and dip the Rag in it: Then thrust it several Times up the Nose, first in one Nostril, then in the other, as high as you can. Repeat this Application for some Time three or four Times a Day, and it will give Relief. But you must not forget, in the mean Time, to give him refreshing Draughts and Glysters.

*Another Remedy for the Head-ach.*

Take hold of the Glands in the Place where the Vives come, beat them, and open them with a Fleam or Incision-Knife, in order to let in the Air. Keep the Horse from Oats, and give him no Water before Bran has been boiled in it. Then perform the following Operation.

Take black Hellebore Roots, and steep them some Hours in Wine-Vinegar to soften them: Open the Skin under the Breast of the Horse, just in the middle between his Fore-Legs, and with a wild Goat's Horn, a Piece of Bone, or even with your Finger, make a Cavity between the Skin and the Flesh, so as to form a kind of Bag: Put the Hellebore Root into this Cavity, and then sew or pin up the Skin, leaving the Root there till it drops out of itself. If the Part swells much within 24 Hours, you may conclude your Horse will recover; but otherwise he is in great Danger. You may rub the Swelling once every Day with the following Ointments, till a Cure is effected.

Take Ointment of *Marshmallows*, of *Poplar Buds*, of *Roses*, of *Basilicum*, Oil of *Bays*, common *Honey*, of each four Ounces; melt them all together, and use them cold. Towards the End of the Cure, when the Roots are dropped out, wash the Wound with the following Mixture, beat up well together. *Vinegar*, Oil of *Turpentine*, each one Quart; common *Salt*, four Ounces. Use it with a Piece of Sponge, or a Linnen Rag, in order to keep the Part clean.

Often wash the Mouth of a Horse in this Distemper with White-Wine Vinegar and Honey, in order to restore his Appetite; especially after he has taken the following Drink.

Seeds of *Aniseed*, *Cummin*, *Fennel*, *Coriander*, *Juniper Berries*, *Liquorice Powder*, of each one Ounce: Reduce the Whole into a fine Powder, of which give two Ounces at a Time three Mornings running, having infused it some Hours in a Bottle of Wine upon hot Ashes. Let the Horse fast four Hours before, and as long after taking this Remedy. You may put in every Draught a Quarter of fresh Butter, and as much Sugar; and to the first add an Ounce or an Ounce and an half of Venice Treacle, in proportion to the Strength of the Horse; which you may omit in the other two Draughts, upon the least Sign of an Amendment.

H

*Another*



Take *Roch Alum*, one Ounce; Fine *Loaf Sugar*, two Ounces: Dissolve the Whole in a Bottle of White-Wine for a Draught, which repeat every Day for a considerable Time. Afterwards offer Oats to the Horse, and if he covets to eat them, it is a Proof he is better.

As this Disease is easily communicated, you must keep the sick Horse by himself. Many ignorant Persons attribute this contagious Quality to some Witchcraft in the Stable, whereas it exists only in the circumfluent Air. Even some Quacks of Farriers have taken upon them to remove these pretended Spells: But those who have no Idea of Magick may cure a Horse by the Medicines here prescribed.

Young Horses, that are large and fat, especially Coach-Horses, are the most liable to this Distemper. Old Horses however are not exempt from it, if they come near those that are infected; and when they are once attacked, they run a much greater Risque of their Lives than those that are young and robust.

## C H A P. XXVI.

*Of the Fever, or Fiery-Evil.*

MANY Persons who have no Skill in this Distemper, are forced to rely on the Judgment of their Farriers. Some ignorantly distinguish between the Fever and the Fiery-Evil, which in fact are all one, and well known to Persons of Experience. There are different Degrees of Fevers indeed in Horses, as well as in Men, some being more malignant than others. A Horse in a high Fever will be delirious; and if let loose would run into any Danger, like a Man in the same Condition.

To know if a Horse has the Fever, hold the Flat of your Hand close behind the Shoulder on the near Side, over-against the Heart, and feel if the Palpitation of the Artery be regular, or too violent; which Common Sense will teach you to distinguish in a Horse, as well as in a Man. If the Pulse beats vehemently, pull some Hairs out of the Mane or Tail, which you may do with Ease, and look at the Roots of them: Little white Knobs there, are a Proof of the Violence of the Fever. Clap your Hand also upon his Back-Bone, near the Cross, as if you would pinch him hard, and if the Horse does not bend in, his Distemper is very dangerous. A Horse that is diffident of his own Strength, and for that Reason will not lie down, is also in a bad Way. These three Symptoms are for the Information of those who cannot discover a Fever by the Palpitation of the Heart. But when a Horse is sensible of a Pinch on the Back-Bone, there is good Hope of Success; and when he can lie down without any Signs of Dread, it is a certain Proof that he is out of Danger, tho' he may not have recovered his Appetite: For every feverish Horse has a weak Stomach; and his Nourishment should be given him thro' a Horn, in the manner of a Drench, till he comes to his Strength. Glysters should be used plentifully, to abate the Violence of the Fever.

You may afterwards give him a Draught made of two Ounces of the Jesuits Bark, infused in a Bottle of Emetic Wine; but let him fast three or four Hours both before and after taking it. That Time being elapsed, give him a little Hay, or scalded Bran, or Bread, or Oats, and if he still refuses to eat, continue to feed him with the Horn. The next Day, if the Fever does not cease, repeat the Bark, and make him take it every Morning till you find that Effect. Your Horse will soon recover his Appetite when once his Fever has left him. If three or four Doses of the Bark are not sufficient, take an Ounce of Roch Alum, melt it in a Pint of Water, mix it with the Bark-Infusion, and give the Whole together.

If you should be in a Country where the Bark is not easy to be got, take the Tops of Wormwood and Centaury, of each an Ounce, half an Ounce of Gentian Root, and an Ounce of bitter Orange-peel: Powder the Whole, infuse it in a Bottle of Wine, and give it the Horse for a Draught, repeating it every Morning while the Fever continues. To dissipate the Vapours, which in this Distemper may affect the Head, give him refreshing Glysters very frequently; and to bring him to his Appetite, even when the Fever is gone, you must from time to time tempt him with Bread, Bran, Oats, Rye, Carrots, or Grass when it is in Season, offering but little at a Time, and of that Thing chiefly which he eats most freely. During the Course of the Malady, take *Assafoetida*, Honey, and Cinnamon, tie them up tight in a Linnen Rag, and put them four or five Times a Day into the Horse's Mouth, in order to provoke his Appetite; and if you perceive it has not that Effect, make him take the hungry



hungry Balls, which may be given in any Distemper without danger. I shall describe them at the End of the Book, in the Chapter of general Remedies. You may also give him, from time to time, a Bottle of Emetic Wine, which is very good for restoring a lost Appetite. It is indeed a violent Vomit to Mankind, but gives no Disturbance to a Horse. In Countries where Wine is dear or scarce, Ale will do as well. The manner of making it is, by infusing an Ounce of *Crocus Metallorum* in a Pint of Wine or Ale for several Days. On the contrary, it cleanses his Stomach, carries down the Phlegm, relieves the Heart, and produces only good Effects. This Preparation, which may be used in almost every Draught and Horse-Medicine, as well as in Glysters, is very easy to make, as will appear by what here follows.

CHAP.  
XXVII.

*Emetic Wine.*

Take two Ounces of Glass of Antimony, steep it twenty-four Hours in a Bottle of Wine or Ale, and then take it out, and give the Liquor to your Horse. This is all you have to do; and you may dry your Glass, and keep it as long as you please, and use it a hundred Times over, without lessening the Virtue, provided you dry it every Time: Nor will a Pound of this Preparation, when put in the same Quantity of Wine, make it any stronger than two Ounces. As a Bottle of this Wine or Ale is a proper Dose for a Horse, so half a common Gill Glass is enough for a Man: And if you want to vomit ten People, you need only put in ten Glasses of Wine as you take the other out, without adding a Grain to the Antimony. A very strong Horse may take three Pints at a Dose.

*Remedy for a Fever.*

Take *Venice Treacle*, one Ounce and half: *Jesuits Bark*, one Ounce: Put the Whole in a Bottle of Wine, and infuse it about an Hour upon hot Embers, and then give it the Horse. Continue this Remedy every Morning till the Fever abates, using Glysters all the Time of the Distemper.

C H A P. XXVII.

*Of the Fashions.*

**T**HIS takes away a Horse's Stomach, and causes a Palpitation in his Heart and Flanks; obliges him to fall back from the Manger, and hang on his Halter. It is caused by excessive Heat, which occasions a contagious Fever; and therefore the Horse that is taken with it, should be separated from all others. Bleed him in the Neck-Vein, and then with all possible Expedition refresh him with cooling Drinks, such as *Salt Prunel* dissolved in warm Water, or the like; giving immediately after the following Glyster.

Take *Cassia* and *Lenitive Electuary*, each one Ounce and half; common *Honey*, and *Honey* made with the Herb *Mercury*, or *Mel Mercurialis*, each four Ounces: Boil the Whole in a Gallon of Bran-Water, and then give it the Horse. You should also apply a Cautery of *Hellebore* Root under the Breast, between the Skin and the Flesh (as directed for the Head-ach) to draw off the bad Humours from about the Heart. If the Fever continues, bleed him on both sides the Flank. A Horse attack'd with this Disease, and having a Slow Fever, may be readily relieved by good Drinks, nourishing Panadas, and refreshing Glysters often repeated. I begin with the

*Nourishing Drinks and Panadas.*

Take Wheat-Flour, and make it into a Paste with warm Water. When it is well kneaded, cut it into small Bits, and boil them about half an Hour in a Sauce-Pan of Water. Give this to the Horse with a Horn three Times a Day, and feed him in this manner till he has strength enough to eat his usual Diet.

*Another Panada.*

Take common Bread, and have it dried in the Oven till you can easily reduce it to a Powder; dilute this Powder with Cow's Milk, warmed upon Embers, and add two Ounces of Sugar. You may give this three times a Day: It is needless to say in what Quantities, because, as the Design of it is only to support and strengthen the Horse, the Quantity must be proportioned to those Purposes. It is excellent for all Horses who cannot eat for want of Strength.

*A Medicine*



*A Medicine for the abovementioned Disease.*

Take *Sugar Candy*, four Ounces; *Cinnamon*, *Cloves*, *Mitbridate*, *Honey of Roses*, each one Ounce; *Saffron*, half an Ounce: Put the Whole in a Bottle of White-Wine, and having warmed it, give it to the Horse for a Draught. Repeat it Day after Day till a Cure is effected.

*A Nourishing Glyster for the same Disorder.*

Take a Sheep's Head, and half a Pound of Nut-Oil: Boil the Head in a large Kettle of Water, till the Flesh comes from the Bones in a perfect Jelly: Make a Glyster with this and the Oil. If the Reins of the Horse appear to be over-charged, give him one that is laxative, for which I shall insert a Form at the End of this Book.

*Another Remedy.*

Take *Gentian Root*, two Ounces; *Long Birthwort Root*, and round ditto, *Aniseed*, *Fennel Seed*, *Fœnugreek Seed*, each one Ounce; *Bay-Berries*, and *Poppy-Seed*, each half an Ounce: Powder the Whole; boil it in a Bottle of White-Wine over a gentle Fire, and give it for a Draught.

*Another Medicine for the same Purpose.*

Take about two Handfuls of *Sage*, pound it well, and then boil it in White-Wine: Strain the Wine, and put to it the following Seeds, having first reduced them to a Powder, viz. *Fennel Seed*, *Aniseed*, each one Ounce; *Coriander Seed*, two Ounces: Give it for a Draught.

*Another.*

Take *Ginger*, and long and round *Birthwort*, each one Ounce; *Olive or Sweet Oil*, four Ounces; *Bay Berries*, *Saffron*, *Myrrh*, each half an Ounce: Pound the Whole, mix it in a Bottle of White-Wine, and give it warm.

## C H A P. XXVIII.

*Incontinence of Urine.*

SOME Horses are subject to stop often to stale, which is a great Inconvenience, especially when the Rider or Driver does not observe to give them sufficient time, but hurries them on in the very Action. As a Horse discharges his Water but little at a Time, the Bladder, when full, swells so suddenly and violently, that it may kill him. To remedy this, take two Ounces of Seed of common Burdock, very ripe, and well cleansed, because otherwise there are little Hairs on it that will stick to the Knots of the Throat, and make him cough a long while. Some Horses have been six Months, others a whole Year, before they have got over this. Pound this Seed very fine, and, with the Flour of Liquorice Powder, infuse an Hour or two on warm Ashes in a Bottle of Wine. Let him take this for three Weeks or a Month together every Morning, till the Distemper abates. It may be given likewise in Bran or Oats, Morning and Evening, two Ounces each time. Alum Poffet, given in a Horn, is another very good, and perhaps the best Remedy for this Disease.

*For a Horse that pisses Blood.*

Boil the Quantity of two common Feeds of Bran in a Gallon of Water, and when it is well boiled, strain it thro' a Linnen Cloth, and then boil in it fifty Figs, to which add an Ounce of Melon Seeds cleansed, and the same Quantity of Seeds of Citrul, or great Gourd, pounded well in a Mortar. Give a Quart of this at a Time, Night and Morning; and thus it will serve two Days. But in Summer-time, when the Composition will not keep, you must make fresh every Day, and only half the Quantity here prescribed. Continue this Draught for some Time; and during the whole Course of the Disease, let the Horse eat nothing but scalded Bran, or Barley bruised in a Mill, and Wheat-Straw, or Chaff. Oats or Hay will retard the Cure, which without them may be soon expected.



**T**HIS Distemper is mortal to Horses if they are not soon relieved, especially in hot Countries, where twenty-five at the least die out of thirty that are seized with it. In *Holland* it is just the reverse; for there out of thirty it is a Chance but twenty-five recover, if they are but treated tolerably well. *Germany* and *France*, tho' temperate Countries, are notwithstanding pretty fatal in this Disease; and much more so are *Spain* and *Italy*, which are extremely hot.

The Anticor proceeds from different Causes; as for Instance, from the Remains of an old Distemper, which was never perfectly cured, or after which the Horse was too soon put to Labour; from too much Heat contracted in the Stable, by being kept up there a long Time without airing; or from having lost too large a Quantity of Blood, in what Part soever the Vein was opened. The Way to know when a Horse has this Distemper, is by looking under his Belly, to see if he has a Swelling there from the Sheath quite up between the Fore-Legs. This Swelling is sometimes larger, sometimes less, and very often the Sheath itself is affected with it. If it be a Mare, her Dugs usually grow turgid, tho' sometimes they continue without any Alteration. When you touch a Swelling of this kind, the Impressions of the Fingers remain for some Time, as if you had made them in a Bit of Puff-Paste, filling up again by Degrees as the Paste would rise. This Swelling contains only some bloody Water, that insinuates between the Flesh and the Skin, and which proves that all the Blood in the Veins is corrupted.

The first Thing to be done here, is to open the Skin under the Breast with a Razor or Incision-Knife, and make a Cavity with the wild Goat's Horn, or any like Instrument, as directed in a former Case; putting into it a Bit of Black Hellebore Root as big as a Nut, that has been steep'd an Hour or two in warm Vinegar. You must sew or pin up the Wound as in other Cases, and wait for the Swelling in twenty-four Hours, which comes almost in the Shape of a Hat. As this Swelling is the most favourable Symptom that can be, so a want of it shews the Life of the Horse to be in Danger; tho' sometimes indeed that Defect may proceed from the Badness of the Hellebore, it having lain till it has lost its Virtue.

To proceed to the Swelling: You must anoint it with Basilicum, to bring it to a Suppuration; which will draw away a great Part of the Distemper. You must also rub it between whiles with that Ointment which is ordered to be applied under the Jaws of a young Horse that has the Strangles. As soon as this Swelling becomes sufficiently soft, (which you may know upon touching it with your Finger, if the Cavity does not presently fill up, or at most while you can tell fifty or sixty) you must take an Iron proper for the Purpose, which all Farriers have, make it red-hot, and pierce the Tumour with it on each Side, in three or four Places. You must thrust in the Iron at each Place, till the bloody Water comes out as from a Tap, and then put a Broom-stick under the Horse's Belly, which two Men must hold at the Ends, and rub it backwards and forwards very hard, in order to force out as much Water as possible. You must afterwards anoint it every Day with the Ointment above-mentioned, till the Tumour disappears. Thro' the whole Course of this Distemper you must give the Horse Cordial-Medicines, as Venice-Treacle, Cordial-Powder, and good Rhubarb, in order to cleanse his Heart, and drive the Disorder out. If the Dung of the Horse in this Distemper appears too dry and black, you must give him from time to time some refreshing Glysters; which may be omitted when the Dung seems to be in good Order.

*Another Remedy for the Anticor.*

We have observed, in the preceding Article, that this Distemper may arise from different Causes: To which I must add, that it proceeds also from a Sort of Contagion. A Horse may be put in a Stable where sick Horses have been before; and, for want of due Care, that Stable may have been rendered unhealthy, and consequently infectious, so that a great many Horses may be ruined by being put in it. To remedy this, and prevent the Venom from reaching the Heart, and consequently from causing a Gangrene between the Flesh and the Skin, as soon as you perceive that a Horse is attacked with this Disorder, open the Skin under his Belly on each Side of the Swelling, with the Iron above-mentioned, and in every Orifice put a little Pellet of Burgundy-Pitch, about the Size of a Pea, melting it in with the red-hot Iron. Afterwards, rub the Swelling all over



CHAP.  
XXX.

every Day with Oils of Turpentine and Bays, mixed together in equal Quantities. If the Swelling has already reached the Breast, you should foment the Belly all over, five or six Times a Day, with the Decoction of Marsh-Mallow-Roots, prescribed in the Sequel of this Book. This must be followed by the Cautery of Black Hellebore, under the Skin between the Fore-Legs, which should be applied and dressed as directed on other Occasions. You must often give the Horse good Cordials, such as have been already prescribed in several Places of this Work. Both these and the Cautery will contribute to drive the Distemper out.

## C H A P. XXX.

*Of a Purfive, or Broken-winded Horse.*

THERE being no Remedy for broken-winded Horses, it would be almost needless to treat of them, were it not that some Quacks maintain they can cure this incurable Disorder. I leave to themselves the Glory of all such Cures, and shall be content with setting down a few Prescriptions, that may give Relief in this Case, and make the Horses capable of doing some Service, without running to any great and ineffectual Expence.

*A Medicine for the Relief of Broken-winded Horses.*

Take three Pounds, two Pounds and a half, or two Pounds of *fat Bacon*, in Proportion to the Size of the Horse; mince it small, and soak it twenty-four Hours in a small Quantity of warm Water, changing the Water every two or three Hours: Then take a Handful of *Smallage*, cut it fine, and beat it up with the Bacon. You must have a Pint of sweet Oil, to dip this Mixture in, and then give it the Horse in a Morning, after he has fasted all Night. Get upon his Back as soon as he has taken it, and give him an Airing for three or four Hours. Repeat this Prescription six times in twelve Days, keeping him all the time from Hay, or wetting what Hay you give him. His Oats should be bedewed with the Urine of a sound hearty Man, and afterwards mixed with the following Powder.

*A Powder to sprinkle among the Oats of a Broken-winded Horse.*

Take three or four Pounds of *Small Shot*, cast in Water, and beat it in a large Mortar, till it is reduced to Powder: Then take the same Weight of *Flowers of Sulphur*, and mix with it in an earthen Pot. Heat a Spit red-hot, and thrust it into the Pot, and when the Composition has taken Fire, wait till it goes out of itself. The Powder that remains at bottom you must pound over again, and sprinkle about a Thimble full of it, Night and Morning, over his Oats. This will relieve a Horse very much in ten or twelve Days, but radically to cure him is impossible.

*Another Remedy.*

Take *sweet Oil* and *Brandy*, a Pint of each; give it for a Draught three Mornings running, the Horse fasting six Hours before, and as many after taking it. A man must be a good Judge, who can tell on the fourth Day, whether your Horse is broken-winded or no, at least if he be not very bad indeed.

*Another Remedy for a Broken Wind.*

Take three large Handfuls of the Herb called *Ox's Tongue*, and boil it in six or seven Quarts of Wine, till it is half wasted. Give the Horse about a Quart every other Day, keeping him warm. Litter him well, and let him fast three Hours before and as long after taking this Draught. Give him a good Handful of Rye, and let his Hay be all soaked in Water. Wheat Straw is much the best for him, if you can get a sufficient Quantity. Sprinkle all his Oats with fresh human Urine. If you repeat this Course once a Month, it will make a broken-winded Horse able to do a great deal of Business.

*Another.*

Take *Figs*, either fresh gathered or dry, and pound as many of them as will yield you half a Pint of Juice by Expression, which mix with good Wheat-Bran. Give the whole Quantity Evening and Morning, and continue it for some time, observing to wet the Bran with warm Water. The following Draught should also be given for some Days.

Take



Take three Ounces of *fine Starch*, and half a Pound of *Boar's Lard*; dissolve them in a full Quart of Water, stirring it well; and give this to drink every Morning till the Horse mends. Mix a little Honey in his common Water, and if he will not drink when you offer it, keep him thirsty till next Day, and then use the following Fomentation.

Put two or three Handfuls of *Rosemary Branches*, Flowers and all if they are in Season, into a new earthen Pot: Fill the Pot with Brandy, cover it close, and set it over a gentle Fire, till it be ready to boil: Then put the Horse's Head into your Bag with Holes at both Ends, and perfume it with the Steam of the Pot from underneath, which will make the Horse sweat, and transpire the ill Humours that may affect his Lungs. Fumigate him in this Manner, Morning and Evening, for eight or ten Days, and if he is not perfectly broken-winded, you may hope for a Cure: If he is, this will do him great Service.

*Another.*

Keep your Horse shut up in the Stable a Fortnight, and then bleed him. Feed him only with Chaff, and scalded Bran, and let his Drink be fair Water warmed. If he has a great Cough, take an Ounce and an half, or two Ounces of Oil of Bays, and tie it up in a Rag for him to hold in his Mouth. Let him drink freely whenever he is a-dry. You must use this as long as the Cough continues, and when that leaves him, give your Horse the following Composition.

Take common *Sweet Oil* half a Pint; *Succotrine Aloes*, and *Saffron*, each half an Ounce: Put the whole, well mixed, into a Bottle of Wine, and give it for a Draught. Let him fast four Hours before, and as much after taking it. Then take a Bottle of White-Wine, and put in it six large Onions, boiling them to a Pap over a gentle Fire without Flame, and till the Water in them is all evaporated. Give this with a Drenching-Horn, three Days after the former: Then let him rest three Days, and let his next Draught afterwards consist of these Ingredients, *viz. Nutmegs, Cinnamon, Ginger, Long-Pepper*, each one Ounce: Put them all together in a Bottle of White-Wine, with four Ounces of Oil of *Olives*. Heat the Whole, before you give it the Horse, who should be walked two Hours before and two Hours after taking it. In twelve Days Time repeat the first of these Draughts; and if you are desirous to preserve your Horse, let him drink nothing but blanch'd Water, and never eat any Hay, unless obliged to it by Necessity. When that is the Case, see it be good and clean, and moisten it a little with Water.

*To preserve a Horse's Wind.*

Take dry Teazles, such as the Cloth-workers use, reduce them to Powder, and sift the Powder well. Give the Horse half an Ounce of it at a time, Night and Morning, among his Oats. This Remedy, simple as it seems, is excellent for the Relief of a Broken-winded Horse; and to preserve the Wind of a Horse that is not affected, give him a Dose of it whenever he is to take a long Heat.

*Another alleviating Remedy to a Broken-winded Horse.*

Take Lead, and file it to as fine a Powder as possible, of which give an Ounce at a time in the Horse's Oats, after they have been soaked in fresh human Urine, or for want of that in fair Water. This Remedy continued will do much Service. Observe in general, never to give any Thing dry in this Distemper.

*A Medicine to keep a Broken Wind from growing worse.*

Take half a large Handful of green Broom in Blossom, chop it small, and mix it with your Horse's Oats, after you have wetted them with human Urine. Deprive him of Hay, and give him Straw in the room of it, wetting it Night and Morning to make it the fresher: For many Horses will not eat it when kept wet from one Day to another. While you give him the Broom, which should be for eight Days running, lead him once or twice a Day to the Water, and make him swim without suffering him to drink; especially on the Day when you would have him appear sound-winded.

*Another*



*Another, to preserve the Breath of a Shortwinded Horse.*

Take Pimpernel and Cresses, of each a Handful and an half ; pound them together, and having put them in a Pot to infuse in a Bottle of White-Wine, give the Whole for a Draught. This is a very good Remedy.

*Another for the same Purpose.*

Take Broom-Flowers, and White-thorn Leaves the freshest and tenderest you can get, with the yellowest Leaves of Sallow, and Colts-Foot, of each an equal Quantity : Chop the Whole very small, and make the Horse eat as much of it as possible in his Bran. Keep your Horse on this Diet, and a little Straw between whiles, and his Wind will appear good.

*Another, for a Broken Wind.*

Diet your Horse for a Fortnight with Straw, Chaff, and Bran, and keep him from Work ; and four Days after give him the following Pills.

Take *Agarick*, *Aloes*, round *Birtwort*, each half an Ounce ; *Elecampane*, *Flowers of Brimstone*, common *Honey*, *Liquorice Powder*, each one Ounce. Powder all these Drugs ; mix them with fresh Butter, and make them into Balls. Roll your Balls in Sugar or Liquorice Powder, and give them every Day eight or ten Days running. This will very much relieve.

*A Powder to mix with the Oats of Broken-winded Horses, or Horses that have an inveterate Cough.*

Take a Bar of Iron or Steel (Iron is best, tho' Steel be most used) and heat it at the Forge till it comes out almost white. Then take a large Piece of Sulphur, thrust your Iron against it, and as it melts let it run into a Pail of Water. When the intense Heat is over, put it again into the Fire till it is as hot as before, and continue thus to put it to the Brimstone till you have melted four or five Pounds, more or less, as you have Occasion. Three Pounds of Sulphur, skilfully managed, will melt five or six Pounds of Iron or Steel. The Sulphur falls into the Water with the Metal, but you must leave it there, because when you take out what is melted, you must dry it and reduce it to Powder in a Mortar, and pass it thro' a fine Sieve, Sulphur and all. Take an Ounce or an Ounce and an half of this, according to the Corpulence of your Horse, and mix it with his scalded Bran. Some give this for a Month, or even six Weeks together, without perceiving any Effect ; but this should not hinder them from continuing it two Months upon Occasion, by which Time it will certainly do good. You must not throw away the Water in which the Metal was melted, but give a Quart of it to the Horse every Morning by Way of Draught. There have been those who have used File-dust for the same Purpose ; but it would be long before one could get a sufficient Quantity ; nor is that ever so fine as this Powder, which therefore is a more effectual and sovereign Remedy.

*Balls for a Broken Wind.*

Stamp eight Heads of *Garlick*, and two Ounces of *Horse-Raddish*, in a Mortar ; then add to them, three Ounces of *Flowers of Brimstone*, and make them into a Mass with a sufficient Quantity of *Sweet Oil* : Divide the Mass into four *Balls*. Let the Horse have one of them in the Morning, and another in the Afternoon.

*Others.*

Take *Galbanum* and *Gum Ammoniac*, of each half a Pound ; *Burdock Roots*, a Pound ; let them be well pounded in a Mortar, with a Quarter of a Pound of *Flowers of Benjamin*, adding by Degrees, *Sweet Oil*, 'till it becomes a Paste fit to be made into Balls, weighing each two Ounces. Give one in the Morning, and one in the Afternoon, two Hours before Watering.



## C H A P. XXVII.

*Heaving of the Flank.*

**H**ORSES that are attacked with this Distemper seem as if they were broken-winded, which often makes their Case seem doubtful, sometimes occasions Law-suits, and leads ignorant Practitioners into the Use of wrong Means. Dealers have been obliged to take their Horses again through the Suspicion of the Buyers, who were unacquainted with the Distemper we are treating of: And others have sold Horses that have been really broken-winded, under the Notion of their being only over-heated, and newly taken up from Grass.

This Accident often happens to Horses that have been over-rid, or have eat what is unwholesome; as damaged Hay, dusty or musty Oats, or such Drugs as the Jockeys give them to make them fat of a sudden. These Drugs seem at first to do them good; but they only heat their Inside, make them infirm, and bring on this Heaving of the Flank. It is known by the Wheezing of a Horse, and the continual Motion of his Flanks; his Bowels are tucked in, and so drawn together, that he may become bursten. The Cure should be speedily undertaken, and in the following Manner.

*A Remedy for the Heaving of the Flanks.*

Beat up a Pound of Bacon into a Lump, and soak out the Salt in River-water. Then take *Flowers of Brimstone*, *Honey of Roses*, *powder'd Aniseeds*, and *Fennel Seeds*, each 2 Ounces; *Roch Alum*, 1 Ounce.

Make this into ten or twelve Pills, each as large as a Nut, in the following Manner. When your Bacon is well soaked, cut it in very small Pieces, and pound it in a Mortar, and then add the Drugs above-mentioned, after having powdered the Fennel Seeds and Alum. With a sufficient Quantity of Barley-flour make the whole into Pills, and let the Dose be more or less in Proportion to the Strength of the Horse: Two or three of a Morning is the Quantity nearest a Medium. The Horse should be tied up five or six Hours before taking them, and three or four after. You must feed him only with scalded Bran, and if the Dose prescribed is not sufficient, repeat it in double the Quantity till the Beating of the Flank abates. Above all take care to give him easy Airings, without any Fatigue.

*Another, for a Heaving of the Flanks through too much Fatigue.*

Take *Juniper Berries*, *Wild Sage* dry'd, each 2 Ounces; *Bay Berries*, *Gentian Root*, each 3 Ounces; *Saffron*, half an Ounce. Having powdered the whole, tie it up in a Linen Cloth, and put it in a Pail of Water, which you are going to give the Horse to drink. After he has drank, fill the Pail again, and leave the Drugs to steep. In this manner the Composition will serve two Days, and then you must put in fresh till the Horse is well. During the whole Course put the following among his Oats or Bran.

*Fenugreek Seed*, and the Root of *Imperatoria*, each 1 Pound; *Gentian Root*, 2 Pounds; the Herb *Savin*, dry'd, half a Pound. Powder and mix these, and put a Spoonful of the Powder into his Oats or Bran every Time he eats, pouring on Water that you may mix them the better. It will very soon produce good Effects.

*Another, for the Beating of the Flanks occasion'd by Straining.*

The Beating of the Flanks occasioned by some Strain, whether through a Hurt on the Part, or by falling off a Bridge, or out of a Boat, or by leaping any Hedge or Gate, is very dangerous, and will kill a Horse without speedy Relief.

You must observe if there be any Swelling or Bruise, which the Horse will generally point out himself, by turning his Head that Way. When this is the Case, lose no Time, for the Place may suddenly mortify: To prevent which apply the following Remedy.

Take *Bole Armenic*, *Greater Comfrey Root*, *Black Pitch*, each 4 Ounces; *Sal Armoniac*, *Dragon's Blood*, *Frankincense*, each 2 Ounces; *Wheat-flour*, half a Pound; *Vinegar*, 2 Quarts. Dry the Drugs thoroughly, and having powdered them, take six Whites of Eggs, and put them in a large Pot, in order to mix the Powder with them and the Vinegar. Apply this hot to the Part, after having shaved off the Hair, and cover it with a Sheep-skin bound on with Leather-Thongs. Let it remain twelve Hours, and repeat



CHAP  
XXVIII.

the Application two or three Times, till the Horfe is relieved. In the mean time give him fome Cordials, in order to strengthen him, and drive the Distemper out. Give him no Oats, but only scalded Bran, and a little stale Rye-Bread; for that which is new would clog up his Teeth. A Horfe treated in this manner will very soon be out of Danger.

*A Remedy for a Horfe that is over-heated, and streightened in the Flanks.*

Take a Pint of Sweet Oil, and as much Milk, fresh from the Cow: Mix them together, and give them to the Horfe a little warm: Then walk him in the Air a Quarter of an Hour, and keep him from eating two Hours after as well as before taking it. Water him with fair Water as soon as he comes back into the Stable; and the two Hours being expired, give him a Feed of scalded Bran, but no Oats. Repeat the Remedy five or six Times, once in two Days, and let his Feed all the Time be the same. A little Barley just broke in the Mill is very good for him in this Case, and will contribute to a speedy Cure.

C H A P. XXVIII.

*Chest-Foundering.*

**T**HIS Distemper is much like the former, and proceeds from the same Causes; which makes some Persons call them both a *Heaving of the Flank*, without any Distinction. A Horfe may contract it by being lame behind, whether in the Hanch, the Leg, or the Muscles; or from any long Fatigue, either in the Army, or elsewhere. A Horfe that is delicate may avoid eating, through mere Indifference, till his Bowels are contracted, and he looks as lank and thin as a Grey-hound. A Mare may be sooner brought to fill out again than a Horfe by getting her covered, which is a Secret that Dealers make use of in order to sell their Mares: But as this Stratagem is not universally received, the most ready Cure is by the following Medicines.

*A Remedy for a Chest-foundered Horfe.*

Refresh your Horfe first with scalded Bran, depriving him of Oats. Some Days after bleed him in the Neck-Vein, and next Day give him a purging Glisters, and in the Evening some common Purge. Feed him with the best Hay you can get, and whenever you give him Bran, take a Pail half full of it, and then fill it with Water, having mixed them well to blanch the Water. You may dissolve in it half a Pound of Honey each time. This Water can serve but once, because it will grow sour in a Night's time, especially in Summer. If the Horfe will not eat the Bran that is at Bottom, after he has drunk the Water, take it out in Balls, and put them into the Manger, with a few Handfuls of Beans to provoke his Appetite. You may also give him Beans to make him drink the Water; but they must be your small Marsh-Beans, such as they throw to Pigeons. During this Course rub his Flanks every Day with good Oil Evening and Morning, and endeavour to loosen, as it were, the Skin of his Belly with your Hand gently, and by little and little, taking Care not to hurt him. It must be owned that this is a Work of Time, but it will certainly cure the Horfe in the End. The Horfe should have several Purges during the Course of this Distemper.

*Another, for the same Disorder.*

Treat your Horfe as before directed, and in order the sooner to make him belly, take Vine-branches and reduce them to Ashes. When you have four Ounces, sift it through a fine Sieve, and beat it up in a Bottle of Wine. Let the Horfe drink four Ounces of Sweet Oil, and then give him the Wine and Ashes through a Horn. Repeat this Remedy every other Day till the Horfe apparently recovers, and never neglect your Glisters when his Dung is hard and black; but when that is in good Order, Glisters are no longer necessary.

When you cannot get Vine-branches, use Elder-shoots in the room of them; but Vine-Wood is abundantly the best. Take great care that you do not rub the Skin of the Belly too roughly; for you cannot here go too tenderly to work.

C H A P.



## C H A P. XXIX.

*Worms in Horses.*

THERE are many different Kinds of Worms, and as many different Remedies proper to destroy them. To come at the Knowledge of this Distemper, you must observe that a Horse who has Worms grows meagre, and his Hair curls and frizzles; he looks dull and melancholic, and falls away visibly give him whatever you will. To be more certain of his Case, examine his Dung, and you will sometimes find it dry and powdery, and mixed with Worms that get loose from the great Gut; sometimes the Worms keep behind, but still the Dung is dry, and will not hang together. Another certain Sign of Worms is when the Horse appears very uneasy, and every Moment directs his Head to his Belly, sometimes on one Side, sometimes on the other, as if he would shew what ailed him. In this Case it is necessary to rub the Hand, and the Arm up to the Elbow, with Oil, and introduce it into the Fundament of the Horse; first cutting your Nails very short, and taking care not to scratch the great Gut as you pull your Hand back, when you have got in it all the Worms you can find. As for those that are in the other Bowels, where the Hand cannot possibly come, you must get rid of them by the following Remedy.

Take *Æthiops Mineral*, 3 Ounces; and the same Weight of fresh Butter to make it up into Pills, which you should roll in Liquorice Powder, and give the Horse fasting, keeping him so three Hours after. In a short Time the Worms will die, and come out with the Dung.

*Another Remedy.*

Take *Oil of Nuts*, 4 Ounces; *Gentian Root* powdered, *Flowers of Brimstone*, each 1 Ounce: Mix the Whole in a Pint of White-Wine, or Ale, and infuse it in a Pot close stopped over hot Embers, in order for a Draught. Give it the Horse warm, and let him fast two Hours before and as long after taking it.

*Another.*

Take *Succotrine Aloes*, *Agarick*, *Scammony*, each 1 Ounce; *Butter* without Salt, or *Hog's Lard*, 8 Ounces. Make the Whole into Pills, with Cordial Powder at your own Discretion, in order to give them a firm Consistence. The Use of these will clear a Horse of the Worms.

*Another.*

Take *Crocus Metallorum* in Powder, and every time the Horse eats Oats, put an Ounce of it among them: Continue this for some Days. Either of these Remedies will do the Business.

## C H A P. XXX.

*Swelling of the Testicles.*

THIS Distemper usually proceeds either from some Strain in Working, or from the Horse's having continued too long in the Stable, or from his putting one Leg over any Bar, and being checked by the Halter, or, in a Word, from any other Accident that confines a Horse, makes him kick and fling, and bruise his Cods. There is no other Way of knowing this Distemper but by some outward Swelling upon the Part. The coming down of the Testicles proceeds from the same Causes, with this Difference only, that it is a long time in discovering itself; whereas the other may come in one Night.

*A Poultice for the Swelling of the Testicles.*

Take about 4 Ounces of the Juice of *Leeks*, 2 Ounces of common *Salt*, a Quartern of the stalest leavened *Dough* you can get, 2 Ounces of the Juice of *Rue*, two Handfuls of *Rye-flour*, and about a Quartern of *Hog's Lard* ready melted. Boil the Whole with a sufficient Quantity of *Vinegar* to make a Pap about as thick as that for Children, and apply it spread thick like a Poultice.

*Another.*

Take *Bean flour* and *Vinegar*; make a Pap as before; add a little Salt, and use it as the other.

*Another.*



CHAP.  
XXX,  
XXXI.

Another.

Take *Leeks* and the Crum of *White Bread*, an equal Quantity of each; pound them with *Honey*, or *New Milk*: Boil the Whole together, and make it of a proper Consistence, to apply with Tow upon the Cods, covering it with an Ox's Bladder. Fasten it on with a Bandage, and apply fresh twice a Day, a little warmish, continuing the Use of it till the Swelling lessens. If this Remedy is properly applied, the Horse will be soon cured.

Another.

Bleed the Horse in the Flat of his Thighs; then take the Flour of *Wheat* and *Linseed*, *Turpentine*, and Oil of *St. John's Wort*, each 4 Ounces; Ointment of *Poplar Buds*, 2 Ounces. Mix the Whole with Vinegar, and make a Plaister for the Reins of the Horse, which will very much contribute to assuage the Swelling of the Cods. This may be made as soon as a Poultice.

*A Remedy for another Sort of a Swelling in the Testicles.*

The Swelling I mean, and which has not yet been mentioned, proceeds from a Collection of Humours which descend on the Part, and occasion great Pains. These Humours are often the Effect of eating Grass too tender: They may also proceed from a Horse's carrying too heavy Burthens, or having worked too hard, or eat too much. When Nature is over-charged, the obstructed Digestion causes Ventuosities which swell these Parts. To know when the Distemper proceeds from this, take your Horse abroad into some Water as high as the Bottom of his Stones, and if the Swelling sinks, you may be sure it proceeds only from Humours; and in that Case have Recourse to the following Remedies.

Take Potters Earth, and dilute it with Wine; stir it well, till it becomes very liquid: Then warm it, and with a Sponge dipped in it foment the Testicles and Sheath. If this does not cure him, add the Juice of Garden Night-Shade, and Rose-Water, an equal Quantity of each, and as much of both as you had put Wine to dilute the Earth. Apply this five or six Times a Day, till the Horse is cured. If the Swelling proceeds from his having worked too hard, or carried too heavy Burthens, you may know it by touching the affected Parts, and feeling a Hardness cleaving to the Skin. In this Case use the following Remedy.

Dry Beans in an Oven; reduce them to Flour; boil that in Vinegar, and make a Plaister to apply to the Cods, binding it on with a Bandage.

Another.

Take a large Quantity of Lees of Wine, Cummin, and Beans; boil up the Beans first to skin them, and then boil the Whole well together, and make an Addition of Vinegar. Put this Composition into a Bag that will cover the Cods, and apply it as warm as the Horse can bear. You may repeat the Application twice a Day, and in case the Swelling be very considerable, three times.

## CHAP. XXXI.

*A Remedy against the Gangrene.*

IT is proper to say that the following Composition will keep a long time, provided it be in a dry Place.

Take *Green Vitriol*, *White Vitriol*, *Roch Alum*, *Sealed Earth*, *Venetian Cerufs*, each 1 Ounce. Reduce every Drug into Powder separately; then take a clean earthen Pipkin, well glazed, and put in it two Ounces of Spring Water: Throw in each Powder by itself; first the *Alum*, then the *Green Copperas*, then the *White*, and afterwards the others, stirring continually with a wooden Spatula till it becomes a little hardish. Let it dry at last upon the Fire, till the Whole is as hard as a Stone: Then take off your Pipkin, and let it stand till next Day to cool in some damp Place, that so it may disengage itself from the Bottom of the Vessel, which it does easily if that be well glazed. But as the Gangrene stays for no to-morrow, you may break off some Bits of the Stone while it is warm, and apply them pulverised to the numbed Flesh, which begins to mortify. There is no other Way of using this Stone.

Another.



*Another for the same Purpose.*

CHAP.  
XXXI.

Take Green Baum, either out of a Garden or the Field ; pound it, and exprefs the Juice: Then take the same Weight of Mutton-Suet, with a Handful of common Salt ; put the Whole into a Pot or Pipkin, and juſt boil it up. Strain this Compoſition through a Piece of fine Linen, and apply ſome of it freſh every fix Hours to the beginning Mortification, till you ſee new Fleſh appear.

*A Remedy to hinder the Gangrene from reaching the Heart.*

Take *Aſſa ſætida*, *Bole Armenic*, *Flowers of Brimſtone*, each 3 Ounces: Powder the Whole, and put it in a Bottle of Wine or Ale, and give it the Horſe in form of a Draught. It will hinder the Gangrene from ſpreading farther.

*Another.*

When you ſee the Gangrene ſeize any Part of a Horſe's Body, take the Eſſence of Turpentine, and warm it in ſome covered Veſſel, which the Air cannot enter. Waſh the Wound with this Eſſence, and then cut off what dead Fleſh you can come at. Put corroſive Sublimate powdered upon what you cannot cut off, and apply Tow, dipped in the Eſſence, upon the Wound, which muſt be dreſſed in that manner twice a Day till it is cured. When the dead Fleſh is all gone, the Sublimate can be of no Service. But as the Gangrene will cauſe an Inflammation, make uſe of the following Baths.

*Baths, or Fomentations.*

Take Roots of Maſh-Mallows bruifed and boil them in a ſufficient Quantity of Water, till the Water becomes thick and muddy: Then take it off the Fire, and when cool, rub the Horſe with it hourly till the Inflammation diſſipates.

*A Remedy againſt internal Venom.*

When a Horſe loſes his Appetite of a ſudden, and ſwells all over the Body, it is a Sign of internal Poiſon, perhaps from having eat ſomething venomous among his Hay or Graſs. Let the firſt Thing you give him be a Draught of this kind.

*A Drink.*

Take Juice of Mullein and Oil of Nuts, of each 2 Ounces; mix them together and give it the Horſe. Let him take upon it a Pint of White-Wine, and ply him with laxative Glifters between whiles. If the Horſe is not relieved by this Drink, depend upon it the Poiſon is very violent. In that Caſe have recourſe to Venice-Treacle, which uſe in the following manner.

Take *Venice-Treacle*, 4 Ounces; *Oil of Nuts*, 2 Ounces: Dilute the Whole together, and mix it with a Bottle of White-Wine, which give for a Draught. If the Venom has not affected any of the noble Parts, you may promiſe yourſelf a Cure.

CHAP. XXXII.

*A Remedy for the Bite of a Serpent, or other venomous Animal.*

**I**F a Swelling comes on any Part of a Horſe's Body, inſpect it carefully, to ſee if there be no Prick or Bite capable of cauſing this Inflammation; for there may chance to be ſome Serpent or other venomous Animal in the Stable, eſpecially in the Country, though the ſame Thing may happen in a Town, in any Nation whatſoever. There is in *Holland* a kind of venomous little Beaſt called a Shrew-mouſe, ſomewhat leſs than a common Mouſe, with a more piqued Noſe, and of a grayer Colour. His uſual Reſidence is in Stables or Stalls, and his Bite is very venomous to all Sorts of brute Animals, and even to Mankind. Loſe no Time therefore when his Bite appears, but prepare the following Remedies, which are eaſily come at, wherever you may be.

Take a pointed Burning-iron, make it red-hot, and apply it to the Part bitten, thruſting it as far as you can, provided there be no Nerves in the way, that may endanger laming the Horſe. One Hole is not enough: You muſt make five or ſix round the Wound; and dreſs them with Eſſence of Turpentine and Oil of Spike, mixed in equal Quantities.

L

For



CHAP. XXXIII. For want of these you may use Brine, or Water well seasoned with common Salt, or the following Ointment.

Take green Cole-wort Leaves and Hog's Fat, the same Weight of one as the other; pound them in a Mortar to an Ointment, with which dress the Wound. You must not have Recourse to the common Counter-poison, and to Purging, in order to evacuate the ill Humours, for fear the Venom in the mean time should corrupt the whole Mass of Blood; for when that is once done, the best Remedies will be ineffectual, and Death must inevitably be the Consequence.

#### CHAP. XXXIII.

*How to purge a Horse gently, and fatten him.*

**T**AKE about a Dozen of Starlings; put them in a large Copper, just as they are, Guts, Feathers, and all; boil them till they drop to pieces, and then, having taken them out of the Water, pound them in a large Mortar; put them again into the same Water, and give them another boil. Strain the whole through a fine Linen Cloth, and see that you have about six Quarts of the Pap or Jelly, of which give the Horse one every Morning, having mixed with it half a Pound of Bean-flour. Never put in your Flour till just as you are going to give the Horse his Draught. You should get a good Stock of Starlings, that you may have enough to serve the Horse fifteen or twenty successive Mornings. Give him frequently a small Quantity of Hay, to provoke his Appetite, which too much at a Time will cloy. Before he drinks let him eat a Handful of whole Beans, and get the cleanest Oats you can, to feed him with three Times a Day. There are few Horses that will not grow fat, when managed in this manner.

*Another Way to effect the same.*

First, keep your Horse always with an Appetite, feeding him little and often. Give him Oats three Times a Day, putting into them every Time a Handful of Nettle-Seed; and let him constantly drink warm Water blanch'd with Bean-flour, or, for want of that, Wheat-flour. In three Weeks or a Month this will make him fat.

*Another Way.*

Instead of Oats, feed your Horse with Wheat half boiled. Let his Water every Time be blanch'd with Wheat-flour, and before he drinks, always give him a Handful of Fenugreek, mixed with a small Handful of Oats, in order to warm his Inside, and make him often thirsty; for the more he drinks, the sooner he will be fat.

*Another.*

When you have a mind to fatten a Horse, give him instead of Oats a Peck of Rye-flour Morning and Evening, made into a Paste, and rolled up in Balls. You have nothing more to do but to give him Hay, a little at a Time, and often, and now and then a Peck of Beans just par-boiled; watering him with blanch'd Water, in which Leaven has been steeped. This will fatten a Horse in three Weeks or a Month, and make him fit for Sale.

*To give a Horse Appetite.*

Take Honey, 4 Ounces; Pepper, Starch, each 1 Ounce; Violet Leaves, Nutmegs, Barley-flour, each half an Ounce; Mix the Whole together, and make it into Balls, which roll in Liquorice Powder. After each Ball, to drive it down, make the Horse swallow a Gulp of Emetic Wine, given through the Horn. A Pint will be more than sufficient for the whole Dose of Balls.

*A Remedy for Cancers in the Mouth, or upon the Tongue of a Horse.*

Take three or four large Leeks, and pound them well; an Ounce of powdered Alum, two Ounces of Honey, half an Ounce of broken Pepper, and an Ounce of Salt: Put the Whole in a Quart of Verjuice, or the Juice of Lemons, and wash the Cancers with it three or four Times a Day till they are cured, which will not be long.



C H A P. XXXIV.

*For a Horse whose Tongue is cut by the Bridle or Halter.*

A Horse often cuts his Tongue in the Place where he mouths the Bridle, or the Halter crosses him. To remedy this when it happens, take human Urine, Salt, Honey, and pounded Pepper; mix the Whole together, and wash the Tongue with it seven or eight Times a Day, with a Linen Rag. Or you may put the Drugs together in a Rag, and tie them up, for the Horse to hold in his Mouth four or five Times a Day, an Hour each Time: Only the Quantity of Honey should then be increased, to keep the other Ingredients together. This last manner is in fact better than the former, and will soon cure a recent Wound on the Tongue. A Hurt of this kind should never be neglected, because the Tongue of a Horse that has been cut, and not presently healed, is apt to make his Mouth rough, which is occasioned by his tossing about his Head, and opposing the Hand.

C H A P.  
XXXIV.

*Another for the same Purpose.*

Take dried Figs, such as are sold at the Grocers, pound them to a Mass, and mix with them the same Weight of Honey, to make a Composition for holding in the Mouth, like the preceding.

*Pills for a Horse in a sick and languishing Condition.*

Take fresh Butter, 8 Ounces; Honey of Roses, 4 Ounces; Senna Leaves, Coriander Seed, Mithridate, each 1 Ounce; Bitter Apple, Bay Berries, Saffron, each half an Ounce; Sugar, 2 Ounces: Powder and mix the Whole well, and make Pills for two Doses, to be given two successive Mornings, and washed down with a little Wine. The Horse should fast six Hours before, and as many after taking this Remedy.

*Another Way of purging a Horse.*

Take Succotrine Aloes, 2 Ounces; Senna Leaves, 1 Ounce; Sweet Oil, 1 Pint: Mix the Whole together, and give it the Horse after he has fasted all Night: Keep him six Hours longer without eating or drinking, and then give him some scalded Bran and blanched Water.

The next Day, at the same Hour he took his Purge, give him a gentle Airing if it does not work; and when it begins to operate, put him up again into the Stable, cover him warm, and from time to time give him Bread, scalded Bran, or even Oats, but in very small Quantities, because his Stomach will then be weak. Purges take away the Appetite of a Horse, which must therefore be restored with *Assa fœtida*, or some cordial Composition.

*A Water proper for all Sorts of Wounds.*

Take round Birthwort and powdered Sugar, of each 2 Ounces: Boil the Birthwort in a Quart of White-Wine till it comes to a Pint, and then strain the Whole through a fine Linen Cloth, and keep it in a Bottle for Use. You need only wash the Wound twice a Day with this Water, in order to keep it clean, without any other Application; and if it be fresh received, this alone will soon heal it.

*How to dry up any Wound.*

Wash the Wound once a Day with warm Wine; and if you melt a little Sugar in it, so much the better: Then take the Powder of Rosemary Leaves, and sprinkle on the Sore, which will soon dry away.

*An excellent Suppurative for the Corns, or Kernels, that come on a Horse's Back.*

In the first Place take Oil, or any warm Ointment, or for want of that Hog's Grease, the oldest you can get: With this rub the Corns, and it will make them fall off. Then dress the Wounds with Essence of Turpentine, and Lint made of old Cords beat to a Powder. As you put on the Essence of Turpentine, sprinkle the Lint-Dust upon it, which will bind it together and stay on the Part. Continue this Course till the Horse is cured. I could prescribe other Remedies, which would be harder to get, more expensive, and yet not a whit better.

*Another*



## CHAP.

XXXV.

XXXVI.

## Another Suppurating Ointment.

Take *Sweet Oil*, 2 Ounces; *Yellow Wax*, *Venice Turpentine*, *Black Pitch*, *Black* and *White Rosin*, *Mutton Suet*, and *Hog's Lard*, each half an Ounce: Melt the Whole together over a gentle Fire, and reduce it to an Ointment, which you must preserve with Care. It is good in all Cases where Suppuration is wanted.

## C H A P. XXXV.

*The best Way of Cutting off a Horse's Tail.*

**Y**OU must shave off the Hair in the Place you design for the Operation, raising up and turning back what you intend to preserve. Then take a Bar, or thick Piece of Wood, of just a proper Length to support the Tail when set on one End: Hold it upright with one Hand, lay on the Tail, and with the other Hand clap cross it a sharp Hedging-bill at the proper Place, which must be struck through with a Hammer or Mallet. Some ignorant Persons put the Bill under the Tail, and strike on the latter; but this hurts and bruises it, and may be attended with bad Accidents. The Tail being cut off in this manner, you must take a hot Searing-Iron, made in the form of the Letter O, and apply it gently to stop the Blood: Then take black Pitch, and put a little of it on the End of the Stump, clapping to the Iron, which has now lost some of its Heat, to melt it. Put up your Horse again in the Stable; but take care he does not stand near any Wall or Cellar, against which he may rub himself: For some Horses have killed themselves by that means, having brought a Mortification into their Tails. When the Operation is over, you must rub the Tail quite to the Cross of the Reins with Brandy; continuing to do so Night and Morning for some Days. If the Horse should unluckily rub and fret the Part, or the Stump should be bruised, or too much burned, you must rub quite to the Cross with Spirit of Turpentine and Brandy, beat up together in equal Quantities. It is proper for one to stand behind the Horse with a Whip, to keep him from flinging about, and so to prevent any Accidents.

## C H A P. XXXVI.

*The Manner of Gelding a Horse well, and treating him during the Cure.*

**T**HERE are many different Ways of Gelding a Horse. Some *Whip* them; that is, after they have made an Opening in the Cods with a Razor or Incision-Knife, so that the Stones come out, they bind the Roots of them with Pack-thread or Coblers-end, and then cut them off below the Ligature, cleansing the Inside of the Cods with Oil only, or Oil mixed with Wine. Others *Billet* them; that is, they take a Hasel-stick of moderate Thickness, split it through, take out the Pith, and make a Cavity the whole Length, which they fill with powdered Vitriol, or Verdigrease, or sometimes with Sublimate. With these Sticks they take hold of the Horse between the Cods and the Belly, tying them on as tight as possible, and leaving them there nine or ten Hours; by which time the Parts will entirely fall off. Neither of these Ways is bad in itself; but they are not proper for a Horse that has a Rupture, nor one whose Strings of his Testicles are large and swelled. I have no Opinion therefore of either of these Operations, and that which follows is much more convenient, especially as it may be performed at any Age, or in any Season, provided it be done skilfully.

You must throw down the Horse upon his Back, according to the Custom in *Germany*, and put a large Leathern Strap round one of his Hind-Legs, bringing it under his Neck, and so drawing the Foot near the Shoulder, that you may have room for doing your Work with freedom. Then take up one Testicle, and hold it fast in your Hand; and with a Razor or Incision-Knife, make a large Opening in the Cod for the Testicle to come out. You must use a delicate Hand in dividing it from the Strings and Ligaments, which form a Sort of SS; and then the Testicles extend in Length. If he be a vicious and dangerous Horse, you must cut it off as near his Body as possible; but if he be a quiet one, divide the Strings as near as you can to the Testicle itself.

Having got the Testicle out, take a Piece of Plate-Iron, about two Inches broad, and the Thickness perhaps of a Crown-piece: Clasp the Testicle within this, and squeeze it close: Then take a wet Dish-clout, and put it between the said Plate and the Cods, and

cut



cut off the Testicle with a hot Iron. You may throw on some Bits of Sulphur before you take away the Iron, and burn them on the Part; and lastly, rinse the Cods well with fair Water. Proceed in the same manner with the other Testicle.

CHAP.  
XXXVII.

Before this Operation, you should draw the Horse's Yard out of the Sheath, and cleanse it well with Water from all Filth. This will in some Measure prevent the Greatness of the Inflammation, and of the subsequent Pain. All the farther Care required, is to keep the Horse from Wind in a very close Stable, and to wash his Belly seven or eight Times a Day with fair Water, cold in Summer, but warm in Winter. If the Inflammation becomes very great, which sometimes happens, you must frequently wash the Cods, Sheath, and all that is swelled, with Cream, till the Symptoms disappear. During the whole Process, you must give the Horse no Oats, but as much scalded Bran as he will eat; and let his Water be blanched, and a little warm.

Though I have said that all times are equal for this Operation, yet the Spring is the most advantageous Season, unless Necessity urges the contrary. The Horse preserves his Hair better, and keeps it smoother at that Time. I must observe farther, that if a Horse is lean and meagre when gelded, he will never grow fat again nor have a good Coat, even though the Operation be performed in Autumn; and that there is most Danger of a Mortification when it thunders, which Weather therefore should not be chosen. Some have a Charm against this ill Effect, which we omit, as equally idle and superstitious.

I had forgot to tell you, that during the Cure, beginning the Morrow after the Operation, you must walk your Horse abroad three or four Times a Day, a Quarter of an Hour each Time, if the Weather be fine, and no Wind stirring. When you cannot take him out, walk him in the Stable, in order to make him evacuate the Matter from his Wounds. Every one knows that his Fever will increase nine Days, and be as many more in going off: But if the Method here laid down be observed, he will recover in a very short Time.

C H A P. XXXVII.

*Hurts on the Withers, or Wither-wrung.*

**T**HIS Accident is common in the Army, either through bad Saddles, or bad Pannels on the Horses of Burthen, or sometimes through the Trusses of Forage being ill made up. It is very easy to discover, because it begins by a Swelling, which proceeds from the Extremity of the Chest, just between the Movement of the Shoulders. Many Horses are lost through this Misfortune, and the Ignorance of those who take them in hand, and who apply outward Remedies to bring the Swelling to a Head, which they afterwards open. When they have done this, they are usually unable to prevent Ulcers or Filanders in the middle of the Wound, which grow to the adjacent Joints; and then Matter often flows down between the Shoulder-blade and the Body. Here all their Skill is at an end; for the Matter having no longer any outward Drain, the Horse of consequence dies, merely because the Process was not made as it ought, and according to the following Directions.

To prevent such an Accident, as soon as you perceive the Swelling above described, let the Cause be what it will, you must hinder any Collection of Matter by this Composition.

Take the Whites of five or six Eggs, and beat them up to a Froth: Then take an Ounce of crude Roch Alum, which reduce into a fine Powder, and mix with the Eggs; adding, after you have well mixed them, about a Glass of Spirit of Turpentine: Then beat the Whole again, and add a like Quantity of Brandy; continuing to beat it till it comes to a kind of pappy Consistence, with which you must rub the Swelling three or four Times a Day, and in a little while it will be entirely gone. In case the Swelling was far advanced when you took it in hand, and some Matter already formed, there will be no great Damage: The Matter will discharge itself, by continuing the Use of this Remedy.

*Another Remedy for the same Disorder.*

If you are in a Place where you can have none of the Drugs abovementioned, take Brandy, and dilute it in a Bit of Soap, and then rub the Swelling with it till you make a Lather: Repeat this every three or four Hours till the Tumour dissipates. When you cannot get Brandy, use Urine with the Soap; or, for want of that, Brine, or Water well salted: But these must be used ten or twelve, instead of three or four Times a Day. If

M

all



CHAP.  
XXXVIII.  
XXXIX.

all other Means are wanting, as soon as you perceive this Disorder, take a green Tuff out of some Meadow, with the Earth sticking to the Roots, and apply it to the Swelling on the grassy Side. Renew this every three or four Hours till the Tumour disappears, or till you have furnished yourself with one of the Remedies above-mentioned.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

*Navel-Galls.*

**T**HIS Accident proceeds from the same Cause as the foregoing, and consequently must be treated in the same manner. What we call a Hurt upon the Navel, is in reality upon the Kidneys, towards the Cross of the Reins, where the Crupper and Saddle-buckle join.

CHAP. XXXIX.

*Of Impostumations in the Withers.*

**T**HIS is occasioned by suffering Matter to gather in the Swellings on the Withers; and a most terrible Distemper it is in the Army, especially in hot Countries, where the Flies are very troublesome. As the Horse moves, the Matter trickles down continually between his Body and his Shoulder; and as it can have no Passage outward, because you cannot force one through the Blade-bone, those who know not how to make the following Operation, are obliged to give all such Horses over.

You must first bind your Horse, and throw him down on the Ground: Then take a Stake about as thick as your Leg, four or five Foot long, and sharp at one End; drive it into the Ground with a Beetle, and place the Horse that it may stand just between his Shoulder and his Body, so that he cannot stir while you perform the Operation, which is thus done. Tie a Cord to the Horse's Foot, and at about two Yards Distance drive another Stake into the Ground, to serve as an Axle-tree to a Coach or a Cart Wheel that you must put thereon. Fasten the other End of the Cord to this Wheel and then turn it about, till by winding up the Cord you extend the Horse's Leg as much as it will bear. You may then make an Incision between the Body and the Shoulder, to the very Top, to come at the Matter behind the Blade-bone, by an Opening to be afterwards made. The Incision is made with a flat Iron, somewhat crooked, about an Inch broad, and as thick as two Crown-Pieces. The Curvity of this Instrument is in Proportion to the Ribs, between which and the Shoulder it must pass, in order to let out the Matter that is lodged above: And for this purpose you must introduce a small Rowel, from the Top of the Withers to the Bottom, between the Shoulder and the Trunk; which may be easily done if your Farrier has ever so little Address. This Rowel should be left in only twenty-four Hours, and then let the Wound be dressed like any common Wound; which Method will soon put your Horse out of all imminent Danger, as the Matter between the Trunk and the Shoulder will be discharged. You may make the Rowel either with *Hungary* Leather, or with Tow and Horse-Hair twisted together, daubing it over well with *Basilicum*. If at the End of three full Days the Matter does not run out plentifully below, you may leave the Rowel in a Day or two longer.

Never forget, during the whole Process of the Cure, that your Horse is to have no Oats, but only scalded Bran, or stale Bread Pap. Besides that, it is absolutely necessary to make him eat Root of bastard Rhubarb, or the Herb Patience, which grows in almost all Countries, and is a Kind of wild Sorrel. It shoots up in Meadows, and by the Sides of Ditches, and sometimes is very large. The Root is yellow, like that of the Sorrel; but both Stalk and Leaves are much bigger, though of the same Colour at the time of Seeding. That which grows in the Water is best, and next that which grows in fat Land; but for want of one Sort, another may be used, and the more a Horse eats of either, cut very small, the sooner will he be well. This Root is also good for all other Sorts of Wounds whatsoever: And it is certain, that in a temperate Climate, when the Flies give no Disturbance, one might cure a Horse by Means of this Root only, without any great Operation.

CHAP.



## C H A P. XL.

*Faintness for want of Nourishment.*

**T**HIS Distemper is more common in the Army than any where else, and occasioned by the great Heats, and the long Marches one is obliged to make. It oftener happens to brisk and lively Horses, than to those that are heavy; and nothing more is wanted than to be able to distinguish it. When a Horse falls down of a sudden on the Road, without having eat or drank, the Dust has got into his Mouth, and through his Nostrils, stopping up the Passages, so that he cannot breathe, and drops as if he were dead. Horses that are used to go in Harness, either in Coach or Carriage Service, are very subject to it. In order to cure this Disease, you must take fair Water, wash the Head of the Horse with it, pour some of it into his Nostrils, into his Mouth, and a good deal into his Ears: This will raise him in a little while. You may then let him drink, and he will be able to proceed on his Journey. Horses that are subject to this Disorder should not be neglected, but suffered to drink on all Occasions that offer. The Guts of such Horses are always narrower than in others, which makes them unable to bear Hunger or Thirst. It is much the same with Men, some of whom can go without drinking more easily than others.

C H A P.  
XL, XLI,  
XLII.

## C H A P. XLI.

*Of the Pole-Evil.*

**T**HIS is a very troublesom Distemper, and proceeds from different Causes; especially to large Draught-Horses, who wear hempen Halters, as those belonging to the Artillery, the Provisions of an Army, or any Sort of Carriages. Not but that others are also subject to it. Horses affected with it are apt to be frightened at every little Thing, and pull as if they would break their Harness to get loose; which occasions the Halter to hurt them between the Ears and the Neck, where the Neck and Head join; and this by Degrees becomes more and more painful. Matter at last forms in the Part, which, not being perceived, extends along the Chest, causes a great Inflammation, and often makes it necessary to open the Tumour along both Sides of the Mane, the Length of half a Foot, or more. In these Sorts of Wounds, which are made through Necessity, care must be taken to use no fat Ointment, nor an oily one, but of a restraining Nature. This Distemper is the more difficult to cure, as it is hard to keep the Remedies on, and you must put no Ligature on that Part.

You must take therefore a thick Piece of Linen Cloth, and cut it about a Foot square, that it may go between the Ears, and extend along the Mane. The Cloth must be four or five Times double, and fastened under with narrow Tape, in order to keep on the Medicines.

These Accidents may be occasioned by a Blow on the Head from a brutal Driver, when a Horse hesitates at passing any Place. It is needless to multiply Remedies that are proper for such Wounds, because they who have dressed one may dress others.

## C H A P. XLII.

*Of a Shoulder-slip, or Shoulder-wrench.*

**I**T is common, for want of Knowledge, to confound the Disorders of a Horse's Shoulder, and only to say of each that it is a Wrench or a Slip: But it is proper to know, that a Horse may lame his Shoulder different Ways, and without ever straining himself in the least. This Distinction ought to be judiciously made, to prevent any Mistakes that may ensue.

A Horse may be lamed, in the first Place, by having been ill saddled; that is, by having the Saddle put too forwards, and rode on by a heavy Man, who neither knows how to place himself, nor to adjust his Stirrups. If one Stirrup is longer than the other, the Man consequently bears more on one Side than the other, and the Saddle-bow, pressing most against one Shoulder, must of course bruise it in a long Day's Journey; and so the Horse may be lamed without making one false Step. A Man in this Case goes to a Farrier, who tells him his Horse has slipped his Shoulder, and that his Case requires great



CHAP.  
XLII.

Care and Pains. He is paid as a skilful Man, though perhaps all the while he is a mere Block-head; and the Horse renews his Malady for want only of mending the Saddle. You put him in the Hands of another equally ignorant, who treats him in the same manner, and leaves the Saddle just as it was. After the poor Beast has remained some time in the Stable, a fresh Rider mounts him, and changes the Saddle perhaps by hazard, or makes the Stirrups even, and rides him without ever laming him at all.

A Horse may lame his Shoulder by coming hastily out of the Stable, and running it against the Door or the Post, or by a Kick from another Horse. Your Farrier then cures him by the help of Ointments, and in the Eyes of ignorant Persons goes for a skilful Doctor. But a Horse that has in reality a Shoulder-slip, or an Extension by a Strain within the Shoulder, between that and the Ribs, (having no Joint there that holds those Parts together, as the Hanch is fastened to the Body, nor any other Ligament but Fibres and Tendons;) such a Horse, I say, who has this true Shoulder-slip, is not to be cured by Remedies applied without the Skin: For how should their Ointments penetrate through the Shoulder-blade, a solid Bone, to cure the Disorder underneath it? This can be done no other way than by manual Operation, as shall be shewn in the Article of true Shoulder-slips.

There is another Sort of Cause that may make a Horse lame in the Shoulder, without his having ever strained himself, or received any Accident. He limps now on one Side, now on the other, and sometimes on both; not being able to stand upright. This Case is the most difficult of all to cure, as it proceeds from Nature; the Horse having been got by a *Turkish* or *Arabian* Sire, whose Shoulders were extremely flat and narrow, and close as it were together. Some Persons never observe this, and are satisfied when they go to a Stallion if he looks well, and be either a *Turk* or an *Arabian*. Now to come at the Knowledge of this Defect, when you see a Horse whose Shoulders are close together, and quite flat, instead of being fleshy, there is little good to be expected from him. Such Shoulders make a Sort of demi-quarter Circle from the Bottom to the Withers, where you see a Void without Flesh. Almost all your Farriers are mistaken when they apply Rowels in this Case, and so make the Shoulder leaner and leaner, render the Horse useless, and, in a little while, kill him; whereas they should endeavour to nourish the Part, which is what it wants. I will now give you a Course of Remedies, in proper Order, for the several Accidents in the Shoulder that have been here enumerated.

*For a Horse that has been lamed in the Shoulder by the Saddle.*

If you are in a Place where Drugs can be easily got, take Spirit of Turpentine and Brandy, an equal Quantity of each; beat them up together, and rub all the Part that has been hurt by the Saddle. Put your Saddle backward when you ride him again, which may be the next Day, or the Day after. If you have no Spirit of Turpentine, take Soap and Brandy, and rub against the Hair till you make a Lather. Repeat this three or four Times running, as fast as it dries in; and thus you may cure your Horse while you proceed on your Journey. For want of Soap, you may use Roch Alum; and for want of Brandy, Urine: But if you can get Spirit of Turpentine, the Whites of Eggs, Brandy, and Urine, the best Way is to make a Composition of them all, as directed for Horses hurt on the Withers, and rub the Horse with it four or five Times; which will effect a Cure. You may use the same Remedies in the other Cases abovementioned. But if the Inflammation be very great, the Disorder of long Continuance, and one Shoulder appears thicker than the other, you may introduce a Rowel under the Skin from the Bottom to the Top of the Shoulder. It may be made either with Leather or Tow, provided Hair be twisted with it, and the Whole well bedaubed with Basilicum. The two Ends of it must be tied together without the Skin, that you may commodiously turn it, and anoint it afresh every Day. Keep it in nine Days, and in the mean time rub the Shoulder with the following Ointment.

Take *Ointments of Marshmallows, Poplar Buds, and Roses, Oils of Bays and Honey*, each two Ounces; melt them together, and stir the Composition till it is cold; then use it once every Day, and make more if this be not found sufficient. The Rowel will draw the Bruise the Horse has received to Suppuration; and the Ointment will nourish the Skin, and keep it from shrivelling.

It is very proper that a Horse should do no Work, while he is under this Course: But even if one is in the Army, or upon the Road, one may expect a Cure from pursuing it closely, though not so soon as when you can give him Rest.



*A Remedy for the Cooling or Chilling of the Shoulders.*

CHAP.  
XLII.

In this Disorder a Horse cannot support himself before, and has very little Motion in his Shoulders, as if they were rivetted or bound together. Some Persons, for want of Knowledge, take this to be a Foundering; whereas Foundering hinders the Motion of the Legs, and a Cooling or Chilling of the Shoulder affects the Shoulder only. This Distinction being made, you may treat your Horse in the following Manner.

First, make him swim, as the Farriers call it, *on dry Ground*; that is, tie up one of his Fore-legs, bent at the Knee, with a broad leathern Strap; and then walk and trot him upon three Legs, till his one Leg before can no longer support him. Exercise him in the same Manner upon the other Leg; and afterwards bleed him in the two Arches, and rub his Shoulders well with the Blood, and over that with Spirit of Turpentine, Oil of Spike, Oil of *Petre* and Brandy, mixed together in equal Quantities. Sprinkle Rye-flour over all, in order to make a Sort of Crust upon the two Shoulders, which should be refreshed once a Day, for seven or eight Days running, with Oil of Bays, and afterwards with an Unguent made of the Ointments of Marsh-mallows, Poplar-buds and Roses, mixed up with Honey, an equal Quantity of each Ingredient. You may continue to rub the Shoulders of the Horse with this Composition, once every Day, for three Weeks or a Month, in which Time it will comfort him greatly. Leave him afterwards five or six Weeks in the Stable, without stirring out.

As the Humours may possibly descend into his Feet, you ought to have his two Fore-feet unshod, and pared well, before you begin the Cure: Then let his Shoes be put on again, and from time to time stuff the Hollows of them with Cow's Dung, fried in Hog's Lard, and afterwards mixed with Vinegar. By means of this Remedy you may prevent any such Accident in his Feet. If you rub his Hoofs, towards the Crown, with Oil of Bays, so much the better. And if all these Remedies are found insufficient, it is to no purpose to look after others.

*A Remedy for the true Shoulder-slip, or what is called an Opening.*

Before you undertake any Thing, have the Horse unshod, and his Feet pared; then shoe him again as even as possible, and make him swim on dry Ground, as directed in the foregoing Case; excepting that you must do it here with one Leg only, and that you must keep the lame one to the Ground. Whip him on upon a Trot till he sweats, and then throw him down, and drive two Stakes into the Ground to support him, one against the Hollow behind his Shoulder, and the other between the Belly and the Thigh, penning him up that he cannot stir. Take a long Cord, with a Shackle to it, and fasten it to his Foot, at the Joint between the Fetlock and the Hoof, and tie the other End to the Wheel of some Carriage, fixed according to the Direction for a Horse that has impostumated Withers, in order to extend his Leg in a right Line. You must then make an Incision in the Skin between his Trunk and his Shoulder, as directed in the same Article, and introduce your Iron in three Places; one in the middle, to ascend almost to the Top, and the two others on the Sides of it, making with it a Sort of Fork with three Prongs. These Openings being made, you must have Candles cast in flat Iron Molds for that Purpose, and composed in the following Manner.

Get a flaxen Wick of three Threads, that may lie flat by each other, and having put it into the Mold, take an Ounce of *Venice Turpentine*, an Ounce of *Spirit of Turpentine*, an Ounce of *Oil of Bays*, another of Ointment of *Marsh-Mallows*, two Ounces of *Mutton Suet*, and half a Pound of *yellow Wax*; melt the Whole, add half an Ounce of *Verdigrease* in Powder, and having mixed it well in, fill your Molds. When your Candle is cold, in order to loosen and take it out, pass the Mold over a Wisp of burning Straw, or some other Flame; and then putting the Candle in again, introduce the Mold to the very Bottom of the middle Hole, by which you must begin. Your Mold must be very smooth and even; and you should have a flat Piece of Wood, of the Form and Size of the Candle, which you must introduce in its Place, as you draw out of the Mold, in order to leave the Candle behind. Fill up the two other Holes in the same Manner, and then with a large Needle and a Clobber's End stitch the Skin together in the middle, to keep all in. Then let your Horse rise, and put him up in the Stable, where a Place must be prepared with Planks for him to stand upon, so even and smooth, that one Leg cannot be higher than



CHAP.  
XLIII.

than another. This is contrary to the Practice of some Farriers, who put a high Shoe upon the well Foot; which often makes the Legs uneven, by suffering the other Shoulder to descend, and so lames a Horse for his whole Life after.

When your Horse is in the Stable, take a large Towel, and tie his two Feet as close as possible, as if he was fettered: Bind him in the same Manner at his Knees, so that he cannot bend them. You must renew the Candles every Day, and every Day diminish their Length, till the Holes are quite filled up.

It is necessary also to fasten your Horse in such a Manner, that he may not lie down for forty or fifty Days. This is done by four Reins or Thongs, tied, two to the Rack, and two to the Manger, leaving him barely Room to eat his Bran; for Corn he must absolutely have none, during the whole Cure.

As the Ligatures may occasion the Horse's Legs to swell, it is proper to rub them every Day with Lees of Wine. At forty or fifty Days End, take off the Bandages, as well as the two Reins that were tied to the Rack, and litter him well. Perhaps it will be some Days longer before he lies down; but he will do it at last, and the Swelling of his Legs will dissipate. You must not take him out of the Stable however for eight or ten Days after this: but then you may give a gentle Airing, taking great Care not to turn him on the Side where his Disorder lay. This should be observed a long while; and if ever there be an absolute Occasion to turn on that Hand, fetch as large a Compass for it as you can.

Though a Horse may be able to work gently in a Month after he comes to lie upon his Litter, yet he ought not to be put to it for five or six Months. I would advise no Man therefore to perform this Operation, except to a Horse of great Value, unless he does it by Way of Experiment, because it will cost him much Labour and Money.

To nourish the affected Parts, during the Course of the Cure, make Use of the Ointments that are prescribed in the Article of withered Shoulders, rubbing in some of them once every Day. I would not advise any one to undertake the Operation here mentioned in the midst of Summer, when the Heats are violent.

It was the Author of this Book, who invented this Manner of treating a Slip in the Shoulder, and the different Experiments he has made of it with Success, leave no Room to doubt but it is the best that ever was invented. Many of these Experiments were made in his most Christian Majesty's Stud, of which he was forty Years Inspector.

#### CHAP. XLIII.

##### Of the Spunge.

**T**HIS Distemper is not so dangerous as disagreeable to the Sight, because it never makes a Horse lame. It proceeds from his bending back his Fore-feet when he lies down, so that the Points of the Shoes or the Frost-Nails when he has any, press against the Pit of the Shoulder, just where you put your Hand to feel if a Horse has the Fever. This, in the Sequel, causes a great Swelling; a Mass of foul Flesh arises, and a large Blister full of a red Humour. If our Grooms and Hostlers were not so idle, it would be easy to get rid of this Disorder, and quite dispel it, at it's first Appearance, by only spunging the Part with Well or Fountain Water, the coldest they could get, using a Pail-full of it at a Time, five or six Times a Day. In two or three Days, at most, all the Swelling will thus dissipate; but if it be neglected till the Bladder of bloody Water is formed, though it does not lame the Horse, it will be a long while in curing, in spite of all the Remedies and Operations one can have recourse to. When the Swelling does not give way to the cold Water, prepare the following Ointment.

Take *Cantharides*, *Black Hellebore*, and *Euphorbium*, of each two Ounces; powder them all, and make an Ointment with Oil of *Bays*, and *Venice Turpentine*, an equal Quantity of each: Let it be made without warming. Then shave off all the Hair from the swelled Part, and put on a large Plaister of the Ointment, making it fast with Ligatures, brought between his Legs, and over his Withers. Renew this Plaister once every Day, five or six Days running; which will draw out all the noxious Humour, and dissipate the Swelling. It must not be thought strange if you find the Skin fall off, as well as the Hair, because they will both come again more beautiful than before. If the Horse takes again to his old Habit of lying, and another Swelling appears, run a hot Iron into it at Bottom,



Bottom, to let out all the Water, and then dress it as you would another Wound. It is to be hoped, that the Pain he feels in these Operations will make him leave this Habit, and take to lie on his Shoes.

## C H A P. XLIV.

*Stiff Legs.*

THERE are some Horses, who, through the Remains of an old Distemper, or some great Fatigue, become so stiff in their Fore-legs, that they can scarce bend their Knees; which makes them stumble, and sometimes fall, when they are ever so little hurried, though even on a Walk. When this is the Case, you must endeavour to fortify the Nerves of the Legs and Joints by Fomentations of Marsh-Mallows Roots, or Lees of Wine, or any other Medicines proper to supple and strengthen those Parts. There are some good Receipts for it in this Book: But if, in spite of all the good Remedies you can use, the Legs continue stiff, you must make the following Operation. Under the Shoulders, or, to speak more properly, under the Breast, between them and the Knees, as is pointed out in the Explanation of the Figures, you seem to feel a Nerve very hard and stiff, which in reality is only a Tendon. It lies just under the Vein that we open for Disorders in the Shoulders, which may be justly called the Bow-Vein. Here you are to make an Incision with a Razor or proper Knife, descending along the Tendon, and opening the Skin about two Inches. You will find this Tendon separated, as it were, from the Skin and the Flesh, as if it was a Nerve; which makes many call the Operation, *Cutting the Nerves of the Fore-legs*. Having made this Opening, with a wild Goat's Horn, or any such like Instrument, which is crooked and pointed, you must get under the Tendon, in order to draw it without the Skin. You must cut this in two, and the Ends will draw in, the one upwards, and the other downwards. This being done in both Legs, fill up the Wounds with Salt Butter; putting about three Ounces of Salt to half a Pound of Butter, and mixing them well. You must continue to dress it with nothing but this, till a Cure is effected.

Before you undertake this Operation, you must have the Horse shod in the following Manner, and with such a Shoe as is depicted in one of the *Plates, Fig. 3. and 9.* to oblige him to bend his Legs in going: For as soon as the Operation is performed, you must air him at least a Quarter of an Hour, and then put him again in the Stable, filling the Wounds with Salt Butter. You must take him out thus every Day, Morning and Evening, and pace and trot him, observing still to dress his Wounds according to these Directions when you put him up, and keeping just the same Course till he is well. I would not advise any Man to ride the Horse at first, till he is accustomed to such Shoes; for he will be very apt to stumble or fall. You should not even lead him therefore on any Pavement, but only on plain Ground. Once every Fortnight you must gradually shorten the Corners of his Shoes. This will in time make his Legs as free as before, though in fact he will not have so much Strength in them as another Horse, who never had this Misfortune. He may be of Use however a long while, if he has but only Youth on his Side.

## C H A P. XLV.

*Of an Ox-kneed Horse.*

IT is almost superfluous to speak of this Defect, because it proceeds from Nature, and can never be cured: only we would point out what such Horses are good for.

When you see a Horse whose two Knees bend in towards each other, and his Feet go wide asunder, we call him Ox-kneed, because Oxen and Cows have their Knees made almost in the same Manner.

These Horses are by no Means proper to ride: They are fit for nothing but the Cart or the Plough. In Work of this Kind they walk only, and are borne up in the Shoulders by their Collars and Harness, which makes them able to do some Service.

## C H A P. XLVI.

*Of the three Kinds of Splents.*

THERE is one of the three Sorts of Splents that ought not to hinder a Man from buying a good Horse; I mean what they call the simple Splent, which appears within



CHAP.  
XLVI.

within the Leg, under the Knee, remote from the great Nerve and the Joint of the Knee. Here it gives no Pain; is only disagreeable to the Sight, and goes away in time of itself; which makes it useless to have Recourse to Remedies. I shall only give some for the two other Kinds, which may incommode and lame a Horse.

All the three Sorts are known by the same Rule: For whenever you see a Tumour upon the Flat of the Leg, whether within or without, if it be under Knee, and appears hard to the Touch, it is a Splent; and when it is situated as above described, it signifies nothing. But when it comes upon the Joint of the Knee, without any Interval, it loses the Name of Splent, and may be called a *Fusée*. It then, as one may easily conceive, makes the Leg of the Horse stiff, and hinders him from bending his Knee: Consequently it obliges him to stumble, and even fall, and, after a little violent Exercise, makes him lame. Rest alone cures the Lameness, but not a *Fusée*.

The third Kind of Splent, whether within or without, is when you feel it between the Nerve and the Bone; and sometimes even at the End of the Nerve. This is called a nervous Splent, and is the worst of all the Kinds; besides that the Horse is never here so firm-footed, but that he limps at every little Degree of Labour. The *French* reject every Horse that has a Splent, very often without knowing how to distinguish them; and one that has only a simple Splent is as bad in their Eyes, as one that has the other Sorts: But a simple Splent always goes away of itself by that Time a Horse is eight or nine Years old, which makes it unnecessary to prescribe for it.

*A Remedy for Splents.*

Take a Stick (Hazel if you can, though the Difference perhaps is only in Fancy) of about two Fingers Thickness, and beat and rub the Splent with it gently, in order to soften it by Degrees: Continue this Course till the Skin feels as if it were detached from the Callosity. Then with the Point of a Lancet, or Fleam, prick it in several Places, in order to let out the corrupted Blood. This done, take a large Stoppie of Tow dipped in Essence of Turpentine, and over it put a Linen Cloth five or six times double. Clap over this a Piece of Pig's or Ox's Bladder, and bind it with a Linen Swathe. Let the Swathe be about the same Breadth with what is used for a Man's Leg; but longer, that it may the better keep on the Dressing. Leave it there twenty-four Hours, and then renew the Dressing a second and third Time.

To what Purpose, will some say, is all this great Wrap? Is not a Cord or a common Bandage as well? What good can the Pig's or Ox's Bladder do? I will tell you: That Piece of Bladder hinders the Spirits from evaporating; and the Linen Pledget keeps the Dressing on close, without hurting the Nerve; which would be the Case if you were to use a Cord, and so the Remedy would become worse than the Disease.

*Of Splents, or Fuses.*

I should inform the Reader that Splents and Fuses are Callosities made by a Humour in the Legs of a Horse, according to the Description above. These two Excrescencies have the same Cause, and yet are widely different: For Splents no way incommode the Horse, unless they come too near the Nerves, as I have before said: But Fuses, on the contrary, often lame him, being of a great Length, and growing to the Bone which goes to the Joint of the Knee, and as it were riveting it. A Horse that has them therefore may be called lock-kneed, and has in effect his Legs so stiff, that he limps, and his Knees cannot bend without Violence. When a Knee is once affected in this Manner, it is very difficult to cure, at least unless you fire it, to prevent the *Fusée* from going higher, and entirely depriving the Knee of Motion. As it is an Affair of great Concern, you ought not to neglect this Operation of the Fire, whenever the *Fusée* begins to reach the Joint.

*Another Remedy for Splents and Fuses.*

In the first Place shave off the Hair very close, especially just where the Hardness is; then beat and rub it easily with your Stick; for if you do it too roughly, it will cause an Inflammation: The Delicacy of the Hand therefore is here the chief Thing. When the Humour is sufficiently softened, prick it all over with the Point of a Lancet, to let out the corrupted Blood. Then make an Ointment with *Euphorbium*, *Flowers of Brimstone*,  
*Cantharides*,



*Cantbarides*, and *Black Hellebore*, a Drachm of each: Powder the whole, incorporate it with *Oil of Bays*, and make a liquid Ointment, which apply to the Swelling spread on Tow, fastening it on with a Bandage, that it may keep there twenty-four Hours. Take great care that the Horse may not come at it with his Teeth. When the twenty-four Hours are expired, take off the Dressing, and wash the Wound with fresh Water; continuing thus till it is well.

C H A P.  
XLVII.

*Another for the same Purpose.*

The Hair being entirely shaved off the Tumour, and the Tumour softened by rubbing it with your Piece of Wood, and pricked with a Lancet, as above described; take a Piece of Rind of Bacon, with a good deal of Fat on it, and apply it to the Part: Then run a hot Iron against the Rind, to make the Fat melt; and afterwards apply Butter and Black Pitch, fried together in a Fire-Shovel. Continue to use the latter once a Day for a Fortnight, in which Time the Slough will fall off, and then you may dress the Wound for a Cure.

*Another.*

Shave off the Hair, and do as before to soften the Splent: Then take five or six Bits of Tile, each about the Bigness of the Splent, and make them red-hot: Have ready an earthen Pot, with Wine Vinegar, and a strong Piece of Linen Rag; put one of the Bits of Tile into the Vinegar, and immediately take it out in the Rag, and apply it to the Splent, holding it there till cold. Use a second Piece of Tile in the same Manner, and so on, till you find the adjacent Hairs come easily off in your Hand. Then apply the following Caustic, which should extend no farther than the Humour itself, and be left there bound on twenty-four Hours.

*A Caustic.*

Take a Clove of *Garlick*, the same Weight of *common Salt*, of *Pepper*, and of *Black Hellebore*; pound the whole together, and with almost an equal Quantity of *Oil of Bays* make an Ointment; which apply to the Splent or Fufee, and bind it on, taking Care that the Horse may not get at it with his Teeth. When the Slough or Eschar is come off, take care to wash the Wound, Night and Morning, with warm Wine, and a little Sugar melted in it, till it is quite well.

*Another Remedy.*

After having treated the Swelling according to the former Direction, to prepare it for the Medicine, take Roots of *wild Turnips*, or *Rape*; cut them into Slices as thick as your Finger, and put a good many of these Slices into Wine Vinegar, and give them a gentle Boil; add a Handful of Salt, and let the Composition stand over the Fire, while you take the Slices out one by one, and apply them as hot as you can to the Splent or Fufee, till you perceive it come off, as in the foregoing Receipt; then apply the Ointment of *Pepper*, *Salt*, *Garlick*, *Black Hellebore*, and *Oil of Bays*, as there prescribed, and leave it on twenty-four Hours. Supple the Eschar well afterwards with greasy Things, and it will fall off, and the Hair come again.

*Another.*

After the preparatory Treatment, take the finest Head of *Garlick* you can get, boil it in Nut-Oil, and apply it as hot as you possibly can upon the Tumour: Bind it on and leave it twenty-four Hours; and afterwards add every Day *Oil of Bays*, till the Splent goes, which it certainly will.

C H A P. XLVII.

*Of the three Kinds of Offelets.*

**O**SSELETS are of the same Nature as Splents, which makes some Persons take them for the same Thing: There is this Difference however between them, that Splents come near the Knees, and Offelets near the Fetlocks. Their Seat is indifferently within or without the Leg.

The first is the Simple Offelet, which does not grow near the Joint of the Fetlock, or the Nerve. This need not hinder any Man from buying a Horse, because it puts him to no Inconvenience, and is only disagreeable to the Sight: Besides it very often goes away of itself without any Remedy.

O

The



CHAP.  
XLVIII.

The second is that which descends into the Fetlock, and hinders the Motion of that Joint: This occasions a Horse to stumble and fall, and with a very little Work to become lame.

The third has it's Seat between the Bone and the Nerve, and sometimes upon the Nerve: It so much incommodes a Horse, that he cannot stand firm, but limps on every little Occasion. This Distinction is much like that between the three Sorts of Splents; and as the same Remedies will cure them both, I shall set down no other.

## C H A P. XLVIII.

*Windgalls of the three Kinds.*

**I**N the first Place, and before you undertake the Cure of any Distemper, Accident, or Infirmary, that may happen to a Horse, you ought thoroughly to know the Nature of it. It is just the same with Farriers, as with Physicians and Surgeons; those who succeed without knowing what they are about, must ascribe that Success to mere Chance, which might as well have run against them. Windgalls, the Things I am now to speak of, appear to the Eye much like Offelets; but are not however just in the same Places, nor do they feel like them; for whereas Offelets are hard, Windgalls give way to the Touch.

Some Horses are more liable to these than others, and that for several Reasons: Some because they proceed from old worn-out Sires, and others because they were worked too young. Among your delicate foreign Horses, as *Barbs*, *Spanish*, *Arabian*, or *Italian*, when they are worked young, out of an hundred you will see 90 loaded with Windgalls, from the Age of five or six Years. But in the Countries these come from, they seldom, without the utmost Necessity, ride their Horses till they are five or six Years of Age, especially in Studs of Reputation. *English* Horses are very subject to Windgalls, because they are all worked too soon; and sometimes because they are descended from old decayed Stallions. The best Race in *England* comes from the *Barbary* and *Arabian* Horses; and these are certainly the finest Creatures in the World for the Saddle, if they are not spoiled when young.

*A simple Windgall.*

I now come to the Description of *Windgalls*. A Windgall is a little Tumour between the Skin and the Flesh, round the Fetlocks. When it appears at a good Distance from the large Nerve, it does not lame the Horse; and if he has but Age of his Side, that is, be under ten Years old at most, he will be as useful as before, provided the Work you put him to be not of the most laborious Kind. However a Horse is much better without than with even this Sort, which is called a Simple Windgall. It consists of thin Skins, full of a red Liquid, and soft to the Touch. The Remedies for it will come after the Description of the third Sort.

*Nervous Windgalls.*

Nervous Windgalls answer the same Description: Only as the simple ones come upon the Fetlock, or a little above it upon the Leg-Bone, in the very Place of Offelets; nervous ones come behind the Fetlock upon the great Nerve, which makes them of worse Consequence; for they never fail to lame a Horse after much Fatigue.

These Windgalls may happen upon any of the Legs; but some of them are more dangerous than others, in proportion as they press the Nerve, and are capable of laming the Horse. When a Horse happens to limp with them on a Journey, and you cannot possibly give him Rest, be sure, every Time you put him up, to see his Legs well washed with the coldest Spring Water that can be come at; using a Pail-full to each Leg with a large Sponge. This will enable your Horse to continue his Journey without limping, though it can never cure him. Take Notice by the way, that Windgalls are more troublesome in Summer than in Winter; especially in very hot Weather, when the Pores are all open.

*Bloated Windgalls.*

I distinguish by this Name the third and worst Sort of Windgalls, when they come over the hind Part of the Fetlock, between the Bone and the large Nerve, and make the Horse so lame at every little Thing he does, that he can scarce set his Foot to the Ground. They appear on both Sides the Leg, without as well as within; and when you touch them with your Hand or Finger, they feel like a Pig's or a Cow's Bladder full of Wind.

Some



Some have run the Risque of opening them, and let out the red Water, that is within the Skin; but not one of these have succeeded. They have now and then relieved the Horse indeed for some Time; but at other Times they have lamed him effectually. The most short Way therefore is to have Recourse to Remedies, which may be relied on for a Cure, and cannot possibly do any Hurt.

CHAP.  
XLIX.

Windgalls of this Sort are more dangerous than is commonly thought, and if let alone too long, can never be otherwise cured than by Fire; and as good Farriers, who know how to give the Fire, are very scarce (though they all pretend to this Piece of Skill) there is least Hazard run by taking the Disorder at the first, shaving off the Hair all round the Fetlocks, and over the Windgalls, and then making Use of the following Ointment.

Take *Spanish Flies*, *Euphorbium*, and *Black Hellebore*, each 2 Ounces: Powder the whole, and make an Ointment with the Oils of *Bays* and *Turpentine*, in equal Quantities. Spread this with a Spatula all round the Fetlock, and especially upon the Windgalls themselves: leave it there twenty-four Hours, before which Time a great deal of the red Water will be discharged. Then scrape off the old Ointment with your Spatula, and apply fresh; continuing to do so every twenty-four Hours, for nine Days running.

The Skin will off in such a Manner, that you will be apt to think at first it will never come again: But you may depend upon seeing it grow after some Time, and look as well at least as before. When Windgalls are fresh, they sometimes disappear, and are not seen again for a long while, unless through the same Accident that first brought them, namely too much Labour.

*A Way to make Windgalls disappear.*

I should not speak of this Method, if many Dealers did not make Use of it to deceive those they sell to: For when these Windgalls cannot be cured, they may be so dispelled as to deceive a Buyer: It is therefore proper to know how this is done. When a Jockey lights on a handsome young Horse, though perhaps all his four Legs are spoil'd, if he can but make those Legs carry him to Market, and recommend him for a Horse of Value, it is all a Man of this Profession cares. If he buys him in Winter, he never fails, at the Beginning of the Spring, to send him to Grass: After some Time he takes him up again into the Stable, and with Cow's Dung, diluted with Vinegar, rubs his Legs all over three or four Times a Day, and in a short Time the Windgalls disappear. The Jockey keeps this Horse always still, in a separate Stable, till he lights of a Chapman; and then, while he is shewing him others, the defective Beast is brought in Sight, fresh and sprightly, just as he comes from watering. The Chapman asks the Price, and the crafty Jockey tells him the Horse is not his, or that he has already partly sold him; but since he likes the Creature so well, he will do all in his power that he shall have the Refusal of him. This usually makes the Customer more eager to buy: And in this Manner the *English* Jockies, more than others, get off their bad Goods. But the most sure Way to make a Horse firm in the Legs, and cure his Windgalls, is to give him the Fire, in the Manner represented in one of the subsequent Plates.

C H A P. XLIX.

*How to give a Horse the Fire.*

CARE must be taken, in the first Place, that the Person who gives it have a light and delicate Hand; which a Farrier, who works with the Hammer, cannot possibly have. He must also have a good Sight, and be perfectly acquainted with the Operation: For if he bears so hard on his Iron as to go quite through the Skin, he runs a Risque of laming the Horse; and if he does not give the Fire enough, the Windgalls will remain, and he might as well have done nothing. Let us suppose then that we have a capable Man: He must have six or seven Steel Knives, made in the same Manner as is described in one of the Plates hereto annexed. Let him heat them over a Charcoal Fire, and not in the Forge, because the intense Heat occasioned by the Bellows will scale the Instrument, and make the Edge like a Saw, so that it must tear the Skin. Make it very hot, that it may pass delicately over the Skin, and feel in Hand as if one were cutting of Butter. When one Knife begins to lose it's Heat, a Person that stands by for that Purpose must give another quite hot, and put the first again into the Fire. Never go twice successively upon the



CHAP.  
L.

the same Line; and observe to take your Strokes downwards, not upwards, beginning in the middle, and then making Parallels on each Side. Continue thus till you have gone several Times over each Line. The first Knife will scarce be enough, without changing, to mark all the Lines out. When the Fire is given sufficiently, the Bottoms of the Streaks appear red, or of a gold Colour, and certain little Drops of Water begin to rise: This is a Signal for leaving off the Operations, for fear of cutting through the Skin. The middle Line should not be so often gone over as the rest.

The Fire being given on both Sides of each Leg, within and without, cover all the Fetlock, and a Part of the Nerve, as well as five Lines on the Side of the Nerve, and three on each Side of the Fetlock; making together nine on each Side the Leg, in all eighteen. Then take a small Sponge dipped in Writing Ink, and draw it over all the Lines. You must do this as soon as you can after the Fire is given, and continue the Use of Ink in the same Manner nine Days following. After that anoint all the Lines, or Streaks, with Ointment, as the Eschars fall off; and take care, during the whole Time of Cure, that the Horse never comes at his Legs with his Teeth.

There are two Things to be noted, which are of great Importance. The first is, that the Horse must have rested a long while, before you give him the Fire, that he may not be lame at the Time of the Operation; which would render all your Labour ineffectual. The second, that only Autumn or Winter are proper Seasons for this Operation, to which the great Heats and the Flies may be of very bad Consequence.

I would advise no Man to give the Fire to a Horse of little Value, because the Expence of it is more than an indifferent Horse is worth. For after you have performed the Operation, there is a Necessity for his resting four or five Months, without stirring out of the Stable; and for leading him early in the Fields and Meadows during the Month of *May*, among the green Corn or long Grass, that his Legs may be fortified by being thus supplied with the Dew. If all this be well executed, one may be sure, at the End of six or seven Months, that the Horse will have better Legs than ever, and will last many Years longer. I have seen Horses of great Value, without any Defect, on whom this Operation has been performed by Way of Precaution, and who have afterwards been fifteen or twenty Years fit for Service, with their Legs always firm and sound. My Father has done it even to Horses for *Lewis* the Fourteenth's own Riding; and with very good Success. I have followed the same Practice ever since, and never found it fail.

I forgot to say, that in order to give the Fire properly, the Horse should be down; and the Pot of Charcoal should stand just by, that the Irons may have no Time to cool when taken out. It is proper also to have a smooth Piece of Board at Hand, to draw the Instruments over, and disengage any Filth that may stick to them. The Dressing to be used after the ninth Day is the following excellent Ointment for Burns, equally good for Man and Beast.

*An Ointment for Burns.*

Take a Pound of the freshest Hen-dung you can get, and mix it with a Pound of Sage chopped and bruised: Then take two Pounds of melted Lard, and put all together in a large earthen Pot: Cover the Pot close, set it over a clear Fire, and let it boil four or five Hours. Strain it as hot as you can, through a coarse Towel, and squeeze out as much as possible. Keep this Ointment in your House, as a valuable Treasure; for it will cure all Manner of Burns, without leaving the least Mark behind.

The Way to use this Ointment upon Horses who have had the Fire given them, is gently to anoint every Line with it, once a Day, upon the End of a Feather. For any Person who receives a Burn, let some of it be imbibed in soft Paper, and so laid on fresh twice a Day, if it be a Part that you can cover: But for the Face use a fine Feather, and apply it five or six Times a Day. This will certainly make a perfect Cure within a Fortnight.

## CHAP. L.

*The Mallenders.*

**T**O know what the Mallenders are, you must examine the Feet of a Horse loaded with Hair; for such Horses are more subject to it than others. You will find a Sort of little Slit in the Bend of the Leg, behind the Knee, from which a certain Humour issues,



issues, that is sometimes whitish, and sometimes like muddy Water. The Hair round it is strait, and stands as it were on End; and as the Humour is sharp and salt, it makes the Hairs fall off by Degrees. This Disease happens often to fat Horses, and those that were bred in Countries where the Grass is luscious. It is none of the most considerable Defects, but worse in some Horses than others, in proportion to their Constitutions.

Your Jockeys and Dealers say that it makes a Horse so much the better, because Nature thus discharges what offends her; and sometimes, I confess, it is but a trifling Matter: But still a Horse had better not be subject to it; because some are so loaded with Humours, that they descend into the Feet while you are curing the Mallenders, and often cause what is called a Fig in the Foot, which is much more dangerous than the Mallenders, and what few Farriers know how to cure, for Want of Experience.

Whatever Jockeys may pretend, the Mallenders make the Leg stiff, and take away the Motion of the Knee-Joint; which obliges a Horse to stumble often, and sometimes to fall, as he cannot bend his Joints without Pain.

In Summer this Defect often goes away voluntarily, the Humours being dried up by the Dust; but then the Mark of it remains. In Winter, when a Horse is obliged to work in Mud, Water, Snow, or Ice, he suffers many Inconveniencies; which makes it necessary to use gentle Remedies, lest by curing the Distemper in one Part, you drive it to another. The following are very proper for this Purpose.

*A Remedy for the Mallenders.*

Take *Oyster-Shells*, and calcine them in the Fire to a Sort of Lime, so that you may crumble them to Powder, when cold, with your Hand; Then pound them well in a Mortar, and pass them through a fine Sieve. Take the same Weight of Navets, or wild Turnips, and pound them also: Then take *Hog's Lard*, to the Weight of both, and put all together in an earthen Pot, and let it boil over the Fire a full Hour, stirring it all the while, and even continuing to stir it till cold when taken off. Anoint the Mallenders with this Ointment, two or three Times a Day, and it will effect a Cure. But you must purge the Horse before you use it, to turn the Humours; and afterwards, to cleanse his Body.

*Another Remedy for the Mallenders, Mules, and Sallenders.*

These three Distempers, though different, may be treated and cured with the same Remedies.

It has been already said, that the Seat of the Mallenders is behind the Knee, in the Joint: I must add, that the Sallenders come over-against the Mallenders, in the middle of the Bend of the Hough; and that Mules are a kind of Clefs that come behind the Fetlocks, which split them quite a-cross. This last Accident is often a Matter of Importance, if it be not remedied very soon: For this Slit will grow so deep, that it sometimes extends to the Bone, and the Tendons that hold the Bones together; and sometimes a Filander comes in the middle of the Wound, looking white like the small End of a Nerve, but which is neither more nor less than an Excrescence, occasioned by the Humours that ooze from between the Bones of the Joint. This often destroys a Horse; but the best Way to save him is to use these Remedies.

Take *Oil of Hempseed*, *Honey*, *Hog's Lard*, *Verdigrease* finely powdered, *Black Pitch*, *Flowers of Brimstone*, *White Copperas*, *Red Arsenick*, *Common Alum*, each 2 Ounces; *Quicksilver*, 1 Ounce. Mix the Flowers of Brimstone and Quicksilver by rubbing in a Mortar till the Quicksilver is killed; and then mix the other Things in Powder with the Oil, over a slow Fire, in an earthen Pipkin (avoiding the Fumes) and boil it a little, and then stir it till it is cold. Dress the Horse every Day with this Composition, till he is well.

*Another Remedy for the Mallenders or Sallenders.*

Take *Black Soap*, Ointment of *Poplar Buds*, and *fresh Butter*, each equal Parts, mixed together for an Ointment; which use every Day.

*Another.*

Take *Oil of Lead*, *Whitest Cerusse*, each eight Ounces; *Common Honey*, twenty-four Ounces: Put the whole into a large earthen Pipkin, and let it stand over a gentle Fire, stirring it perpetually with a Spatula, to prevent it's boiling over, and continuing to do the same when you take it off, till it is quite cold. Use this as the preceding.

P

Every



CHAP.  
LI, LII,  
LIII, LIV.

Every time that you dress your Horse, foment the Wounds well with a little warm Wine and Sugar, which will keep them clean: But be as quick as you can in doing this, that the Air may not have Time to affect the Part, because that would retard the Cure.

#### CHAP. LI.

##### *Bow-Legs.*

**T**HIS Accident proceeds from two different Causes: First, from Nature, when a Horse was got by an old worn-out Stallion; secondly, from his having been worked too young. Neither in the one Case nor the other is the Horse of any Value, because he never can be sure footed. It is moreover a disagreeable Sight; and is known by looking at the two Fore-Legs, standing about three Paces from his Shoulders. If the Knees point forwards, and his Legs turn in under him, so that the Knees come much farther out than the Feet, this is what we call a bow-legged Horse. Such a Horse ought to be rejected for any Service whatsoever, as he never can stand firm on his Legs; and how handsome soever he may otherwise be, he should on no Account be used for a Stallion, because all his Progeny will have the same Deformity.

I had taken no Notice of this Case, because there is no Cure for it, had it not been to prevent any one's being deceived in making a Purchase.

#### CHAP. LII.

##### *Tottering Legs.*

**T**HIS Infirmary, like the other, is not very easily discovered; which is often a great Advantage to the Seller. You cannot perceive it till after a Horse has galloped for some Time, and then by letting him rest a little, you will see his Legs tremble under him; which is the Disorder I mean. How handsome soever the Legs of such a Horse may be, he never can stand well on them: You are not to mind therefore what a Jockey says, when he talks a great deal of the Beauty of those Limbs; for if you oblige him to gallop his Horse, or fatigue him pretty much (which is commonly done in order to try the Creature's Bottom) you will in all likelihood discover this Defect, unless you suffer the Groom to gallop him to the Stable Door, and put him up in a Moment; which he will certainly endeavour to do, if he is conscious of it, while the Master has another Horse ready to shew you, in order to take off your Attention from what he is afraid you should see. There is no more Cure for this, than for Bow-Legs.

#### CHAP. LIII.

##### *A Horse that forges.*

**W**HAT I mean by a Horse that *forges*, is one, that when he walks or trots, strikes the Toes of his hind Feet against the Corners of his Shoes before, which occasions a clattering Noise as you ride. This proceeds only from the Weakness of his Fore-Legs, he not having Strength in them to raise them up quick, to make Way for the hind ones. A Horse of this kind can do no great Service; and the Dealers to get rid of him will make abundance of Pretences. If he has been just shod, they will scold at the Hostler for having suffered him to have such long Shoes; and if his Shoes are old, they will tell you he is just arrived from a long Journey, and very much fatigued. You must not be over credulous therefore to any Thing a Jockey affirms, for all they say is usually with an Intent to deceive: And it is very certain, that a Horse who forges can never be sure footed, any more than one who has Tottering or Bow-Legs.

#### CHAP. LIV.

##### *A Blow on the Nerve.*

**T**HIS Accident may happen to the best Horse in the World, as well as to the worst; if the Person who rides him does not know how to manage and support him justly: In Hunting especially, or in swift Courses, when you are obliged to ride over sandy or ploughed Grounds, or such as are wet and boggy, if you are not careful to support him with your Hand, his Fore-feet will sink in, and as he has not Time to raise them soon enough



enough to make Way for the hind ones, the Toes of these come against the large Nerves before, that lie between the Knee and the Back of the Fetlock, and strike them with great Violence: But as the Blow does not break the Skin, nothing at first appears; only in the Evening, or the next Day, the Horse grows lame, without your knowing the Cause of it. You must examine him therefore all over, drawing your Hand first from the Joint of the Knees downwards, and taking up the Nerve with your Fingers, in order to feel it all the Way. If he suddenly snatches away his Foot, imagine you have found the Seat of his Disorder, and that it is a *Nerve-Shoe*, or Blow on the Nerve. This is no trifling Hurt; for if the Horse be not presently blooded, but the Case at first neglected, it becomes very difficult to cure. But if you discover it soon, proceed as follows.

Take Spirit of *Turpentine*, and *Wine-Vinegar*, of each alike; beat them together; then take a large Piece of Sponge, slit it almost through in the Middle, and having dipped it in the Composition, apply it to the Nerve, covering it quite from Top to Bottom. Then take an Ox's or Cow's Bladder, and bind it over the Sponge with a Linen Swathe. Let this remain twenty-four Hours, and then repeat the same Dressing three Times, on three subsequent Days, taking care never to bind the Nerve too hard. This will quite remove the otherwise dangerous Malady.

*Another Remedy.*

You must shave off all the Hair along the Nerve, and then rub it well with a Wisp of Straw, in order to heat it. Then apply some of the following Ointment.

Take *Black Hellebore*, *Euphorbium*, and *Spanish Flies*, each 2 Ounces; *Oil of Bays*, 4 Ounces. Powder the dry Drugs, and mix them with the Oil for an Ointment; which apply to the whole Nerve, but most plentifully where the Hurt was received. Repeat the same Dressing twice in one Day, which will draw out a red Humour; and then continue to use it once a Day near a Week longer, by which Time the Nerve will look red, as if it were raw. You must not be surpris'd at this, because both Skin and Hair will come again as before: And if this Ointment be well applied, and the Horse left three Weeks or a Month in the Stable without stirring, his Leg will look as handfom as ever.

This Ointment is also good for worn-out or furbated Legs, the Nerves of which are hard and swelled: But if those Disorders are of long standing, and the Nerves are entirely spoiled, the shortest way is to give the Fire, making six Lines on each Side the Nerve, and three on each Side of the Part that surrounds the Fetlock, and one in the Middle; that is, ten Lines on each Side. This is the only certain Remedy, if the Fire be well given, for wounded, or worn-out Nerves. But I must inform you, that always, before you give the Fire to a Horse, you must let him rest three Weeks or a Month in the Stable; and during that Time you must prepare the Leg, with good Fomentations of Marsh-Mallows, for the Operation. Three or four Days before you perform it, cleanse the Leg from all Filth with Water and Soap; for though the Fomentations supple the Nerves, they always leave a Dirt behind them. As many Persons will not consent to give the Fire, for fear of disfiguring their Horse, and because all who pretend to it are not capable of this Operation, the Reader may find here a great Number of Remedies, which I have tried myself, in order to avoid performing it.

*A Remedy for the Nerves.*

Rub your Horse's Legs all over with your Hand, in order to warm his Nerves: Then bleed him in the Bow-vein, and rub his Legs again with his own Blood. Afterwards use the following Composition.

Take *Black Pitch*, *Black Rosin*, *Burgundy Pitch*, *Venice Turpentine*, *Oil of Bays*, *Bean Flower*, *Rose Leaves*, *Camomile Flowers*, *Cyprus Nuts*, *Dragons Blood* powdered, each 2 Ounces: Boil the Whole a Quarter of an Hour, over a gentle Fire, in three Quarts of Wine, and with this rub the Nerves twice a Day, for fifteen or twenty Days following, in which time you will see them perfectly cured.

*A Receipt for ruined Nerves.*

Take *Oil of Bays*, *Common Honey*, *Turpentine*, *Bole Armenic*, *Black Soap*, *Mutton Suet*, each 2 Ounces: Put the Whole in a Pipkin, and boil it a Quarter of an Hour over a gentle Fire, stirring it all the while. Apply this to the Nerves moderately warm, with Tow  
and



CHAP.  
LV.

and a proper Bandage; and repeat it till the Swelling goes down. Then, to perfect the Cure, have recourse to the following Fomentation.

Take *Rose Leaves*, *Camomile Flowers*, *Green Anise*, *Green Sage*, *Pomegranate Bark*, *Wormwood*, *Gall Nuts*, each 2 Ounces; *Roch Alum*, *White Vitriol*, each 1 Ounce: Reduce the Whole to a Powder, and put it into a Kettle with about a Pail-full of Rain or River Water, which boil to half the Quantity. Then, with a Sponge, bathe the Nerves and Legs of the Horse, twice a Day, till he is perfectly and manifestly well.

*A Remedy for swelled Legs.*

There often happens a Sort of Swelling in the Legs of Hunting-Horses, by a Thorn that runs into them in the Chace. This Swelling usually appears after the Fall of the Leaf. When you feel with your Hand that the Nerves are swelled, and that the Swelling is occasioned by a Thorn, make use of the following Remedies.

Take equal Quantities of White-Wine and Oil of Nuts, and boil them over a gentle Fire in an earthen Pipkin, till it is reduced to half. Rub the swelled Legs with this against the Hair, twice a Day, the whole Length of the Nerves. The Hair of the Leg will all come off; but it will grow again, and the Leg be as sound and handsome, as if it had never been disordered. The Horse, during the Course, should have a whole Month's rest.

*Another.*

Take Oil of Olives, and Lees of Red Wine, of each alike; mix and beat them well together, to reduce them into an unctuous Substance, with which rub the Horse's Legs Night and Morning.

*A Remedy for a Horse that has got Thorns in Hunting.*

Take the Skin of an Adder, and apply it upon the Place where there appears to be a Thorn, and at the End of three or four Days the Thorn will come out, without any other Remedy. But if Thorns have been long in the Legs of a Horse, and are got in far, after the Application of the Adder-Skin, use the following Ointment.

Take *Goose Grease*, 1 Pound; *Burgundy Pitch*, *Gum Elemi*, each 6 Ounces; *Yellow Wax*, 4 Ounces; *White Sage Leaves*, 1 Handful: Boil the Whole together till it comes to an Ointment, with which rub the swelled Legs. Then heat a Peel red-hot, and hold it to the Leg all round, to make the Ointment penetrate; but not too near, as the Farriers commonly do; because that contracts the Nerves, and makes the Remedy worse than the Disease. You need apply this Ointment but once in two Days; and if the Application is made with Judgment, it will produce wonderful Effects.

*How to make an Ointment to fortify relaxed Nerves.*

Take Mallow-roots well pounded, and steep them eight Days in a Pail of Water; then add two Pounds of Flour of Linseed, and boil the Whole together over a gentle Fire till it becomes like a Hafty-pudding. Strain it warm through a coarse Towel, and squeeze out all you can: Then add a Pound of Oil of Olives, and keep it stirring till quite cold, and of the Consistence of an Ointment. Keep this in a Pot close covered, and rub the Legs with it once a Day till they are cured; which will be very soon.

*A Remedy for the Mallenders and Sallenders.*

Take *Comfrey* and *Lead Ore*, of each 4 Ounces; *Honey*, half a Pound: Put them together in a varnished Pipkin, and melt them over a gentle Fire, stirring all the while, and continuing to do so when the Composition is taken off, till it is quite cold. Put some of this once a Day upon the Mallenders or Sallenders; but take care to cleanse the Wounds before you apply it. There is no Bandage wanting: Only put it on with your Finger, or a Spatula.

CHAP. LV.

*A Blow between the Fetlock and the Heel.*

THESE Blows are received in the same Manner as those on the Nerve before described: The only Difference is, that the Seat of the one is higher than that of the



the other. The Seat of the Blow we are now speaking of, is between the Fetlock and the Heel of the Fore-feet. As this is a very sensible Part, such Accidents are often dangerous. The Nerves, which contribute to the Motion of the Joint, run along just in this Place; that is, there are here a great Number of small Vessels, Veins and Arteries, which, upon every rude Knock they receive, may lame a Horse.

To know when a Horse is hurt here, draw your Hand along the large Nerve, pinching it as you proceed. If you find no Sensibility there, carry your Hand to the Joint that is between the Fetlock and the Heel; and if you have then hit upon the Part, the Horse will catch away his Foot. Having found what ails him, begin the Cure with the same Remedies that are prescribed for a Blow on the Nerve, when there is no Wound. If the Blow be upon the Heel itself, and the Skin be a little broke, you have only to wash the Part with warm Wine, and a small matter of Sugar melted in it; putting over it a little Tow and a Bandage. On the Deficiency of Wine and Sugar, wash the Wound with Urine; for with ever so little Dressing, if you keep the Air from it, it will heal. Spirit of Turpentine will do very well in this Case; or, if you are in the Country, the Juice of the Herbs Arse-smart, Celandine, or Nettles, either of the three. If you can get none of these, take only a little Cannon Powder, fill the Wound with it, and let it off; repeating this three or four Times, till all the Inside of the Wound is burned, as if you had made it with a hot Iron; and then dress it with Urine, Tow, and a Bandage. If the Sore through Negligence is suffered to grow very bad, you must dress it with a Digestive made in the following manner.

*A Digestive.*

Take 4 Ounces of *Venice Turpentine*, and 2 Yolks of *Eggs*; rub them together in a Mortar very well, and put a Spoonful or less of Brandy, and mix the whole for an Ointment. If there be proud Flesh, strew it over with burnt Alum, or rub it with blue Vitriol or *Lapis Infernalis*, or use any one of the Compositions mentioned in this Book for that Purpose.

Some Disorders, to which we give other Names, are occasioned by these Blows; and among others, what the *French* call *Javarts*, that is, Swellings in the Pastern, are often owing to it, though they sometimes proceed from natural Causes. I shall speak of the three Sorts of these in their Order.

CHAP. LVI.

*A simple Javart, or Core in the Pastern.*

AS nothing should be undertaken in Medicine before the Consequence of it is known, I shall first give the Idea of a *Javart*. It is a Humour that comes behind the Fetlock, above the Heel, and obliges a Horse to limp extremely. There appears from the first a small Swelling, which is very sensible to the Touch; and the sooner you can bring it to Suppuration the better, in order to discharge the foul Matter: For no sooner is he rid of that, but the Horse finds himself relieved; whereas if it continues there long, he runs a great Risque of his Life. Instead of simple, it then becomes a nervous Javart, which is no easy Thing to cure. But I proceed with the simple Sort, which may be cured by the following Remedies.

*A Remedy for a simple Javart.*

Take the same Drugs that are used to bring the Glands to Suppuration, in a Horse that has the Strangles; or, in the Room of them, *Lily-Roots* roasted in Wood-Embers; put them into a Mortar, with such Oil as you can get (Rape or Linseed Oil are the best) and reduce the Whole to an Ointment, which apply upon the Javart. It will soon draw out the Matter; and then heal it like another Wound.

*Another Way of curing it.*

Before you undertake to cure a Javart, you must carefully examine the Constitution and Temperament of your Horse. If he is over-charged with Humours, you must purge him for some Time to turn them from that Part.



CHAP.  
LVI.*How to make a Plaister to draw the Matter out of a Javart.*

Take four Ounces of *Hog's Lard*, and melt it in a Fire-Shovel: Then take four Ounces of *Honey*, and boil it up suddenly: Then add 2 Ounces of Bean-Flour, and set the whole over the Fire, stirring it till it comes to a pappy Consistence: Add afterwards three Yolks of Eggs, and when the whole is well incorporated together, spread it upon Tow, and apply it to the Tumours. Renew this Dressing every twelve Hours, till the Matter is discharged: Then put a Tent of Tow, covered with a good Suppurative, into the Hole, to draw out all that remains. When nothing more comes, put a little powdered Alum round your Tent, to keep down the proud Flesh: After which you may dress it with any Thing proper for Healing of Wounds; but take great Care to keep the Air from it as much as possible.

Having hinted that there are several Sorts of Javarts, I now proceed to another Species.

*Horny Javarts.*

Though all these Swellings proceed from much the same Causes, there may be this Difference observed between them. The simple Javart comes only in the Joint between the Heels and the hind Part of the Fetlock: The horny Sort comes nearly in the same Place; but the Hole forms itself between the Heel and the horny Crown of the Foot. Many Horses have been lost by this Accident, either through Negligence, or through leaving the Wound too long exposed to the Air in dressing, or through the Omission of their necessary Scourings. The best Remedies, at such Times, are found ineffectual; and even Horses that have not died of it, have been six Months, or sometimes a Year under Cure. To prevent these Accidents, take Leeks, Heads and Greens together; chop them to Pieces, and beat them up in a Mortar, with Mustard and Hog's Lard, the same Quantity of each as of Leeks. Make a Plaister and apply it to the Javart, in order to bring it to a Head, and draw out the Matter: Then heal the Wound with drying Powders, taking great care to keep out the Air.

If the Javart be of long standing, take Essence of *Turpentine*, and *Succotrine Aloes*, both pulverized; mix with them Sugar, and make a Sort of red Tincture to dress the Wound with till it is well. If the Horse has had it six Months or a Year, and proud Flesh grows over the Horn, you must cut off as much of it as possible, with an Incision-Knife, and then give the Fire to the Part, making Lines from Top to Bottom over all the Swelling, from the Hair quite to the Horn. This will search the Wound, and fetch down the proud Flesh which you could not cut off. It is indeed the only Way to do it, and will succeed when all the Drugs of an Apothecary's Shop are found insufficient.

The Operation of the Bistoury and the Fire being over, apply to the Wound a Plaister made in the following Manner, and continue to renew it for ten or twelve subsequent Days.

Take Honey and *Venice-Turpentine*, an equal Quantity of each; beat them well together, and apply this Composition to the Wound, leaving it there, under a good Bandage, three whole Days: Then repeat the Dressing and continue it each Time as long. If you perceive any proud Flesh to arise, sprinkle on it a little burnt Alum, and dress it with the same Plaister, only adding a small Quantity of Essence of *Turpentine*. You must always keep the Hoof greased with Foot-Ointment, to preserve the Crown from contracting; and if, through the Length of the Distemper, the Crown should be straitened or diminished, make Lines upon it with your Fire-Knives all round, drawing them from Top to Bottom. If the Contraction be extreme, without Hesitation unsole the Horse, and split his Frog, to enlarge his Foot. You must dress the Sole with *Turpentine* a little warm, nourishing the Hoof well with Foot-Ointment; the Receipt for which, and Manner of unfoling, you will find at the End of this Book.

*Another Remedy.*

Take Hog's Lard, and a Quarter of the same Weight of fine Basket Salt; mix them together, and leave them on the Sore twenty-four Hours: Repeat the same till the Matter is discharged, and then any Ointment will effect a Cure.

*How to know a nervous Javart.*

This comes just in the middle of the Joint, between the Heel and the Back of the Fetlock. If it be taken in hand at the first, the Cure is easy; but if you wait till an Ulcer is



is formed, a small Filander will at the same Time grow to the Nerve, and be very difficult to cure. The Reason is, because you must not use violent Remedies, for fear of hurting the Nerve; and Medicines that are soft only nourish the Filander. After the common Applications therefore for other Javarts, you may have recourse to good Digestives, and instead of Brandy use Spirit of Turpentine, mixing with it Powder of calcined Alum, more or less as the Occasion requires. When the Filander disappears, complete the Cure with a Digestive only.

CHAP.  
LVII,  
LVIII,  
LIX.

CHAP. LVII.

*For a Prick in a Horse's Foot.*

**T**HIS Disorder is easy enough to be known, and therefore requires no Description. If the Hurt be fresh received, make the Hole as large as you can in pulling out the Nail, and dress it with Spirit of Turpentine covered with Tow. If the Horse is still lame at the End of twenty-four Hours, repeat the same Dressing; and so continue to renew it daily till he is well. For want of Spirit of Turpentine, you may use the Foot-Ointment, melting some of it into the Hole.

*For an old Prick, you may make a Tincture of Succotrine Aloes in this Manner.*

Take *Succotrine Aloes*, fine *Sugar*, each half an Ounce; *Oil of Turpentine*, 3 Ounces: Mix them well, and apply. If there is a Filander at the Bottom of the Hole, which you cannot get off, put upon it a little powdered Sublimate, and the Tincture over that. Observe always to put a good Defensative round the Crown, for fear the Inflammation should throw any Matter upon it, which might sever the Foot from the Hoof, and consequently would spoil the Horse. Nothing should be more regarded than this, nor than keeping the Hoof always supple, as before described.

*Another Remedy for an old Prick.*

Steep Roman Vitriol in Brandy till you make it quite blue, and put of this once a Day upon the Hole till it is well. This Liquor will keep a long Time, and is good for all Wounds, where there is any Foulness.

CHAP. LVIII.

*A Halter-cast.*

**W**HAT we call a Halter-cast, is when a Horse entangles his Leg, or his Pastern, either behind or before, in the Rein of his Halter. This Accident is usually most violent when it happens to a hind Leg. The Horse, thus hampered, flings about, and cuts himself in the Joint between the Pastern and the Fetlock.

If the Wound is recent, how great soever it may be, provided no Nerve be cut that is essential to the Motion of the Joint, nor any Vein, the Danger is but trifling, and a Cure may be effected by only raw Yolks of Eggs, fastened on with a Bandage, and renewed every twenty-four Hours. In slighter Cases, you need only apply the Egg with your Finger, Night and Morning. But if the Nerves or Veins have been damaged, there must be a good Digestive to heal them, and great Care to keep out all Air. The same Digestive, or even some of the Remedies prescribed for Javarts after they are opened, may serve in the following Case.

CHAP. LIX.

*Scratches or Chaps.*

**H**ORSES are more subject to this Disorder in Winter than in Summer, because their Skins are then more tender, and they are obliged to work in Water, Ice, and Mud half frozen, which often makes the Skin break behind the Joints, sometimes upon the Pasterns, sometimes higher, and now and then upon the Fetlock. It is not a very dangerous Case in itself, but exceedingly troublesome upon a Journey. However, if you can keep your Horse close in the Stable, and preserve the Scratches from Air, you may soon cure him, with any assuaging Remedy whatever. It is quite otherwise with the following Accident, which demands much more Attention, and that you should have recourse to many Remedies set down in the Article of Javarts.

CHAP.



## C H A P. LX.

*Mules.*CHAP.  
LX, LXI.

**M**ULES, or tranverse Mules, very much resemble Scratches, being Clefs athwart the Skin behind the Fetlock. They happen oftner in the hind Legs than in the fore, and are known from Scratches by a kind of whitish Matter, somewhat like muddy Water, that issues out of them. The same may indeed be found sometimes in Scratches; but then they never go deeper than the Skin, whereas Mules are much deeper; for if you take a Straw, and probe one of them, you will find it go in above two Fingers Thickness without forcing, the Orifice entering between the Bones and the Joint. While this Wound is under Cure, the Horse must never go out of the Stable, not even to the Farrier's to be dressed; because the Joint suffers much in walking, and the Cleft grows bigger, which takes away the Effect of the best Remedies. Use the same Remedies here as in Swellings on the Pasterns, or Javarts, and especially the Tincture of Aloes and Spirit of Turpentine: And be sure to put over the Tincture a good Defensive, to prevent any Inflammation that might otherwise come; and to fasten it with a Bandage five or six Times double, to hinder any Motion of the Fetlock. You may complete the Cure with a Digestive.

## C H A P. LXI.

*Maltlongs or Maltworms.*

**T**HIS is most commonly a Humour inherent in the Horse's Nature, and it's Seat is on the Fore-part of the Foot above the Crown; that is, under the Front of the Fetlock. It appears in a Sort of itching Scab, about an Inch in diameter, which makes the Hair come off of the Part; and the Matter that comes from it is very stinking, and troublesome to the Horse. Many Persons speak of it as a trifle, but few know how to cure it. There is indeed Occasion to have recourse here to a Caustic, in order to fetch off the scabby Excrecence, which is, in fact, a kind of proud Flesh not easily eradicated. Neither the Incision-Knife, nor any other sharp Instrument, is half so effectual to this End, as the Caustics prescribed in the present Treatise.

Having got off a Scab about as big as half a Nut, if no more proud Flesh appears, you may dress it like any common Wound.

This Disease seldom happens to Saddle-Horses, but only to large Draught-Cattle, that are loaded with Hair, and consequently full of Humours; unless any Saddle-Horse was brought up, or is fed on fat marshy Grounds. If the Maltlong be neglected, it causes another and worse Accident, which is what we call a Cloven or Ox's Foot. The Matter running down from the Maltlong, between the Foot and the Horn, occasions the Hoof to cleave in the Middle, upon the Fore-part.

*Description of the Maltlong.*

This Distemper comes, as we have said, upon the Crown of a Horse's Foot that works in Mud. It often disunites the Horn from the Foot, and sometimes makes the Hoof fall off. This Disease appears more in some Seasons than in others; for it breaks out afresh when the Corn begins to sprout and is in Flower: At all other Times you see only a little Scab, as I before called it, which gives the Horse no Trouble. Your Dealers and Jockeys take the favourable Seasons to sell off their Horses that have it, and only tell their Chapmen, that it is a Blow which the Horse gave himself by Accident, and that it is merely owing to the Negligence of a Farrier, or Hostler, that it is not yet well. The Deception however appears, when the fatal Season comes again.

*A Remedy for the Maltlong.*

If the foregoing Remedy, though very good, did not succeed, give the Fire in the following Manner. You must have the same Sort of Knives that were before described, in the Article of Windgalls, and having heated them, cut the Maltlong through in the Middle, descending towards the Hoof, and make two other parallel Lines, one on each Side: Then apply the following Composition.

Take



Take *Turpentine*, *Honey*, *Black Rosin*, each 2 Ounces; *Roch Alum* powdered, 1 Ounce: Mix the whole together, and melt them in a Pipkin to an Ointment, with which dress the Wound immediately, and repeat the Dressing every twenty-four Hours for eight or ten successive Days. Every Time you dress it, have ready a little warm Wine, with Sugar melted in it, for a Fomentation; and when the Wound is ready to heal, burn an old Shoe or two, and mix the Ashes with Brandy to bathe and dry it; or you must dry it up with calcined Alum, or a little digestive Ointment, till the Skin and Hair come again as before.

C H A P.  
LXII.  
LXIII.

## C H A P. LXII.

*Of a Cloven or Ox's Foot.*

**W**HEN a Horse has his Feet cleft in two, from the Crown down to the Toe, it is very difficult to join the two Parts again: This is therefore a very bad Case. The best Way to proceed, is first to cover all the Horn of the Foot with Foot-Ointment, and fill the Inside of the Hoof with the same, in order to soften the Horn. You must repeat it three or four Days running. Then take a Cobler's Awl, about the Size of a Needle to mend Stockings with, and heat it in a Charcoal Fire, which you must have standing by you. Pierce both Sides of the Horn very tenderly, in three or four Places, so that the Holes may meet exactly; which must be a Work of Time, because an Awl will not long keep hot. Then put a brass Wire through each Pair of Holes, and twist the Ends together tight with Pincers, in order to close up the Cleft as much as possible. You must then have three or four Pieces of Iron, made in the Form of the Letter (S), and fasten them on hot between the Ligatures of brass Wire, which will keep the Hoof firm and close. Three or four Weeks or a Month will make the Horn hold together; but the Horse ought to be three or four Months before you work him.

Mules are very subject to this Accident, but with this Difference from Horses, that though the Cleft appears the same, it is not so deep, and does not hinder them from working. I would not however advise any one to buy Mules that have it, because in Process of Time their Feet may open quite to the Quick; and a Mule as well as a Horse may lose his Life by it, if not well treated.

## C H A P. LXIII.

*Of a Seyme.*

**W**HAT the *French* call a *Seyme* proceeds from different Causes; as first, from the extreme Driness of the Foot, when there has not been Care taken to keep the Hoof greased, and nourished with Foot-Ointment, and sometimes with Cow-dung. It happens chiefly to Horses that go little abroad, and are taken out in Summer in extreme dry Weather. You should always refresh the Feet therefore on such an Occasion. It may proceed, secondly, from a *Bleyne* within the Foot, on the Side of the Frog, and which, as it could not make any other Way, cleaves the Horn within, or without near the Heel, proceeding from the Crown to the very Bottom. When the Foot is divided thus on the Side, as in the Ox's Foot it is in the Middle, there often comes out Blood as the Horse walks or trots. Different Persons treat this Distemper in different Manners; but though I shall introduce several Remedies, I prefer that of giving the Fire, as in the preceding Article of cloven Feet; with this Difference only, that there is no need here of the brass Wire, the Iron SS being sufficient to close up this Cleft. If the Operation be well performed, and the Foot afterwards well anointed with Foot-Ointment, the Disorder will never return, and the Horn will grow stronger and harder in those Places than it ever was before. You are first, as I said in the other Article, to prepare the Hoof for two or three Days with Foot-Ointment, and then to apply three or four hot SS across the Cleft, one under another. If you can then excuse your Horse a Month or six Weeks from working, you will soon see him perfectly well, and in no Danger of the same Accident for the future.

But if you are obliged to work such a Horse within a Fortnight after you have given him the Fire, you must have the Corner of the Shoe cut off on that Side where the Disorder was, so that that Quarter of the Heel may not bear upon any Thing; because otherwise the Cleft might open again, and all you have done be to no Purpose. The Shoe to be used in this Case, and that wants one of its Branches, is called by some a half Spectacle, and by others a half Slipper.

R

*A Quarter-*



CHAP.  
LXIV.*A Quarter-Seyme.*

The Seyme, as has been said, comes on the fore, and never on the hind Feet. It often makes a new Quarter, and then we call it a Quarter-Seyme. It proceeds from the Alteration and Driness of the Hoof, and is known only by the Horse's Limping, and having his Hoof cleft from the Top of the Crown to the Bottom of all, either on the Out-side, or the in. It causes very great Pain, and often happens to Horses of the Manage, who never go in the Wet, as well as to those who are confined long in the Stable. The Hoofs of all these therefore should be often suppled with Foot-Ointment, and the Inside filled, from time to time, with Clay or Cow-Dung.

*A Remedy.*

Dip a Pledget of Cotton in Spirits of Wine, and lay it along the Cleft of the Seyme; then put over it the following Plaister, made of new Wax and Ointment of *Poplar Buds*, the same Quantity of each, melted together. The Spirit will unite the Horn, and the Plaister will take away the Inflammation. Put on a fresh Plaister every twenty-four Hours, and the Seyme will soon heal, and the Horse be well enough to work.

*Another Remedy.*

Take two large *Adders*, throw away their Heads and their Tails, because they are poisonous; then cut them in Slices, and put them into an Earthen Pot, with a Pound of Oil of *Olives*; close up the Pot well, and put it into a Kettle-full of Water, but so as that not any may get into the Pot: Boil it till what is in the Pot is reduced to an unctuous Consistence, and use this Ointment every Day upon the Seyme till it is well, which will not be very long.

*Another.*

Cleanse the Seyme well by washing it with warm Water, and afterwards with Brandy: Sprinkle upon it Orpiment in Powder, and over that the Yolk of an Egg boiled hard: Then bind up the Foot, and keep it two Days without opening. You will scarce be able to see, at the End of that Time, that there was any Seyme. These are excellent good Remedies when you want to sell a Horse; but if you would keep him, the surest Way is to give the Fire.

## CHAP. LXIV.

*Of a Bleyme.*

**T**O know when there is a Bleyme, you must unshoe the disordered Horse, and pare his Foot very neatly. Upon one of the inner Quarters, near the Frog, you will see a red Spot, like corrupted Blood, which will sometimes bleed with the very Paring. This is a Sign that the Bleyme is very violent, and let such a Horse work ever so little, especially if it be in Summer, he becomes lame: But keep him some Time idle in the Stable, and he will not limp, unless he has been newly shod. Few old Horses are subject to this Accident: Nor is the Case very dangerous, when visible as here described: But when it is so forward, that you can hardly see it, and has no Room outwardly, you must divide the Side of the Hoof, agreeably to what was before said. Many Farriers pretend to cure a Seyme by paring the Hoof, and digging it down with their Buttress; applying afterwards certain Remedies to prevent an Inflammation that may ensue. I own that a Horse, after this Ceremony, may seem to be relieved for the present; but when he has continued some Time without being shod, he begins to limp again; and let him work ever so little, the Bleyme is as bad as before. There have been People so ignorant as to unsole a Horse in this Case, without operating on the Seat of the Bleyme; but in such a Horse too the Bleyme soon grows as violent as ever: Whereas the following Remedy is infallible, and will make a perfect Cure.

*A Remedy for a Bleyme.*

Take *Cow-Dung*, *Pork-Fat*, *Turpentine*, and *Rosin*, of each half a Pound; a Quarter of a Pound of *Linseed*, and half a Pint of Oil, of any Sort you can get; melt the Whole together in a Pot, and apply some of this Composition, as warm as he can bear it, to the Horse's Foot, binding it on with Tow and Splinters. Repeat this every twenty-four Hours till



till the Horſe limps no longer, which probably may be twelve Days or a Fortnight. You will then never ſee any more of the Bleyme. CHAP.  
LXV.

*Another.*

When you have pared the Horſe's Foot as deep as you can, eſpecially juſt in the Seat of the Bleyme; melt *Sealing Wax* upon it three or four Days running, applying after each Time ſome of the above Compoſition. The latter, but not the Wax, muſt be continued till the Horſe limps no longer. This Method is equally good with the former, and either of them will ſometimes do when the other fails. The more lame a Horſe is after this Operation, the more certain you may be that his Diſorder will never return. If they both fail, for Want of Skill or Experience in him that uſes them, the ſhorteſt Way is to unſole the Horſe, and dreſs the Bleyme according to the preceding Directions.

*How to unſole a Horſe for a Bleyme, or any other Accident.*

Before you attempt to unſole a Horſe, you muſt prepare his Foot well, by ſoftening his Hoof with Foot-Ointment. Then, in order for the Operation, take a Cord about half as thick as one's little Finger, and make a Ligature about the Joint between the Foot and the Fetlock, in order to keep back the Blood, that you may ſee the Sole the better. Then cut the Sole all round with your Buttrefs; and when it is quick detached, you may take it off with Eaſe. This being done, untie the Cord, and let the Blood run about a Quarter of an Hour; after which take up the Foot, and renew the Ligature. Put the Shoe on as before, faſtening it well with five or ſix Nails, and then waſh the Inſide of the Foot with Salt and Vinegar, or Salt and Brandy; or, for want of either, with freſh human Urine. Apply afterwards Honey and Roſin, an equal Quantity of each, melted together with a ſmall Piece of Lime, filling the Foot with Tow, bound on with Splinters, to keep down the Sole; but take care you do not hurt it by binding them too tight. You muſt put alſo a Deſenſative round the Crown, for fear the Humours ſhould fly thither. You may make it as follows.

*A Deſenſative to be uſed when a Horſe's Soles are drawn.*

*Chimney Wood-Soot* two Pounds; *Turpentine, Pitch,* and *Honey*, each half a Pound; melt the whole together in a Pot, and then add about a Quart of Vinegar, in which ſix Yolks of Eggs have been beat up. Apply ſome of this Compoſition upon Tow freſh every twenty-four Hours, continuing it for eight or ten Days; and after that you need dreſs the Sole only with Turpentine and Tow, till it is hard and firm, which will be perhaps in twenty or twenty-five Days: But be careful, when you leave off the Deſenſative, to keep the Hoof well ſuppled with Foot-Ointment, that the Horn may never be dry till the Cure is effected.

As there are other Accidents beſides Bleymes that may make a Horſe lame, and do him a great deal of Damage, eſpecially if he be fat and full of Humours, (though nothing perhaps may appear, on Account of the fine Make of the Body and Legs) I proceed to give ſuch Preſcriptions, as may be of general Uſe for their Cure.

CHAP. LXV.

*New Frogs, or Fruſhes.*

IT often happens that a Horſe full of Humours has a new Frog, which many People call a corrupted Frog, becauſe in changing the Horn that encompasses it it corrupts in ſuch a Manner, as to ooze out a ſtinking Moiſture, and by Degrees it all rots away. If a Horſe is not blooded, in proportion to the Humours that affect him, there comes another great Diſorder; and out of a hundred Farriers, ſcarce ſix can be found that know how to cure it. This is called a Thread, or by the *French Crapeau*, and may be known and cured by the following Directions.

*A Remedy for drying off corrupted Frogs.*

Take *Roch Alum, Green and White Copperas, Verdigreaf,* all finely powdered, of each 2 Ounces: Infuſe them cold twenty-four Hours in a Pot, with a Quart of Wine-Vinegar;



CHAP.  
LXVI,  
LXVII.

Vinegar; and with a Piece of Cotton, or a Sponge, dipped in this Infusion, wash the Frushes twice every Day.

When you have not the above Drugs, take some of the Aqua Fortis which a Goldsmith has used to whiten his Work, and use it alone in the same manner as the foregoing Composition. You may have it for asking for, because the Workmen always then throw it away, as having lost its Strength.

*Another Remedy for a new, or corrupted Frog.*

Take *Aqua Infernalis*, and use it in the same manner as the two preceding Liquors, only not so often. The manner of making this Water here follows.

*Aqua Infernalis.*

Take *Verdigrease*, *Spanish Flies*, each 1 Ounce; *Venetian Cerufs*, 2 Ounces: Powder the whole, and put it to a Bottle of Brandy and a Pint of Vinegar. Boil this in a Pipkin, over a gentle Fire, till it is half wasted, and then use it on Occasion.

CHAP. LXVI.

*Incastellated, or narrow Heels.*

MANY Persons make no Difference between incastellated Heels, and Heels that are closed up. The latter may happen to the best of Horses, and is often occasioned by the Fault of a Farrier, who knows how neither to pare nor to govern a Horse's Foot: For a Horse that has the finest Feet in the World may have his Heels closed up in four or five Times shoeing, when the Farrier, by an injudicious Application of the Shoe, takes away all the Force of that Part. We will treat therefore in the first Place of these close Heels, and then of those that are incastellated; they being quite different the one from the other.

When a Horse has his Heels closed, you must begin the Cure by softening his Horn all over, every Day, with Foot-Ointment. Put a Bandage about it, which you may make with three or four Lifts of Cloth sewed together, in order to render them as broad as the Hoof. You must likewise put to it Cow-Dung, Night and Morning, and continue both for eight Days. Then let the Horse be unshod, and his Feet well pared, without dividing the Frushes from the Heel; which is a great Error, though most Farriers usually practise it, in hopes, by that Means, to enlarge the Heel; because most Authors, who have treated of this Disorder, have spoke of Opening the Heels, without telling how it ought to be done. Having proceeded thus far, before you put on the Shoe, let three Lines be made on each Side of the Foot, with a proper Instrument, from the Crown down to the Bottom of the Hoof, at the Distance of about a Finger's Thickness from one another. Cut them almost to the Quick, and then put on a Shoe made in the following Manner.

It must be very thick within, and very thin without; I mean, in the Branches; that so if the Heels bear upon the Shoe, the Horn may slide under the Branch without, in proportion as it grows. As soon as the Lines are made, apply to them all some of your Foot-Ointment, and rub with it all round the Hoof. Continue to proceed thus for two or three Shoeings, allowing about a Month or six Weeks between each; and by these Means you will restore the Feet. Many object against the Length of this Process; but the Horn of a Horse's Foot does not grow so fast as a Man's Beard. If it be a fine Horse, worth the Labour and Expence, you need not grudge the Time allowed to make him as good as before.

CHAP. LXVII.

*Of Incastellated Feet.*

I Must first inform you what is meant by an incastellated Foot, that you may distinguish it from a narrow, or close Heel, before you undertake the Cure.

An Incastellation seldom comes but upon fine Horses, as those of *Spain*, *Italy*, *Portugal*, and *Barbary*; or upon such as are brought up in high Grounds, that are dry and mountainous. Such Horses are liable to have their Feet very hollow, with small and narrow Frogs; which, though it be a good Quality in a Horse, may, like other Things, extend to Excess. It also happens sometimes through the Fault of Farriers, when they hollow the Foot too much, and divide the Frog from the Heel; which by Degrees, and in Course



of Time, occasions the Frog to become so narrow, and the two Quarters of the Heel to join so close, that it is difficult to see their Separation behind; so that, instead of two Heels, there appears to be as it were but one. This is what we call incastellated Heels. You may often see them in the riding Academies, and among managed Horses, who are kept long without shoeing. It frequently happens, that the Riding-Masters do not perceive it; perhaps through Ignorance, or because they think themselves above such Matters, which they look on as the Farrier's Business. They trouble themselves about nothing but teaching to ride; and when they have shewn you how to manage a Horse in all his Airs, they persuade themselves they are great Men in their way. But when such Men are left to themselves, and have the Charge of conducting any grand Equipage, it makes them mad to be obliged to own they know nothing of the Matter.

CHAP.  
LXVII.

To proceed to the Cure of an incastellated Horse. You must begin by preparing his Feet, in order to make them tender, just as you do in the foregoing Case of closed Heels. Then have a Shoe made in three Parts, something like one that is adapted to all Feet, which we carry with us upon a Journey, or in time of War, where there is a large Equipage to conduct; but with this Exception, that whereas the Shoe for all Feet opens and shuts only in the Middle, this does so in two Places. The Toe makes one of the three Pieces, and the two Branches the others. The Piece before must be punched quadrangularly, in order to receive four Nails in Form of a Square; and every Branch must have two Holes, for two Nails; which makes eight in the whole. The Figure of this Shoe is in one of the Plates annexed; and the Design of it is to open the Heel every Dressing, after you have unfoled the Horse.

You must observe here, that the Frog should be slit quite down between the two Heels, and to the Hair; and this Slit should be very deep. Then take a little Tow, and roll or twist it between your Fingers to the Length of the Slit: Dip it in Spirit of Turpentine, and put it to the very Bottom of the Cavity. Afterwards roll up two Parcels of Tow more, but larger than the former; dip them in Turpentine, made as hot as the Horse can bear it, and fill up the whole Cleft and the Foot, binding them on with thin Pieces of Iron, rather than Wood. Observe that you must not do this till after the Horse is shod, and the Inside of his Foot has been well washed with Brandy. This being done, put a small Iron Pin, or Key, between the two Branches of the Shoe, where there should be Indentions to receive the Ends of it, and make it keep in. Leave on this first Dressing, if it be Winter, three Days; if Summer, only two; and proceed so with all the following. Every time that you dress the Horse, have ready a Key a little longer, in order to open the Heels farther; which will be easily done, provided the Horn be tender.

I have one Thing more to observe, which is, that though you do not take off the Dressing for three Days, you must apply a good Restrictive as soon as the Horse is unfoled, and change it every Day, for three or four Days running.

When you take off the Rolls of Tow, to put on fresh, you may use the old ones to wrap about the Heels and the Hoof, especially towards the Crown; continuing this Course till the Sole is found and beautiful. At the End of fifteen or twenty Days proceed to the other Foot; for this Accident is always common to both the Fore-feet, but never to the hind.

*Another Remedy for an incastellated Horse.*

The Design of this is for those Horses which are not altogether incastellated. However, such as are not firm on their Feet must be prepared for the Operation. For this Purpose, you should soften their Feet with the following Ointment.

Take *Elder Bark, Pitch, Sweet Oil, Yellow Wax, Mutton Suet, Turpentine*, each 2 Ounces: Melt all together, and strain it through coarse Linen. Fill with this the Inside of the Horse's Foot, and anoint the Hoof all round. Repeat it for some Days, and let the Ointment be always very hot. When the Feet are well suppled, you must pare the Inside of them as much as possible, and almost to the Quick. Then open the Frog as far as you can between the Heels, and quite to the Hair. Dress the Wound with Essence of Turpentine, and afterwards put on the Shoe described in the preceding Article, and use the same Keys.



## C H A P. LXVIII.

*A Numbness or Stunning of the Hoof.*C H A P.  
LXVIII,  
LXIX.

**I**T often happens that a Horse hurts himself against some Stone, or other hard Thing, and numbs his Foot so as to make him lame: This is the Case I here speak of. To know it, you must handle the Feet, and when you find one of them hotter than the other, you may conclude that in that lies the Pain which makes the Horse limp. Have Recourse then to the following Remedies; first causing the Foot to be well pared, namely, a Composition to put in the Hollow of it, and a Sort of Pultice, to bind round the Crown.

The Composition for the Inside of the Foot is made with Lees of Wine, putting into it the Flour of Linseed, Hog's Lard, Honey and Turpentine, about the same Quantity of each, and boiling all together till it is reduced to a Pap, which apply very hot. This is a good Preparation on almost every Occasion, and fortifies bad Feet.

*A Remedy to put round the Foot of a Horse, and which may serve also for the Reins of a Horse that is hurt in them.*

Take Old Hog's Lard, Common Honey, Rosin, Common Turpentine, each four Pounds; Sweet Oil, and Lees of Wine, each one Pint; Pitch and Linseeds powdered, each one Pound: Reduce what is dry to a Powder, and boil the Whole together to a Sort of a Pap, which apply warm all round the Hoof. Dress your Horse once a Day till his Lameness is gone, which will not be long.

*How to make the Horns on the Foot become good.*

Take Sweet Oil, Yellow Wax, Mutton Suet, Turpentine, each four Ounces: Melt the whole together, and when you take it off the Fire, keep stirring till it is cold, and of an unctuous Consistence. With this anoint the Horse's Feet every Day, keeping them always moist, especially towards the Crown, that what grows may be good and firm. You must not expect those that are brittle and spongy to become good all at once; but in Course of Time, by Virtue of this Ointment, you will find them so.

*Another Ointment to make the Feet good.*

Let your Horse be shod, as near as you can possibly, when the Moon is in the Middle of her Increase, and then anoint his Feet with the following Ointment.

Take fresh Butter, Mastick, Gum Galbanum, Pitch, Rosin, Gum Elemi, each two Ounces; soak them twenty-four Hours in a Quart of Vinegar; and add Yellow Wax two Ounces; Sweet Oil, Turpentine, Mutton Suet, Honey, each four Ounces; Ointment Agrippa, and the Soldiers Ointment, or Unguentum Martiatum, each one Ounce. The two last may be omitted if not easily to be had at the Apothecary's. Put all together in a Pipkin, over a moderate Fire without Flame, and boil it till all the Vinegar is evaporated: Then pour it in another Vessel, and stir it till it is almost cold. Use this as the preceding.

## C H A P. LXIX.

*For a Horse that is tender-soled.*

**S**OME Horses seem to have very beautiful well made Feet, and yet are very tender in the Sole. They cannot walk on stony or hard Ground, because every little Matter hurts their Feet, and lames them. The Cause of this is often looked for in the wrong Place: To know where it is therefore, you need only clap the Palm of your Hand upon the Horse's Sole, which will itself shew you, by it's extraordinary Heat, where the Pain lies. For this Heat will be much greater in the fore Feet, where the Disorder is, than in the hind. Sometimes in walking over stony Ground, a small Flint gets into the Hollow, and is held by the Branches of the Shoe, so as to bruise the Sole much. The following Remedy will serve in both these Cases. Take Onions, and pound them well; add Hog-Dung, Vinegar, Common Salt, and Oil of Olives, the same Quantity of each as of Onions; stew the whole together a full Quarter of an Hour, and let it just boil up: Then apply it upon the Sole, as hot as the Horse can bear it. You may dress him in this Manner every twenty-four Hours, four or five Days running; and this will harden the Sole, and take away his Lameness.

For



*For a Horse that has fat and soft Feet.*

A Horse is liable by this Means to become lame, when he is obliged to work upon any Pavement, or stony Ground. When this happens, you must begin by unshoeing him, and paring the Inside of his Feet almost to the Quick. When he is shod again, apply the following Remedy; which you must bind on with Tow and Splinters, and renew it every twenty-four Hours. Take two Pounds of the oldest and fattest Bacon, chop and pound it well; then melt it in a Pipkin, or Stewpan, and strain it through a coarse Cloth: As it comes through, let it run into about a Pint of Brandy, which you have ready for that Purpose in another Vessel: Beat the Whole well together, and apply some of it to the Horse's Feet three or four Days running. This will bring them into good Order, and harden the Soles.

*A brittle Hoof.*

There are so many Infirmities that make a Horse lame, that few People take the Pains to know what they all proceed from. I have one yet to speak of, which is the brittle Hoof. Though the Foot may appear beautiful, and well shaped, and the Horn good and smooth, a Horse may be of little Value on Account of this Defect. It is difficult to be known, at least without seeing a Horse shod: But then the Farrier is obliged to use very thin Nails, or else the Hoof will fly as he drives them. The Shoes also must here be very light; for if you put heavy Shoes on such a Horse, and work him in Mud, or fat heavy Land, or in Roads that are a little frozen, he will be apt to leave his Shoes behind him, and so much of the Hoofs as held them. When your Dealers have such a Horse, they keep him a long time in the Stable, in order to let the Horn grow afresh, and then shoe him with light Shoes, or Shoes almost worn out, and Nails that are very small in the Shank. This Defect, great as it is, may however be remedied in some Measure, if you only keep the Horn well greased with Foot-Ointment, and do not run into the Error of many Coachmen, Farriers and Grooms, in *Holland* especially, who make use of Train, that is Whale, Oil, and Chimney-Soot, or the Ashes of burnt Straw, to render the Hoofs black and shining. If they were to do this to the hind Feet only, the Evil would be but half as bad; because this Accident never happens but to the fore Feet: But if these People are obstinately set upon having their Horses Feet all black, let them mix their Soot in the Foot-Ointment, which will be never the worse, nor less nourishing to the Horn. I own, that if they use it often, this Ointment will come dearer than the Train Oil, because the Brush will suck up a great deal of it: And on the other Side, if our delicate Coachmen and Grooms were obliged to rub the Hoof with their Hands, it would undoubtedly injure them much, though it would save the Ointment, because those fine Fingers of theirs were not made to be daubed.

*An Ointment for all Sorts of Feet.*

This Ointment, besides that it keeps well the Feet of Horses that are already so, will in Course of Time, if constantly used, make those that are bad good and sound.

Take *Yellow Wax*, *Black Rosin*, *Burgundy Pitch*, *Turpentine*, *Honey*, *Hog's Lard*, *Mutton Suet*, *Sweet Oil*, each half a Pound: Boil the whole together in a large Pot over a Charcoal Fire, where there is no Flame, and take care that nothing boils over of these combustible Ingredients. The whole being well boiled, pour it into earthen Pots, in order to cool for keeping. No Man that keeps Horses should be without this, because a Horse that has bad Feet can be of little Service, till you get them cured.

*Rat's Tails on the Legs.*

This Defect is more common on the hind than on the fore Legs, though the latter are not quite exempt from it. It is thus known: When you see from the hind Part of the Fetlock, up along the Nerves, a kind of Line or Channel, that separates the Hair to both sides, this is a Rat's Tail. In Summer, there appears a kind of small dry Scab along this Channel, and in Winter there issues out a stinking Humidity, like the Water from the Legs. This Defect is not common to delicate Horses, who have scarce any Hair on their Legs, and who have been nourished in dry Pasture, and among Mountains; but it happens often to fat Coach or Dray Horses, that have been brought up in strong, humid, marshy Lands,



CHAP.  
LXX.  
LXXI.  
LXXII.

Lands, and consequently are fuller of Humours than the others. You must use the same Remedies here as to Horses that have the Waters. A Horse may work however, notwithstanding this Disorder; because it seldom lames him, at least unless it be in Winter, when he is obliged to work in Mud, Ice, or Snow. It occasions a Stiffness in the Legs, and makes them trot like Foxes, almost without bending their Joints.

C H A P. LXX.

*Of the Capelet, or Passe-Campagne.*

**T**HIS is a Sort of Tumour which begins at the Hough behind, and descends along the Nerve. It is very hard to the Touch, and consists of a Humour which is soft at first, but hardens with Time, and forms itself into a Callus. While it is yet soft, if you take care to know it, the Cure is easy with only a Quart of Wine, and as much Urine mixed together, and having a Quarter of a Pound of Salt Armoniac melted in them. Apply some of this with a Sponge upon the swelled Part, and bind it on with a Bullock's Bladder, to keep it from evaporating, and a broad Ligature. Repeat this eight or ten subsequent Days, and the Capelet will disappear. But if you wait till it is quite hardened, there is nothing but the Fire can cure it; which must be given in the following Manner.

Make a Line in the Middle, drawing it from the Point of the Hough down the whole Length; then make three more on each Side, as you are directed to do round the Fetlock for Wind-galls. Treat the Horse afterwards in the same Manner as in the Article for that Distemper.

*Another Remedy for the Capelet.*

If the Case be recent, you may take Spirit of *Turpentine*, and *Wine Vinegar*, an equal Quantity of each, and beat them up together. Rub in some of this very hard with your Hand twice every Day, against the Hair, and continue it till the Horse is well. For want of Spirit of *Turpentine*, you may make Use of Brandy and a Bit of Soap, with which rub the disordered Part, three Times a Day, till it is well.

C H A P. LXXI.

*Of the Esperon, or Spur.*

**T**HIS Disorder comes just above the preceding, but seldom makes a Horse limp: It disfigures him, and that is all. Your sprightly, gay, startlish Horses are most subject to it, because it proceeds from their Skittishness with their hind Legs, when they strike the Hough against a Bar, a Pillar, a Wall, or whatever is in their Way, and by the Violence of the Blow bruise the Part, and make it swell, so that it looks like a Bladder full of Wind. If this Hurt be recent, it is easy to cure with only eight or ten Pails of cold Spring Water, bathing the Tumour well and often with a large Sponge. This will soon dissipate it, and may be entirely depended on, simple as it is, provided the Hurt be fresh, and there is no Neglect in making the Application. A more inveterate Spur may be cured with the same Remedies as the Capelet, if you take away every Thing he can hit himself against in his Gambols.

If the Disorder has been of a Year's standing, or more, you must open the Swelling with your Fire-Iron, clasping the Skin fast in your Hand, to keep the Iron from touching the Bone of the Hough. Having pierced it, a red Water will come out. You must then dress the Wound with Tents of Tow, dipped the first time in warm Wine and Sugar melted in it. Afterwards dress it every Day with the Tents in the same Form, dipping them in Tincture of Succotrine Aloes; and continue thus till he is well.

C H A P. LXXII.

*Relaxed, or extended Nerves.*

**I**T is not uncommon for a Horse to relax by a Strain, either when he is at Work, under any Operation of the Farrier, or at any other Time, the Nerve which goes from the Point of the Hough up the hind Part of the Thigh. This Accident often makes him stop short, being no more able to move his Leg, nor to support himself on it, than if the Bone of his Thigh was broken.

*A Remedy.*



*A Remedy.*

CHAP.  
LXXIII,  
LXXIV.

Take Spirit of Turpentine and Wine Vinegar, the same Quantity of each, and beat them up well together: Dip in this two large Sponges, and apply them along the Nerve: Bind them on with a good thick Wrapper, a Bullock's Bladder, and a broad Swathe over all. Repeat this Dressing eight or ten Days running; and take special Care that the Horse never lies down all that Time, nor indeed for a Fortnight or three Weeks longer: For which Purpose you must tie him with four Reins, two to the Rack and two to the Manger; so that he can neither eat nor drink without moving out of his Place. The eight Days being over, rub the Part on the following Days, to the Number of ten or twelve, with this Composition.

Take Oil of Bays, Ointment of Marshmallows, Ointment of Poplar-Buds, Ointment of Roses, Honey, each a Quarter of a Pound. Let the Whole be well mixed together, and used once a Day, which will completely fortify the Nerve. At a Month's End the Hair will be come again, and then you may work the Horse as before.

CHAP. LXXIII.

*Disorders in the Haunch.*

A Horse is very often lame in the Haunch, but the Difficulty is, to know what that Lameness proceeds from. Almost every one treats a Horse that is lame here, as prick'd, or unhaunched: Yet the Causes of such Lameness are many and various.

First, He may have received a very hard Blow upon either Side of the Croup. When this is the Case, there is no great Danger.

Secondly, He may have been struck upon the Corner of the Haunch, which is over the Bone of the Joint, and yet nothing be displaced. This is more to be feared than the other; but a Horse may be cured of it in a little Time, with good Remedies.

In coming out at a Door, and turning too short, a Horse may strike the Corner of his Haunch, and lame himself.

He may also hit it in the Hip-joint, which is that Joint that appears next to the Flanks, of the same Height as the Shoulder. This Part is very sensible, and a Horse may be lamed here for a long while, though nothing be put out.

Farriers confound all these Accidents with one another, and all Hurts in the Haunch are with them the same: They always ignorantly say, your Horse is unhaunched, or pricked; and have recourse to Remedies that can be of no Effect.

We will treat of the Dislocation of the Haunch after we have gone through the other Cases.

When you have discovered the Hurt to be from one of the above Causes, make the following Composition.

Take Linseeds, beat or bruised in a Mortar; Rosin, Pitch, Turpentine, Sweet Oil, Honey, each 8 Ounces; Lees of Wine, a Quart. Boil the Whole gently together a full Quarter of an Hour, and when you take it off the Fire, stir it till it is of a proper Warmth to be applied to the Part afflicted. Renew the Application twice a Day, and every Time clap over it a Piece of soft Paper, or a Bladder, or a Bit of moistened Parchment, which will give it the better Effect. The same Composition is good for the Reins, for relaxed Nerves, and for tired Legs. If you continue it for ten or twelve Days, you will discover very manifest good Effects: But the Horse must not lie down all the while, when you use this Remedy.

CHAP. LXXIV.

*A false Step.*

WHAT we call a false Step is a Strain that a Horse receives by some violent Wrench, occasioned by his Foot slipping into a Hole, or by travelling on uneven Ground, or in frosty Weather.

If the Hurt is fresh, it will be the more easily cured. The best Way is, immediately upon his receiving the Strain, or as soon as you can come at any running Water, to lead him in, and make him stand there a full Hour; which will prevent any Lameness ensu-

T

ing.



CHAP. LXXV. ing. Repeat this Bathing four or five Times within twenty-four Hours, leaving him as long in the Water each time. This will entirely cure him, without any other Remedy. But if it be an old Hurt, as all the Ligaments of the Joint must have suffered, the Cure may be a long Time in Hand, in spite of the best Remedies. There will appear to be very good Reasons for this, if we consider, that as the Legs of a Horse carry a great Burthen, they must be fatigued; and that moreover he cannot lie down nor rise without much Pain, and many Efforts. It is not the same with a Man, who keeps his Bed, or carries his Arm in a Sling, for a violent Sprain; and therefore, as he gives the Part no fatigue, it is soon well.

*A Remedy for a false Step.*

Take Tar and Rye-Flour, with the same Quantity of Turpentine, and half as much Pig's Fat: Mix the Whole together, and stew them over the Fire to the Consistence of a very thick Pap. When you take it off, add a Gill Glass of Spirit of Turpentine, and stir it well in. Apply this, as hot as the Horse can bear, round his Fetlock, with Tow, a Pig's Bladder, and a good broad Bandage; for any Thing narrow would make the Nerve above swell. Repeat the same Dressing every Day, till you see it has its Effect. The Tow which was used first may serve a long Time, only putting on a little fresh Pultice when you open it. If you do this Night and Morning, instead of once a Day, the Horse will be the sooner cured.

When you perceive that the Horse mends, you may leave off the above Remedy, and only use in its place Marsh-Mallows Roots, boiled and beat to a Pap. There is no Occasion to apply them warm. Towards the End of the Cure you must cleanse the Part with warm Water and Soap, and afterwards take the Horse out, and give him an easy Airing, without forcing him to any Thing, for fear of renewing the Strain. You must ride him to prevent him from leaping, which he might do if led by a Servant. He must not lie down during the whole Cure, nor stir out of his Place before this.

CHAP. LXXV.

*Of the Comb, or Crown-Scab.*

THE Crown-Scab is occasioned by Humours that fall upon a Horse's Feet, round the Crown, and just above the Hoof. It sends out a thick Moisture, like muddy Water, which prevents the Hair of the Crown from falling down equally upon the Hoofs, and makes it divide all round like the Teeth of a Comb. This Disease never happens to Horses bred up in dry and hilly Countries, but to those only who have been used to low and moist Meadow-Grounds. It is very common to Horses who have abundance of Hair upon their Legs. There is no great Difficulty in curing it; but then you must not work the Horse in a large Town, among the Dirt, Rubbish, and Filth that may clog up the Streets. It may even come again another Winter, after it has been once cured, though the Horse has fed ever so drily, provided his Feet have not been kept very clean.

The Remedy is only to cut off the Hair with a Pair of Scissars, as close as you can; and then rub all round the Crown, Night and Morning, with black Soap; and at the End of two Days to wash it with warm Wine: And when the Foot is dry, you must begin again with the black Soap, and repeat it five or six Days running, washing the Part every other Day with hot Wine. Thus you will see the Hair become smooth, and the Crown-Scab disappear.

*Another Remedy for the Crown-Scab.*

Though it has been said that this Disease happens to Horses that have much Hair on their Legs, I do not mean by that, that all Horses who have much Hair there are subject to it. It proceeds also from sudden Chills, and an ill Management of Horses when they work in Mud; and likewise when a Horse is put up in the Stable, without having his Legs, and even his whole Body well rubbed down; for this will cause those Humidities to fall down upon the lower Part of the Legs; and the Filth continuing there, produces small Blisters that break, and throw out a Moisture, which between whiles fetches off the Hair, and running down in Channels, makes the Figure of the Teeth of a Comb, as before described. If the foregoing Remedy does not succeed to your Satisfaction (though it be very good, provided the Horse be kept clean) make use of the following.

Take



Take *Unguentum Pompholigos*, *Unguentum Nutritum*, *Unguentum Neapolitanum*, each one Ounce: The Whole being well mixed together, rub with it the Place where the Combs appear, ten or twelve Days running, having first shaved off the Hair.

CHAP.  
LXXVI.

C H A P. LXXVI.

*Watery Sores on the Legs.*

**T**HIS Defect happens to Horses loaded with Hair on their Legs, and fed in such Countries as the preceding. To distinguish them, observe the lower Part of the Legs, and if you find them swelled, especially those behind, between the Fetlock and the Heel, and that there issues from them a stinking Moisture, conclude this to be the Water in the Legs; which is often the Fore-runner of the two subsequent Diseases, and therefore should never be neglected. To stop the Course of it, begin by taking some black Hellebore Root, and steeping it in Wine Vinegar: Then make an Incision behind in the upper Part of each Thigh, just over the Buttock; you must a little loosen the Skin in these Incisions, that there may be Room to put in the Hellebore, to about the Size of one's Finger, and then give a Stitch at each Cleft, to keep it in. Leave it there till it drops out of itself, in which Time it will draw away abundance of Matter, and by that Means give a Revulsion to the ill Humours that may descend. If the Swelling does not diminish, shave off the Hair all round the Leg, so far as it extends, and as the Moisture appears, in order to apply the following Remedies.

*A Remedy for watery Legs.*

After having shaved off the Hair behind the Fetlock, cut the latter across the Spur, and loosen the Skin from the Flesh on both Sides of the Cleft, that you may gently find a Way to a thin Skin full of Water, in the Shape of a little Bladder, and about as large as the End of one's Finger. Take this away easily, for fear of hurting the Nerves and Ligaments that hold the Joints of the Fetlock. Then foment the Wound with fresh Urine, and wrap it with a Bandage, and Tow dipped in Spirit of Turpentine, keeping it close that no Air may enter. You must leave on this first Dressing thrice twenty-four Hours; and when you take it off, have another ready to clap on in a Moment, without staying to look at the Wound, which you must treat in this Manner till it is quite closed up. This last Operation is very good, and cuts off the Communication of ill Humours that may fall upon the Legs: But if you have no Farrier that knows how to perform it delicately, have Recourse to the following Remedies.

*A Remedy for watery Sores.*

Take *Litharge*, 2 Pounds; *Verdigrase*, *Green Copperas*, *Common Alum*, *White Copperas*, *Gall-Nuts*, each 1 Pound: Reduce the whole to Powder, and steep it twenty-four Hours in a Gallon of Vinegar: Then with a Sponge dipped in this wash lightly, twice every Day, the Parts which the Water ouzes from, continuing to do so till the Horse is well. The Hair must be here cut off.

*Another for the same Distemper.*

Take *Verdigrase*, *Gall-Nuts*, *Green Copperas* and *White Copperas*, all finely powdered, each two Ounces; *Rock Alum*, 1 Ounce; *White-Wine Vinegar*, three Bottles: Pound the Drugs, and then boil the Whole in a large earthen Pot. Use this every Day, Night and Morning, to foment the Horse's Legs till they are well.

*Another Remedy for scabby Legs.*

Take *Æthiops Mineral*, (made with equal Parts of *Sulphur* and *Quicksilver*) 4 Ounces; *Verdigrase*, *Rock Alum*, *Gall-Nuts*, *Pomegranate Bark*, all powdered, each 2 Ounces; *Hog's Lard*, 1 Pound: Mix the Powders with your Lard cold in a Mortar for an Ointment, which apply to the Scabs.

*Another for watery or scabby Legs.*

Take *Rock Alum*, and *White Copperas*, a Pound of each; powder them, and put them into 2 Gallons of Water, which boil to the Consumption of half. You may keep this Water as long as you please, in order to use in the following Manner.

Dip



CHAP. LXXVII. LXXVIII. Dip a small Sponge in it once every Day, and draw it lightly over the Parts that discharge a Humour. If the Graps begin to run, this Water alone is sufficient to cure them. But in order to prevent their returning again, when Winter comes on, you must purge the Horses that have been attacked with them, and keep their Legs very neat and clean, in order to turn back the Humours: For, without very great Care, you may have Warts at last come in the Room of Graps, and then you will have much more Trouble to cure your Horse than before. They are both indeed of the same Kind; with this Difference, that the Graps only grow to the Skin, and are smaller and more numerous; whereas Warts are large, and grow to the Flesh, and sometimes to the Nerves. These last are the worst Sort of all; for some of them sometimes are bigger than Nuts, and are with great Difficulty removed, especially after they have been long growing.

## CHAP. LXXVII.

*A Remedy for Warts.*

IT is needless, I believe, to repeat the Rules for distinguishing of Warts: Our Business at present is to know how to get rid of them. First then, you must rub them every Day with \* *Lapis Infernalis*, and afterwards apply the same Remedies that are prescribed for Graps. Continue the Use of the Stone till they quite disappear; but touch them with it very easily, especially if they grow to the Nerves, which you may readily discover. For want of the *Lapis Infernalis*, apply some of the following Stone pulverised, and put the Remedies over it.

*A Stone to eat off Warts, and dead or proud Flesh.*

Take *Green Copperas*, *Wine Vinegar*, *Urine*, each 1 Pound; put them all into a glazed earthen Pipkin, and set them over a gentle Charcoal Fire till the Humidity is quite evaporated, and the whole becomes dry: Then augment the Fire, till what there remains becomes as hard as a Stone. Take off your Pipkin red-hot, and put it into a Cellar, or some other cool Place, a whole Night. In that Time the Stone will loosen itself from the Pot, and you may use it in Powder, as above directed.

## CHAP. LXXVIII.

*Fleshy Frogs.*

WHAT we call Fleshy Frogs are never found but on the Fore-feet. It is no small Inconvenience, because every Horse that has them must have a large, and consequently a very heavy Foot. Such a Horse fatigues himself more than another, and cannot, for that Reason, do so much Work as one that is well. The Case is known by only taking up a Horse's Feet and looking at them, to see if they spread very much, and if the Frog grows as high as the Shoe. It is this that hinders a Horse from working upon any Pavement, or rough Ground, because the Frog, by growing so high, comes to the Ground or Pavement, and is so bruised as to make the Creature lame. It is usual to shoe such Horses with large Frost-nails; but that is both a troublesome and expensive Method, because they must be new-shod as often as the Nails wear down, or the Lameness returns. They who cannot distinguish fat Frogs from low Heels are often deceived, and have their Horses shod as for the latter Defect. They puzzle themselves about Opening the Heels, and divide them from the Frogs with their Buttress, by which Means they take away the Strength of that Quarter which the Branches of the Shoe ought to bear on, cause the Heels to close up, and make the Horse lame: Whereas they ought not to separate the Frog, but rather to fortify and nourish the Heels with good Foot-Ointment, bound on with Lint. This will make them grow, but not very suddenly; because, as I said before, the Horn of a Horse's Foot is a very hard Substance. It requires at least five or six Months to restore Feet that are spoiled; and consequently, there must be full as much Time for Heels that are naturally weak to become strong.

\* The best and only true *Lapis Infernalis* is made by evaporating the strongest Soap Lees (called Capital Soap Lees) in an earthen Pipkin over a gentle Fire, to the Consistence of a Stone. It is then the strongest and safest Caustick yet known.



C H A P. LXXIX.

*Full, or clogged-up Feet.*

**W**HAT we call a full or clogged-up Foot is a capital Defect, because very difficult to be cured. Nothing can be done for it without great Pains, and what we can do at most is so little, that it is hardly worth while to take them. A Horse in this Condition can do very little Service; not being proper either for the Saddle, or for drawing upon the Stones. He can be useful only at Plough, and that too must be in very light Ground.

The Way of shoeing him is with vaulted Shoes, that he may bear only on the Edge of the Horn; and to keep this good, you must rub it often with Foot-Ointment, from the Crown down to the Bottom: Otherwise the Horn will break, after which there can be no Possibility of fastening a Shoe to it; and indeed the Shoe is then worth more than the Horse.

C H A P. LXXX.

*Circled Feet.*

**C**ircled Feet are very easy to be known. They are when you see little Excrescencies round the Hoof, which enclose the Foot, and appear like so many small Circles. Dealers who have such Horses never fail to rasp round their Hoofs, in order to make them smooth; and to conceal the Rasping, when they are to shew them for Sale, they black the Hoofs all over; for without that one may easily perceive what has been done, and the seeing the Mark of the Rasp is a Proof that any Horse is subject to this Accident. As to the Causes of it, in some it proceeds from the Remains of an old Distemper; in others, from their having been foundered, and the Disease cured without any Care taken of the Feet; whereupon the Circulation of the Blood not being regularly made, especially round the Crown, between the Hair and the Horn, the Part loses it's Nourishment, and contracts or enlarges itself in Proportion as the Horse is worked. If these Circles were only on the Surface, our Jockies Method of rasping them down would even then be good for nothing: But they form themselves also within the Feet as well as without, and consequently press on the sensible Part, and make a Horse limp with ever so little Labour. One may compare a Horse in this Condition to a Man that has Corns on his Feet, and yet is obliged to walk a long Way in Shoes that are too tight and stubborn. A Horse therefore is worth a great deal less on this Account; notwithstanding that one may in Time, by continued daily Application of the Foot-Ointment, bring him a little to himself: But this must be a Work of Time indeed, because his Feet must be quite changed before they can be good; which, with all the Care you can take, they will hardly be in less than ten or twelve Months. You may work him however easily in the mean while, observing always, when you put him up, to cleanse the Inside of his Feet well, and fill them with Cow-Dung fried with Pig's Fat and a little Vinegar: And even if he does not go out of the Stable, never fail to do this twice or thrice every Week, till the Circles on the Feet are gone.

C H A P. LXXXI.

*Battered Soles.*

**A** Battered Sole is when a Horse that has pretty flat Feet loses a Shoe, and travels for some Time without it; or when he gets a Stone in his Foot, which is kept in by the Shoe, and walks upon it till it bruises the Part. If this Stone continues there long, and you are obliged to pull it out, you are certain what made your Horse lame: But when it drops out of itself, some ignorant Persons look for the Cause of their Horse's Lameness, when that Cause no longer exists. The best Way therefore, is to get him instantly unshod, and have his Feet pared: After that examine them well, by striking gently with a Farrier's Hammer all round, to see if he has been any where pricked in Shoeing. If you do not find any Thing thus, take up the Foot again, and press it all round gradually with Pincers, observing if he no where winces, and catches away his Foot. Even this may not be sufficient to find the Cause of his Malady: You must next take the Hammer therefore, and strike him on the Sole, and if he shews then any Signs of Pain, you may

U

know

CHAP.  
LXXIX,  
LXXX,  
LXXXI.



CHAP. LXXXII. know what the Grievance proceeds from. In order to remedy it, you must apply some healing Composition; or fill the Foot Night and Morning with Cow-Dung, fried with Hog's Lard and a little Vinegar. This, with Rest and Time, will certainly cure it.

## C H A P. LXXXII.

*The Bone-Spavin.*

WHEN the Bone-Spavin happens to a Horse in one Leg only, it makes him lame; but when it seizes both, either behind or before, he does not limp at all. His Joints however are not free, and consequently he cannot be sure-footed. The Motion of the Joint between the Hoof and the Fetlock being impeded, it can be of no great Service: And when the Disorder is alike in both Legs, and the Horse is not lame, many People are ignorant how that Joint is formed, and what use it is of in walking. They buy such Horses without knowing them, and are not convinced of their Error till it is too late. You should examine a Horse thoroughly therefore before you buy him, and in particular see if all the Joints of his Fore-Legs move with equal Freedom. Most Horses that have the Bone-Spavin are very apt to start when you go to take up their Legs, and will hardly let you touch them with your Hand. Examine them well therefore with your Eye, and see if between the Fetlock and the Crown the Leg descends even and smooth; for if you see any Protuberance between the Flesh and the Skin, that looks like a Sort of Knot or Kernel, you have found the Defect. If the Tumour be yet soft, it will be the more easily cured; but in time it grows very hard and callous, and consequently very obstinate. A Man that has cured twenty of these in his Life-time, cannot fairly promise for the twenty-first; for the Leg perhaps may be never the better, after all the good Treatment in the World. But if you have the good Fortune to take it in Hand at first, before the Swelling is grown hard, you must shave off the Hair upon it, and apply, once every Day, some of the strong Ointment, which you will find in the Article of Blows on the Nerve. Continue this for about a Fortnight; after which, apply Marshmallows Root, well boiled and pounded, and continue it also, once a Day, for a Fortnight or three Weeks longer, fastening it on with a Bandage. One must not expect, however, that this Method will cure an old Bone-Spavin; for that you must unsole your Horse, as the Farriers know how; and the Sole being raised, bleed him in the Foot, and then dress the Sole with Turpentine a little warm, and bind it fast down with Tow and Splinters. The Foot being dressed, give him the Goose-foot Fire; that is, draw a Line upon the Middle of the Joint, from before the Fetlock to the Fore-part of the Crown; and then draw three others on each Side, encircling the Joint with them all round as they descend. The Fire should be given more fiercely here than for Windgalls: But the first Line should not be so strong as the others, because it serves only for a Guide to make the others by. When you have given the Fire according to Art, in the Manner here set down, you have room to hope the Disorder will go away, and the Horse become pretty free in the Joints: But you ought not to expect as much Service from him as if he had never had any Defect: He may be fit for short Excursions, by way of Pleasure, but not for any long Journey.

## C H A P. LXXXIII.

*Spavins, or Blood-Spavins.*

SPAVINS may come upon all Sorts of Horses; but some are more subject to them than others, according to their Natures and Habits. As there are three Sorts of Spavins therefore, I shall shew what kind of Horses are most liable to each particular Species. Dry Spavins happen most frequently upon slender delicate Horses, such as those of *Spain, Italy, Portugal, Barbary, and Arabia*; or upon those that are used to run in dry mountainous Grounds. They may come also by Descent; for if a Stone Horse has the Spavin, out of twenty Mares he shall cover, nineteen will have Spavin-Foals. One ought to be very cautious, therefore, what Horse we make use of to breed from.

Though the dry Spavin be a capital Defect, yet when a Horse has it equally on both Sides, and is put to the Manage, provided he falls into the Hands of a good Master, and who has the Patience to put him well on the Haunches, this Horse will be more sprightly than any other, and more agreeable to the Sight, as both his Hams will beat exactly alike.



alike. But, whatever good Air he may have, it is impossible he should be fit for the Field, and that for many Reasons. First, such a Horse never goes so swift, and yet gallops much harder than any others; so that an ancient Man, or one of a weak Constitution, cannot long bear the Fatigue he must give him in his Loins. Even in Pacing, or Trotting, he lifts up his hind Legs so high, and brings them down so hastily, and then catches them up again, as if he trod on Thorns, that there is no bearing it. When a Horse has the Spavin but on one Leg, it is a very disagreeable thing. You cannot take too much Care therefore, as I said before, of the Houghs of delicate Horses; and when a Swelling ever so small appears upon the Flat of the lower Part of the Hough within side, though the Horse may not limp, you ought to be apprehensive that in time, and with a little Labour, the Spavin will increase on him.

The second Kind is called the fat Spavin, which comes almost in the same Place as the other, but is larger. It is most incident to Horses that have been bred in fat marshy Lands: And this kind, soon or late, lames a Horse, if regard be not had to him at the beginning. When it happens to two opposite Legs, the Horse does not limp any more than in the former; but then he is good for little, and the Effects of this Spavin are different from that of the other: For whereas in that the Horse lifts his Feet very high, and bends his Houghs with Violence; in this, on the contrary, he bends his Houghs with Pain, and consequently is very unfit for the Manage, as well as for the Field.

If a Horse has this Spavin but in one Leg, and works ever so little, he will certainly limp; and those who are unacquainted with Spavins, look for the Cause of it in his Feet or Haunches: But, that no Man may be deceived, the Seat of each of the three Kinds is marked in the Plates.

The third Kind is called the Ox Spavin, and is the worst of them all three. It will admit however of a Cure, as well as the others.

*A Remedy for Spavins.*

Take five or six Bits of House-Tile, rub them round, to about the Size of a Crown-Piece, and make them red-hot; then having thrown the Horse, and rubbed the Spavin well with a Stick, made on purpose, or the Handle of a Hammer, take the Tile-Sherds out of the Fire with Pincers; put them into a Linen-cloth that has been dipped in Vinegar, and apply them to the Part, leaving them there some time. When they are a little cool, heat them again, and put them in the same Cloth as before; and thus apply them successively, till the Hair comes off with ever so little pulling, as if the Part had been scalded. All this being done, let the Horse alone till the Eschar falls off the burnt Place: Then rub it with a Pomatum, made of Hog's Lard and Honey, till the Hair comes again.

*Another Remedy for Spavins.*

Though the preceding Remedy has very often succeeded, this which follows is as much to be depended on. It is a strong Unguent, which is fit for all Sorts of hard Swellings and Callosities that we want to get rid of.

*How to make the Strong Ointment.*

Take Euphorbium, Corrosive Sublimate, black Hellebore, Spanish-Flies, and crude Mercury, of each one Ounce; Flowers of Sulphur, two Ounces; Oil of Bays, six Ounces: The Drugs being all pulverized, kill the Mercury in the Flowers of Sulphur, till you can see none of it: Then mix the whole in the Oil of Bays, and make an Ointment, with which anoint the Spavin, or any other hard Protuberance, that you have a mind to dissipate. (You may save the trouble of mixing the Mercury and Sulphur, by buying three Ounces of Æthiops Mineral). Use it once a Day, the Hair being first shaved off, for three Days successively. In that time an Eschar will fall off; and then you may dress the Part with the same Pomatum as is prescribed in the preceding Article.

*Another Remedy for Spavins.*

I could insert many Remedies for Spavins, which would be successful: But the best way of all is, to give the Fire, when you can get a Farrier that understands his Business. In order to this, he must throw the Horse, and then rub the Humour with his Stick, or Hammer-handle:



CHAP.  
LXXXIV.  
LXXXV.

mer-handle: Then let him draw a Line with the hot Iron or Fire-Knife described in the Plate. He must take his Stroke downwards, through the Middle of the Spavin; and then make three more Lines on each side. But the Operator should have a light Hand, and not cut quite through the Skin, though he draws the Knife several times over each Line. He must never let the Knife pass upwards, against the Hair, but always downwards. After the seven Lines, make four Holes with your Fire-Iron, and put in each a Pellet of black Pitch, which you must melt with your Iron. You will see the Manner of doing all this in one of the Plates. After having given the Fire, put Ink upon all the Lines, and continue this Application for ten successive Days. Afterwards make use of the Ointment for Burns, that has been already prescribed, and continue it till the Skin is quite united. Every Horse that has had the Fire given him, for Spavins, Swellings in the Hough, or Windgalls, ought to be kept three or four Months without Work; and if possible to avoid it, never perform this Operation in Summer, especially when the Flies are plenty. Neither must you do it at the very time that the Horse limps, because then he will never be cured. Let him rest a Fortnight, or three Weeks. The best Way is to give the Fire as soon as you perceive the Spavin, without waiting till the Horse is lame.

Those who are no Judges of Spavins, often deceive themselves; for as soon as the Horse has rested a little, his Lameness is over, which was owing only to his Work. There is yet another Sort of Spavin, below the Hough, and on the Outside; whereas the true Spavins come within. The same Remedies are equally good for the Jardon, which is a calous Tumour near the same Part.

## C H A P. LXXXIV.

*Varices.*

**T**HESE are Swellings that come within the Hough, very near the Seat of the Sallenders, in a certain Void that may be seen in that Place, where there passes a large Vein, which descends from the Flat of the Thigh to the Bottom of the Leg. Varices proceed from the violent Extension of this Vein, which forms a Sort of Knot, about as big as a Filbert; and which by degrees grows as large as a Tennis-Ball. It moves when you touch it, and seems not to be fixed; so that one might take it for a Bowl between the Flesh and the Skin.

To cure this, you must cut the Vein above and below the Hough. Preparatory to this, you must make a Ligature at top and at bottom, to keep back the Blood: Then make the Incision between the Ligatures, and afterwards disengage the Tumour from the Flesh. If a Farrier dares not undertake this Operation, though very easy, and without Danger, let him take a hot Iron, pointed at the End, and pierce the Middle of the Swelling, taking Care not to touch any Part of the Joint of the Hough. At the Bottom of the Orifice, let him put some little Pieces of Corrosive Sublimate, and fill it up with Sulphur or Pitch: Then, with the Point of the burning Iron, let him melt these Ingredients, that the Sublimate may produce its Effect, and corrupt this superfluous Flesh, which will consequently die away. You may then dress it like any common Wound.

## C H A P. LXXXV.

*A Vessigon.*

**T**HERE are two Sorts of these: The first is called a simple Vessigon; the second, a windy Vessigon, which is the most dangerous. It is a small Skin, which is found in the Middle of the Flat of the Hough, and which, being now swelled, forms a Bag of red Humour, that in time makes a Horse lame. All Horses have this Skin, but they are not all subject to have it filled in this Manner. The sooner you take the Cure of a Vessigon in Hand, the better.

The simple Vessigon appears without the Ham, and the other within. If you squeeze it with the Hand on one Side, it rebounds to the other. This Disorder, when recent, is easy to cure; but if you let it get ever so little head, it becomes a difficult Case.

In some Horses, it is the Effect of too much Fatigue; in others, of a violent Strain. The latter Sort, how large soever it may be, is most easy to cure. As soon as you perceive it, take about a Quart of Wine Vinegar, and the same Quantity of Urine; mix them together, and



and dissolve in them a Quarter of Sal Armoniac, cold. With a Sponge dipped in this Composition wash both Sides of the Hough seven or eight times a Day, and continue to do so for about a Fortnight, in which time the Swelling will usually go away. That this Remedy may be the more efficacious, it is proper to have two Sponges, and dip them in the same Composition, applying one on each Side, and putting over them a Pig's or other Bladder, with a good Comprels of Linen Cloth all round the Hough, sewed on close, that nothing may come out. Bind down the Whole with Lint, but not too tight; for Farriers often make their Bandages so tight, as to swell the Nerves, and lame the Horse; and then they lay the blame of their ill Success on the Medicines, without reflecting that they themselves are the Cause of it. If the Remedy does not succeed, it is a Sign the Case is of longer standing than was imagined: And when that appears use the following.

Take about two Quarts of Spirit of Wine, in which dissolve half a Pound of Camphire, and use it in the same manner as the former, and about the same time. If neither of these has any Effect, which would be something extraordinary, you must absolutely give the Fire on both Sides the Hough, in the same manner described in one of the Plates, under the Name of Fern-Fire.

If a Man expects to succeed in this, and to get Reputation by what he does, he must never give the Fire, either for the Vessigon, the Spavin, the Curve, or the Windgall at any time but about Autumn, when the Flies disappear; and let the Horse be kept all the Winter in the Stable, without going ever abroad. Even in the next Spring you must take him out only in the Morning early, to walk him through the dewy Grass, or green Corn. Having done this for some Months, you may be assured that no Accident will ever happen in the Place where the Fire was given.

I remember to have seen my deceased Father, as I elsewhere took notice, perform this Operation by way of Precaution to Horses for *Lewis XIV's* own riding; and have practised it a long while my self with Success, without any Accident, even to Horses whose Legs seemed quite ruined; and they have done nine or ten Years Service afterwards. For a Mare, or a Gelding, instead of keeping them in the Stable, during the Spring, the shortest Way is to put them to Grass; but a Stone-Horse, if he be not kept in the Stable, must be in a Close by himself, and walked in the Morning as before directed. It is trifling to object the great Expence of keeping so long: For if the Creature becomes useful afterwards, that Expence will not be regretted. The grand Point is, to have the Fire well given: I have never known six Persons able to do it to Perfection, though every Country Farrier thinks himself so. A Farrier, I insist on it, cannot have a light Hand, and consequently cannot use his Tools with Delicacy. If he makes his Knives too hot, he cuts the Skin quite through; if not hot enough, he tears it. He must have seven or eight of them, to change as they cool, and not heat them in the Forge, but in a Charcoal Fire. It signifies nothing to tie a Horse for this Operation. You must absolutely throw him down, as if you were going to geld him. After having given the Fire, there must be Ink put on every Line for nine successive Days, in which time the Eschar will fall off. You must mollify the Wound with Ointment of Marsh-Mallows, or Ointment of Roses, every Day, till the Skins reunite. This may take up five or six Weeks.

The Method of giving the Fire comes from the *Arabians*, who do it in almost all Cases; and a hundred Years ago it was quite unknown to us. They give it with Golden Knives, and formerly in *France* it was done with Silver. I have used these myself; but lately, Experience has convinced me that Steel Knives are as good.

## C H A P. LXXXVI.

*The Curb.*

**T**HIS Accident may happen in different Manners; as from the Vessigon, of which we have treated. A Horse often receives a Strain in Working, or by flipping his Foot in a Hole, or in marshy Ground, out of which he pulls it with Pain, and by that Means wrenches his Hough, without dislocating any thing: Yet the Creature may be lamed, without speedy Care. The Ligaments of the Hough being stretched, cause a great Inflammation within; the Hough swells from the Middle, the Seat of the Vessigon, to the Bottom, where Spavins and Varices appear; and if it be not speedily cured, it becomes incurable; at least without giving the Fire, which is the only Remedy; and that



CHAP.  
LXXXVII.

too may fail in a very inveterate Case: But at the Beginning, you need only use the same Remedies, that are proper for Vessigons, which having in part dissipated the Tumour, make it more easy to bar the Vein, both above and below the Hough.

In order to bar a Vein, you must throw the Horse: Then look for the Vein that proceeds from the Thigh along the Leg and the Joint of the Hough, within side: Make an Incision in it with a Bistoury or Penknife; but first, with a light Hand, open the Skin, and with a wild Goat's Horn, or some other like Thing, disengage it from the Skin and the Flesh, between which it runs. When you have got the Horn under it, take a Piece of waxed Silk, or fine Cobler's End, and bind the Vein tight, that it may not bleed too much. Afterwards make another Opening above the Hough, and do the same as below: Then cut the Vein in two between these Ligatures, and with a Bit of cleft Stick, about three or four Inches long, take fast hold of the End of it, and by turning the Stick gradually you will pull it out. Supposing it be a young Horse, there is no great damage if the Vein breaks, because of the Ligatures above and below. It is needless to use any other Medicine in dressing the Wounds than Salt Butter, applied Night and Morning. Let there be at least an Ounce of Salt, powdered very fine, to a Quarter of Butter; and this will do more good than all the Ointments you can get.

If by chance an End of the Vein remains, or any Impurity enters the Wound, that may cause an Inflammation, you must use Ointment of Marsh-Mallows, or a Bath made of the Roots of that Herb, twice every Day. For want of both, Lees of Wine and Hog's Lard may serve the turn. Put about half a Pound of Lard to two Quarts of the Lees, and boil them well together, stirring afterwards till it is cold. With this rub the Swelling twice every Day. If the Curb be new, it will certainly be soon cured.

Most Farriers perform this Operation for the Spavin; but Experience shows their Ignorance in so doing, because the Spavin has nothing to do with this Vein. It may be useful however for Varices. There are others who perform the same Operation for watery Sores, or Humours which fall down the Legs. I own my self to have fallen into this Error, which I have now abandoned, since I have acquired a perfect Knowledge of the several Parts of a Horse.

It is true that in barring a Vein for the Waters, some open it before it is bound, and draw out a great deal of Blood; after that they tie it above and below the Orifice, and cut it below the two Ligatures. This will relieve the Horse for some time; but as the Arteries carry the Blood down, and it cannot ascend again as usual, it produces a greater abundance of Humours than before. For this Reason I by no Means approve of their Manner of Operation.

#### CHAP. LXXXVII.

##### *General Remedies.*

**A**FTER having taught the Knowledge of many Diseases and Accidents, it is proper I should insert some necessary general Remedies, according to the Nature of each Disorder, and the Convenience of those who have the Care of a great Number of Horses. For Example, a Horse that eats and drinks well, and yet does not thrive, or one who by any Means is hindered from eating and drinking as usual, should have the following Remedy given him.

##### *A Purge.*

Every one ought to know that the most gentle Purge is sometimes dangerous, and kills a Horse, if he be not prepared for taking it some Days before. Many ignorant Persons, when they see a Horse's Dung in small Balls, black and dry, and seeming even to be mixed with Blood, are of Opinion that he is burnt up within, and therefore ought to be purged. Because they may have purged two or three such without Preparation, and by chance succeeded, they imagine they must still go on in the same Track; and when there happens any Accident to a Horse, or they kill him by their Medicines, they insist on the Justness of what they have done, and attribute the Misfortune to some other Cause.

When a Horse is heated, and the Balls of his Dung are close and hard, you must debar him of Oats, and only give him, for two or three Days running, Bran and warm Water. If he can bear Honey, you may put a little of that with the Mash. The Evening before you purge him, administer to him a laxative Glisten, for which you will find a Receipt in this



this Book. The next Morning, after he has fasted five or six Hours, give him the following Pills, and let him fast as long after he has taken them. You may repeat all this again in two or three Days, for it will never do any harm.

CHAP.  
LXXXVII.

*Purging Pills.*

Take *Succotrine Aloes*, in Powder; the coarse Sort of *Manna*, and *Honey*, of each two Ounces; *Salt Prunel*, powdered, half an Ounce. If the Horse be strong, half an Ounce more of *Manna* may be added. Mix the Whole together, and make it up into Pills of the Size of a Chesnut, which roll in Liquorice Powder, and let him swallow them one after another. Give him a small Glas of Wine after each, and when he has taken them all, leave him to himself. If you purge him for any Giddiness of the Head, or Defluxion in the Eyes, add half an Ounce or an Ounce of powdered *Agarick*, in Proportion to the Horse's Strength. The next Day, at the same Hour that you give him the Pills, if they do not yet work, take him out of the Stable, and walk or trot him till the Medicine begins to take effect: Then put him up again, and cover him warm. You must offer him nothing but warm Water, with Bran and Honey if he will take it. Let him have a good Mash of this five or six Hours after the Purge begins to operate.

*Another Way of purging a Horse.*

As all Purges are not alike, you must know the Distemper of a Horse before you purge him. There are some Purges to cleanse the Intestines; others for Pains of the Head, and others to purify the Mass of Blood; whether in the Farcy, the Itch, the Reds, or any other Foulness. Having had the Precaution to prepare your Horse, as before directed, and even blooded him, if there appear to be need of it, a Day or two before, let him take the following.

Take 6 Ounces of *Æthiops Mineral*, (which you may make yourself with 2 Ounces of *Quicksilver*, and 4 Ounces of *Flowers of Sulphur*, rubbing them in a Mortar till the *Quicksilver* is quite killed) half an Ounce of *Salt Prunel* in Powder, and a Quarter of *Fresh Butter*; make this into 8 Pills, roll them in Liquorice Powder, and give them as the preceding. This Purge is very good to cleanse away all Corruption, and kill the Worms in the Body of a Horse: But if his Lungs are ever so little damaged, it will hasten his Death, which is no great Matter, because he is not in a Condition to do any more Service, and so the sooner he goes the better. It is quite otherwise with Mankind, who may be useful on Earth after they are touched with a Consumption, as well for the Management of their Families, as for civil Society.

*How to make Liver of Antimony.*

Take 4 Pounds of common *Salt Petre*, and 5 Pounds of *Antimony*: Beat them separately to a coarse Powder; then mix them, and put them both in a large Iron Mortar, or Pot. A Copper or Brass Vessel is not fit for the Purpose. Set it on fire with a Piece of Charcoal, and get out of the way as soon as you can; for the Wind and Smoke may take away a Man's Senses, and suffocate him. You must let this cool four or five Hours in the open Air, and then turn up the Mortar on a Linen Cloth, to receive all that falls out of itself. The Liver of Antimony will remain at Bottom, and the Dross at Top, on the Side where you set it on fire. You must divide the one from the other, which is very easy; and that being done, the Antimony will appear brown, almost of the Colour of a Bullock's Liver, and shining. Pound it, pass it through a Sieve, and keep it for Use, according to the Prescriptions in several Places of this Book. The Dose of it singly is an Ounce Morning and Evening, mixed with the Horse's Oats, or Bran; and let these be a little wet, that the Antimony may stick to them. The Dose may serve in Glisters, in the room of Salt Prunel. You may make also an Emetic Wine, to be given in the Draughts where such Wine is mentioned as an Ingredient. If you get four Pounds, or four Pounds and a half of Liver of Antimony from the Whole, you are very well off.

*How to make the Crocus Metallorum.*

*Crocus Metallorum* is made in the same Manner as Liver of Antimony. The only Difference is, that in the Crocus the two Ingredients (*Salt Petre* and *Antimony*) are in equal



CHAP. equal Quantities. It is proper for the same Purpose, but the Liver of Antimony is the most  
LXXXVII. salutary. The Dose of the Crocus is half an Ounce Morning and Evening, given as before.

*A Glisten for a Looseness.*

Take a Gallon of *Emetic Wine*, and boil in it twenty or thirty *Acorns*, dried and powdered. When they are well boiled, let this Composition stand till it is of a proper Warmth to be administered: Then add a Quart of *Sweet Oil* to mollify the Bowels. One Glisten of this will not be sufficient; you must repeat it twice a Day for two or three Days running. You may also make a Draught with a Bottle of *Emetic Wine*, and a Dozen of *Acorns* in Powder. Two Days after let him take an Ounce of *Monks Rhubarb*, otherwise called *Raponti*, which will be as effectual as the true Eastern *Rhubarb*.

*Another, for a Horse that has taken a Purge, which has not worked.*

Take Leaves of *Marsh-Mallows* and common *Mallows*, *Pellitory of the Wall* or *Garden Night-Shade*; or, for want of both *Lettuce* or *Succory*, or some of the *Cassia Decoction* sold at the Apothecaries: You may boil any of these Herbs with his Bran, or mix the Decoction with his Bran and Water; and having strained the Whole, add two Ounces of *Double Catholicon*, a Quarter of *Sweet Oil*, and an Ounce of *Salt Prunel*. If this first Glisten does not move the Purge, repeat it five or six Hours after, adding two Ounces more of *Catholicon*.

*Another refreshing Glisten.*

Take Leaves of common *Mallows*, *Marsh-Mallows*, *Pellitory of the Wall*, *Violets*, *Lettuce*, the Herb *Mercury*, of each two Handfuls; *Anise* and *Fennel Seeds* bruised, of each two Ounces; boil the whole together in Water, and then strain and give it the Horse. After he has discharged it, take him out, and trot him till he begins to sweat, and then put him up in the Stable and cover him close, to prevent his catching cold. His Sweat being over, if you are under a Necessity of it, you may ride him ten or twelve Miles the same Day; but stop him a little between whiles, and at every Place give him a Mouthful of Hay: If he eats it, you may conclude him out of Danger. This Glisten is good for the Gripes, if you give a Quart of it at a Time, in the Form of a Draught.

*Another.*

If it be in the Summer, you may make the following. Take Leaves of *Lettuce*, *Purslain*, and *Succory*, (or for want of that, *Piss-a-beds*) *Groundsel*, *Garden Night-Shade*, *Bete*, *Mallows* and *Marsh-Mallows*, of each an equal Quantity; boil them well, and strain the Decoction, and let each Glisten consist of a Gallon. You must dissolve in it two Ounces of *Double Catholicon*, an Ounce of *Salt Prunel*, half a Pound of *Honey*, and add half a Pound of *Sweet Oil*. The Whole being well mixed, if you have not a Syringe large enough, make use of a *Bullock's Bladder*, with a Joint of Reed, or Elder with the Pith out, of about a Foot long. Fill the Bladder with a Funnel; but before you inject the Glisten, run your Hand up the Horse's Fundament, and empty his great Gut, taking care not to scratch him with your Nails, which might prove mortal. If you cannot get the abovementioned Herbs, make a Decoction of *Barley*, or *Rye Flour*, and add to it the other Ingredients.

*How to make the Cordial and Universal Powder.*

This Powder may be kept as long as you please, provided you put it in a Glass Vessel, or a Bladder, and let no Moisture come near it. Every military Farrier, who has the Charge of a Number of Horses, ought to have it always by him, because it is good for almost all Distempers. It is for this Reason that we call it the Universal Powder.

*Prescription.*

Take *Bay Berries*, *Juniper Berries* ripe, the Seeds of *Fennel*, *Anise*, *Fenugreek*, *Skirret*, *Angelica Root*, *Gentian Root*, *Orris Root*, *Sassafras Wood*, *Guaiacum Wood*, *Olibanum*, *Agarick*, *Monks Rhubarb*, dry'd *Seville Orange Peel*, *Lesser Centaury*, Leaves and Flowers of *Wormwood*, *Galangals*, *Long Birthwort Root*, and *Round Birthwort Root*, Leaves of *Sage*, and Leaves of *Rue* dry'd in the Shade, *Ground-Ivy* and *Wild Tansy*, of each a Quarter



Quarter of a Pound: Reduce them all to a Powder separate, and then add Flowers of *Sulphur*, and *Liquorice* Powder, of each half a Pound; mix the whole together, and pass it through a Sieve. You may be certain, if the Mixture be well made, that few Remedies are equal to this Powder. The Dose, for each Time, is from three to four Ounces, according to the Strength of the Horse; and add to every Dose half an Ounce of *Salt Prunel*. This Powder may be given at all Times, either in the Morning or the Afternoon: And if you are obliged to continue a Journey, you need apprehend no bad Consequences from it, because it tends to fortify the Horse.

CHAP.  
LXXXVII.

*Another Medicine to fortify a Horse that is ready to cast, or whose Appetite is palled.*

Take two or three Ounces of good *Venice Treacle*, an Ounce of *Assa foetida*, half an Ounce of *Salt Prunel* in Powder: Dilute the Whole in a Quart of Wine, if it be for a fat Horse; if for a lean one, in a Quart of good old Beer. We have taken Notice, more than once, that a Horse should be kept some Hours entirely fasting, both before and after taking any Remedy. If you give this in the Morning on a Journey, and the Horse is hungry in the Afternoon, you may venture to ride him some Miles further, in Case of Necessity, because the Remedy gives him no Trouble. If you perceive no Change in him at three or four Hours End, repeat the Dose; for a Horse, on account of his prone Posture, is very difficult to purge. He is also hard to vomit, because of the Distance between his Throat and his Stomach; but then a Vomit does not strain, but only sharpens his Appetite. This Remedy is good when you merely suspect any Disorder; and you never run any Hazard in giving it.

*How to dye the Hair of a Horse.*

When you have a white Horse, or a Horse that has any white Spots, and you are willing to conceal it for a long time; Take a Pound of *Lime*, a Pound of *Gold Litharge*, a Quartern of *Castile Soap* cut small; put the Whole into a large Pot, and pour in Rain-Water, by little and little, till the Lime heats and dissolves: Then add more Water, and keep stirring it with a wooden Ladle. When it comes to the Consistence of a clear Pap, apply it with Art upon the Hair, in the Places that you want to blacken. Cover it with Paper, or a Linen Rag, and leave the Horse tied up for some Hours, till it becomes dry. Then wash the Part with Water and Soap; and the more you wash it, the blacker it will appear. This may be done in any Part where Hair grows, except upon the Nose, where the Hair is very thin. You must take Care however that the Composition does not come to the Skin, for it would certainly fetch it off.

*To paint the Eye-brows of an old Horse.*

Take two Ounces of *Aqua Fortis*, dissolve in it half an Ounce of *Leaf-Silver*, and add an Ounce of *Rose Water*: Lay on this Composition delicately with a Pencil on the Eye-brows, and take great Care that none of it gets into the Eyes. If they are not stained the first Time, you must repeat it as often as it dries, till it has the Effect. If the Horse be bay, you must put into the Composition an Ounce of *Umber*; if sorrel, an Ounce of *Litharge* of Gold.

*To make Hair come again that is fallen off, whether through the Itch, or a Wound, in what Part soever it be.*

Take Ointment of *Poplar Buds*, and *Virgin Honey*, an equal Quantity of each; mix them well together, and rub with this, twice every Day, the Places that are bare. Continue this for fifteen or twenty Days, in which Time the Hair will grow again as thick and smooth as if it had never fallen off.

*Another Way.*

Take the Roots of flat *Sedge*, which grow upon the Borders of standing Waters; and having cleansed them well, boil them in Water to a pappy Consistence, and then add as much *Virgin Honey* as you can conveniently mix with it. Put some of this Composition fresh every Day upon the bald Places; and if you continue to do thus for fifteen or twenty Days, you will see the Hair return.



CHAP.  
LXXXVII.

I remember my having used this Preparation upon a young Woman who had scarce any Eye-brows: I had them shaved close twice every Week, and rubbed the Places well; and at the End of six Weeks, she was hardly to be known, so large and beautiful were her Eye-brows grown.

*How to make what we call a Star come on the Forehead of a Horse.*

Take three leaden Pencils, about the Size of a Goose Quill, and three or four Inches long: Then take a pointed Iron Instrument, of the Shape of a Shoemaker's Awl, and somewhat larger than the Pencils. Run your Instrument under the Middle of the Horse's Forehead, between the Flesh and the Skin, bringing the Point out at about five Inches Distance. Put one of the Pencils into this Hole, leaving both Ends out. Make two more such Holes cross the first, in such Manner as to form a Star with six Rays, and introduce the other two Pencils as the first. After this, take a Piece of Woollen Yarn, of the Thickness of one of the Pencils, and carry it under the Ends of the Pencils, turning it round each, and so continuing till you have quite clogged up the said Ends, and made a large Circle of Yarn: Fasten it with a Knot or two, and turn back all the six Points of Lead, so as to keep it tight on. Leave the Whole in this Manner five Days, and then take off the Yarn, and pull out the Pencils; and without any more Trouble, a Sort of Impostume will form under the Skin, that will make the Hair fall off. There will then come a Kind of Crust, which will drop off of itself: After which you must grease the Part with a Mixture of Honey and Lead, in equal Quantities. All the Hair which grows after this will be white, smooth, and even. There are many other Receipts to make the Hair white, but we ought always to imitate Nature the most nearly; which is done in the Manner I have set down.

*How to fill up the hollow Places over a Horse's Eyes.*

Take clean Barley and Vetches bruised, in equal Quantities, and boil them in Rose Water to a pappy Consistence. With this fill the Cavities every Day that come over a Horse's Eyes, and tie it on with a Bandage made on Purpose. Continue the Use of this for three Weeks or a Month, and the Cavities will fill up, as if they had never been.

*Remedies for Figs in a Horse's Feet.*

Pare the Foot well where you discover a Fig, that with your Bistoury you may the more easily cut the Sole round the Place where the Complaint is, till you come to the raw Flesh, which is going to the Root of the Disorder. If you regard only the Top of the Fig, your Cure will be imperfect; for the Fig will spread and extend, and though it appear small on the Outside, it will reach all over the Sole. I do not think, however, that it grows to the Tendon, or the inner Foot. Having thus discovered it all, take two Pounds of Honey, a Pint of Aqua Vitæ, six Ounces of Verdigrease in fine Powder, and sifted through Silk; six Ounces of white Copperas, pounded pretty fine; four Ounces of Litharge, and two Drams of Sublimate, pounded in the same manner, and well sifted. Mix the Whole with Honey in a clean earthen Pot, and let it stand over a very gentle Fire, stirring it often, till it is sufficiently thick. The Ointment being made, spread it upon Pledgets, which apply on the Fig.

If in searching for the Roots, you make the Blood come, which should be avoided as carefully as possible; put, for the first Dressing, a Restricting, made with Turpentin and Chimney-foot: Apply this warm all over the Fig, cover it with Tow, and bind and splinter it down, to stop the Blood: Thus, in two Days time, when you take off the Dressing, you will find all in good Order. Afterwards, put on a Dressing of the Ointment above described, cold, with Pledgets of Tow well banded and splintered on. Let the whole Dressing be so ordered, with hard Rolls of Tow, that the Tents you clap on the Sides may press in the Fig, and prevent it's enlarging. Leave not the least Corner of the Frog, that touches the Fig, without Rolls of Tow, that the Whole may be kept under, and nothing grow beyond Bounds.

Observe that the Tow you make use of be very dry; and that the Pledgets and Tents be made up hard, before you spread the Ointment on them. Take care also that your Horse be in a good Stable, or some other dry Place, because Moisture is so hurtful in this Disease that it may hinder a Cure.

I

Having



Having taken off the second Dressing, which should continue eight and forty Hours, cleanse the Part well with dry Tow, and examine if there are no Fibres or Roots remaining. Then wash your Fig with what the Goldsmiths call second Water, putting over it the Ointment I have here prescribed. Bind and splinter the Place well, as before, upon clean dry Tow, keeping in the Sides with Rolls and Pledgets, that it may not enlarge. A great Part of the Cure of this Disorder, depends upon the good or bad Application of the Dressing.

When you change the Dressings, take off gently, with your Spatula, the small Eschars, or rather Skins, that the Ointment has occasioned, observing to fetch Blood as little as possible. If after the second Application of the Ointment, the Fig is not checked, but breaks out again, mix, with one half of your Composition, three Ounces of good Aqua Fortis, putting them cold together, and letting them ferment. Afterwards use this Ointment as you did the former, and it will certainly stop the Progress of the Fig, if you take care to renew and bind on the Dressing well every twelve Hours. When, upon taking off your Dressing, you perceive the Fig sufficiently deadened, return again to your former Ointment without Aqua Fortis, applying that with it between whiles, as you see Occasion, to eat off the exuberant Flesh, or to dry up the Wound apace. If you do all this with Judgment and Discretion, it cannot fail of Success.

There are often, I say, Places where the Flesh grows too fast: There you must use the Ointment with Aqua Fortis. When you want to dry only, the simple Ointment is usually sufficient: But always support the Dressing well, and splinter it down tight.

When the Fig grows to the Tendon, or the inner Foot, or has Communication with them; when you imagine it healed on one Side, it spreads on the other, and extends sometimes from the Frog to the Quarter, which it is often necessary to cut. When the Quarter is cut, Caustics, or potential Cauteries, in Powder or in Ointment, may serve to destroy the Tendon. You may make use of the same here that were prescribed for the horny Javarts; for without destroying the Tendon, you can never cure the Fig.

If the Fig be pretty large (as there are some as large as a small Pullet's Egg) it is very proper, after having well examined all round, to see if there be no Void under the Sole, where certain Roots of the Fig be concealed; and after having cut and discover'd all you can with your two-edged crooked Incision-Knife; it is very proper, I say, to take a good sharp Buttress, and cut off all the Fig, and all the corrupted and bad Flesh you can see: Let your Horse afterwards bleed pretty well, and then let the Sponges of his Shoe be lengthened, and his Pastern tied with a Cord, in order to stop the Blood. Then cover all that you have cut with fine Salt, and put over it Turpentine, that has been mixed over a Fire with Suet chopped small. You must soak Tow well in this, and so lay it on. If the Blood comes so freely, that you cannot put on the Salt, mix it with the hot Composition, bind the Foot well, and splinter on the Dressing. Put the same Defensive round the Crown, and leave your Horse for three Days without touching him, keeping him always in a very dry Place.

If the Fig is in one of the hind Feet, as it commonly is, you must take great Care to keep the Dung from under it, that no Moisture may come to the Part, because Moisture is very hurtful.

When you take off the Dressing, you must gently cleanse the Whole with dry Tow upon your Spatula: Then put on some of the Ointment with Pledgets, and let the Whole be adjusted and compressed with an Iron Splinter. You will have no more Occasion for any Defensive round the Crown. Two Days after, when you take off the Dressing, you must observe the Colour of the Flesh, and wash it with second Water, as there may be Occasion. If you want to eat off any Flesh, have recourse to your Ointment with Aqua Fortis, and continue the same Dressing for some Days. Upon those Places where the Flesh looks well, put only the simple Ointment.

If the Fig grows to the Tendon, or the inner Foot, the most certain Remedy is to unsole the Horse, and then dress the Fig in the manner prescribed, making use of the Razor when you see Occasion, or eating off the Tendon with Caustics. But wherever you can employ the Razor, let the Caustic alone, because with the former you see best what you do, and may go just as far as you please, without putting the Horse to so much Pain. If there be any Splinter loose from the inner Foot, apply the Searing-Iron to it rather than a Caustic.



CHAP. LXXXVII. If the Horse is of a delicate Constitution, he may lose his Appetite. In that Case fasten in his Mouth one of the Bags to provoke Hunger that have been described in this Book, and give him Glifters with Sal Polychrestum, and for his Food scalded Bran. Continue to proceed thus, and he will recover his Appetite, and not lose it any more.

*Madam FEUILLET's Green Balm.*

This has performed such great Cures upon Mankind, that I thought it worthy of a Place in the present Work. I have not set down here the Prescription for the Stiptick Plaister that is used with this Balm, because the Diapalma, that may be had any where, is as good for it as the said Plaister, and much cheaper. It is not the Plaister, but the Balm, that effects the Cure; the other serves only to keep it on, and prevent the Air from hurting the Wound.

This Balm is very good for all Wounds in Horses, in what Part soever they happen; as also for Pricks in the Foot, and the like. It is thus made.

Take Oils of *Linseed*, *Olives*, and *Juniper Berries*, each 2 Ounces; *Turpentine* of *Chio*, or, for want of that, other fine *Turpentine*, 2 Ounces; Oil of *Bays*, 1 Ounce; Oil of *Gilly-flowers*, one Drachm; *Verdigrease* pounded and finely sifted, three Drachms; *White Copperas*, two Drachms: Put the Whole cold into a Phial, and shake them till they incorporate; continuing so to do from time to time for a Month: After which keep it for Use.

You must wash the Wound with warm Wine the first time that you dress it: Then heat the Balm, and spread it upon Lint, over which put a sticking Plaister to keep it on. If the Wound be deep, you must cover a Tent with this Balm, and put a Plaister over it.

You must use it as an Unguent warm to fresh Wounds, having first cleansed them well with Tow. Sprinkle over it, when thus applied, the Lint of old Cord that has been beat almost to a Powder. And if you continue this every Day, without ever moistening the Wound, it will heal in any Part whatsoever. It is equally good for all Pricks, whether with Nails, Thorns, or Stumps of Trees.

*Gunshot-Water, or a Vulnerary Draught.*

Horses that are wounded with a Fusil, Musket, or Pistol, cannot always be treated with large Incisions; especially in hot Weather, in the Army, where there are not always convenient Places to put them out of the Sun, nor to protect them from Flies.

To find the Bottom of these Wounds, and know their Magnitude, you must search them with a large Iron Probe, which is the only way you can do it. For this purpose, you must place them in the same Posture they were in when they received the Shot. The Wound often appears to be so deep, that you can convey neither Ointment nor Powder to the Bottom of it: For this Reason Liquids have been invented, under the Name of Gunshot-Waters, which are injected into the Wounds several Times a Day, you must introduce a Tent dipped in it to keep the Wound open, and apply a Linen Rag, dipped likewise, over the Mouth of it, in the most convenient manner you can. Give the Horse half a Pint of the same Water every Day in a Draught; and in this manner Wounds may be cured which would otherwise prove mortal. Not but that a great Number thus treated do notwithstanding die; but when a Man has done all in his Power, he bears his Loss with the less Regret, because it was inevitable. If the Horse has a Fever, you must have recourse to Glifters, and not let him swallow any of the Vulnerary Water, because the Simples that compose it are most of them hot, and would tend to increase the internal Fire, and the Agitation of the Humours, which naturally press towards the wounded Part. But we very often see Horses, that have very large Wounds, without any Fever. It is not the same with Men, for whom the Use of Vulnerary Waters is almost abolished, except among the *Swiss*, who have still a very good Opinion of them.

*How to make a Gunshot-Water.*

Take a new Earthen Pot, well glazed, in which put three Quarts of small *White Wine*, with an Ounce and a half of Round *Birchwort* rasped: Put your Pot over a moderate Fire, and let it boil gently, or rather stew, till one Quart of the Wine is diminished. Just before you take it off, put in six Ounces of Sugar in Powder, and when that is dissolved, set it by



by to cool. Use this Water, or rather this Wine, to wash or syringe the Wound thrice a Day; and every Morning, as I said, let the Horse drink half a Pint of it, after you have strained it well.

CHAP.  
LXXXVII.

*Lapis Mirabilis.*

This Stone is as admirable for its good Effects, as it is in its Name. To compose it, take *White Copperas*, two Pounds; *Roch Alum*, three Pounds; *Armenian Bole*, half a Pound; *Litharge* of Gold or Silver, two Ounces: Powder the whole, put it in a glazed Earthen Pot, and pour upon it three Quarts of Water; then let it boil gently over a moderate Fire, without Flame, till the Water is quite evaporated. Let the Fire be equal all round the Pot. You will see a Sediment at Bottom, and when that is entirely dry, take the Pot off the Fire, and let it cool. This Matter ought when cold to be very hard, and it will grow harder and harder the longer you keep it.

The Dose of this Stone is half an Ounce, which you must put into four Ounces of Water. In a Quarter of an Hour it will dissolve; and then, if you shake it in a Phial, the Water will look as white as Milk. Moistten with this the Eyes of a Horse Morning and Evening.

*A Remedy for Sprains.*

Take *Pitch* and *Tar*, such as is used for Ships or Carts, a Pound; *Aqua Vitæ*, a Pint: Boil them together over a Charcoal Fire, lest any Flame should touch them, stirring them often for a Quarter of an Hour: Then add two Ounces of fine *Bole* in Powder, and thicken the Whole with Flower: Put this warm upon Tow, and apply it all round the Fetlock, binding it on. Renew it every two Days; and there is scarce any Sprain that will not be well in three or four Applications, provided you dress the Part first with the Essence of *Turpentine*. The only Inconvenience of this Remedy is, that it tarnishes and reddens white or grey Hair, and the Stain appears for some Time after. However, the Remedy is excellent, and in black Horses has no ill Effect. It is admirable also for Blows, and Swellings in the Knees and Hams: But in these Cases you must use no Essence of *Turpentine*. What makes this Remedy the more to be preferred, is, that though equally good with any, it costs but a Trifle.

*A solutive Cataplasm, or Poultice for swelled Stones.*

Boil Beans in Lees of Wine, the thinnest you can get, till they become soft: Then pound them, and make them into a Paste. Add to two Pounds of this Paste, an Ounce of *Castor* in Powder: Mix the whole well, and put it into a Linen Bag capable of containing the Testicles. You must first grease them well with Ointment of *Oil of Roses*, and then put them into the Bag, while the Poultice is as hot as you can bear it upon the Back of your Hand. Tie it on in the most convenient Manner you can, and every twenty-four Hours repeat the Uction, and heat the Bag in the Lees made hot, which must be kept for that Purpose. Continue to proceed thus till the Swelling dissipates.



## A TREATISE of the S T U D.

**A** STUD should be fixed upon dry Ground; for the more dry and brittle the Grass is, the more light, slender, and sound the Horses that eat it will grow: Whereas those who feed on very juicy Grass, are usually very thick and clumsy in the Head, the Neck, and even the whole Body; and such Grass grows only in moist and watery Places: Besides, the Hoofs thereby being too much moisten'd, they become gross and heavy; so that when you raise a Race of Colts out of fine Horses and Mares, if you breed them up in humid Lands, their slender Legs are unable to bear the Weight of a great Head, a thick Neck, a gross Body, and to lift Hoofs that are too large and heavy; all which Defects are caused by too juicy Grass. A dry Soil therefore is absolutely necessary for the Seat of a Stud; because the Grass there being more wholesom, it makes the Colts sounder, more vigorous, light, and courageous; which are all the good Qualities one can wish for in a Horse. The Stud, being situated in such a Place, must be governed in the following Manner.

### *Rules to be observed in a Stud.*

I. You must always keep the Place clean to which the Colt retires, and change the Litter in it, at least twice a Month in Winter, and four Times in Summer.

II. Take Care, when you perceive any Mares to grow heavy, to separate them from others that are not with Foal; because the latter, being more light and wanton, may kick the big ones, and make them cast their Foals.

III. Those Mares that have cast their Foals should be expell'd the Stud, as improper for Breeding; because were they afterwards to produce a Foal, it would be of no great Value.

IV. When a Mare has been kept three Years in a Stud without producing a Foal, it is Obstinacy to keep her there any longer; For, though she should give you one the fourth Year, you run a great Hazard of waiting a long Time for a Second; and the Colt that she produces will never be worth a Quarter of the Expence that the Mare will put you to.

V. You must not put Colts of one Year old into the same Enclosures with those of two, three, or four Years; because the latter, being much stronger, will kick the others, and hinder them from feeding, which must spoil their Growth.

VI. You must not let Stone-Colts of a Year old run with Mares of the same Age, nor with any other Mare-Colts whatsoever. They begin to have some Sensation at that Age; and what by their Play and their Feeding with those young Females, they pall their Appetites, and sometimes ruin and destroy themselves. To avoid this Inconvenience, Mares of two Years should be put with their Dams; and the He's of two, with those of three or four.

VII. Neither must Stone-Colts be suffered to come near grown Mares, in what Season soever it may be; for this would certainly do them harm, and in Covering-time make them shed their Seed, how gentle soever they might be.

VIII. Never take a Colt from Grass till he is three Years and a half old, nor begin to mount him till he is five; which is the Way to make him long serviceable.

IX. It would be very proper to have two large Enclosures; one to put the Mares in when they foal, that they may be at Rest, leaving them together till they have all foaled; and the other to contain the rest of the Stud, that they may not mingle with the Stone-Colts; because there is more to be apprehended then, than at any other Season, as well on the Colts Account, as on that of the Mares.

X. These Parks are very convenient to lodge the Studs in a-nights, in the separate Divisions: They feed there in Summer more at Ease by Night than by Day, not being incommoded either by Heat, or the Flies.

XI. In order to know if all the Mares that were covered have conceived, and if there are not some of them which still want the Horse, you must bring out a Stallion that neighs much, and lead him within Pistol-shot of the Mares, holding him tight, that he do not get from you: All those Mares which surround the Stallion, give you Notice that they are yet in Lust. But as there are some Mares who will take Horse after they have retained,

the



the most short and easy Way of knowing the Truth is, to pour Water into their Ears: For if they shake it out violently, in a Moment, it is a Mark they have not conceived. You must then lead them to other Horses; and in the Moment that the Stallion has done his Office, let the Mare be blooded in her *Jugular Vein*.

XII. It is a very good Way to have your Mares covered about the Middle of *March*, that, if they do not retain, you may have Time to get them covered again: For, when the Month of *May* is once over, I look upon the Season to be no longer proper for that Business; because, in order to make a Colt vigorous, he should have two Summers for one Winter; which cannot be if the Mare foals in the latter Season; but the Colt, on the contrary will be weak and languid, through the Hardships he suffers the first Year.

XIII. If the Mare brings forth her Foal with Difficulty, you ought to assist her, giving her good *Sweet Oil* and *Flowers of Sulphur*; and sometimes, to strengthen her, *Venice Treacle* in Wine, or a Dose of good Cordial Powder; which no Man who pretends to manage a Stud should ever be without, it being of continual Use, as well for Colts, as for Mares and Stallions.

XIV. You should take Care to get your Mares covered again in a Fortnight, at farthest, after they have foaled; because if you neglect it longer, the Beauty of the Season for that End will be over.

*How to couple Stallions with Mares, in order to make them bring forth well-proportioned Foals.*

As among the foreign Stallions, some will get smaller Foals, some larger, you ought to put them to Mares more or less corpulent, that the Foals may be brought forth in good Proportion.

A *Barbary*, *Arabian*, or *Turkish* Stallion, to be a good one, should be tall, very slender, very high before, young, and without any Defect. As the Colts they get are usually larger than themselves, but extremely slender, you must give them Mares that have Capacity enough, and are very thick in their Bodies. The *English* Mares, in my Opinion, are the best for this Purpose; for the *Italian* ones produce feeble Foals, that cannot be depended on; the *Barbary* Mares cannot nourish their Foals in *France*: The *English* therefore are preferable to all others.

An *English* Stallion, to be a good one, should be strong, thick, and every Way well set; because the Colt he gets is usually smaller, and less vigorous than himself.

The *Spanish* Stallions seem to me not so useful in *France* as those of other Countries: But if any Man has a Mind to breed from them, he should chuse those that are very strong, and well set every way. As for Beauty and Spirit, they never want those.

Though I have mentioned no Horses for Stallions but *Barbs*, *Arabians*, *Turks*, and those of *England* and *Spain*, it does not follow from thence, that others are to be rejected, or that you may not get from them Colts that are both handsome and good: But the former being more sprightly, more delicate, and more courageous, they get Foals of a more noble and lofty Stature, and consequently more proper for Persons of Quality.

As to *French* Mares, who are descended from Horses of Reputation, such as the Stallions I have just mentioned, those that are highest before are the best. You may find a Mare that is very handsome to the Eye, but will never produce a Colt of any Value, because she was got by a worthless Horse. Not but that the Colt may at first appear handsome and well made; but the bigger he grows, the worse will he look: Whereas a Mare of good Descent will bring forth a Colt that does not at first appear so beautiful, but which grows every Day in Beauty as well as in Stature. Take great Care therefore that your Mare be of a good Race, because this is a Matter of great Importance.

The Stallions, as well as the Mares, should be without any Defect; that is, their Sight should not be impaired, they should not be low in the Reins, nor have their Legs spoiled by Curbs, Velligons, or Spavins: In a Word, let them be sound all over their Bodies, lest their Offspring partake of their Infirmities; for many Times these Distempers are hereditary in Horses.

It is necessary likewise, that neither the Horse nor the Mare should have any Way strained themselves. This is what few People regard; but on the contrary, when they have a good Stone-Horse, they make a Slave of him till they have worn him out, and then his last Service is to be kept for a Stallion: As if it was sufficient that a Horse has been once good,



good, to make the Colts he gets afterwards strong and vigorous. But I would be glad to know what Reason they can assign, why a Horse, entirely worn out, and consequently without Strength, should be able to get a vigorous Foal? Doubtless, this is impossible in Nature. For my Part, I believe that the most certain Means to have good and sprightly Foals, is to look out for, and procure, at any Price whatsoever, a Stone-Horse that is strong, handsome, well-made, and without Defect; one that has never been rid, but in order to break him: You should know too his Qualities and Share of Spirits, and let him have a Mare equally well-conditioned. A Stallion of this Kind may get good Foals, even at 25 Years of Age, which no Horse can do that has been worn out with Labour.

In order that a Mare should produce good Foals, let her not be covered till she is four Years of Age, and take her out of the Stud in her 16th or 17th Year. A Stud regulated in this Manner, will produce the finest Horses in the World, by only observing the proper Seasons to have the Mares covered, that their Foals may have two Summers for one Winter.

A Mare goes with Foal 11 or 12 Months, or some Days more or less; for there is no certain Time; and the older she is, the longer she carries her Burthen. Some Persons amuse themselves with reckoning the Years of a Mare, to determine from thence the Day of her foaling; but this is very uncertain, and only an imaginary Piece of Knowledge. Such is the Folly of many other People, that they pretend the State of the Weather, when a Horse covers a Mare, contributes much to the Goodness or Badness of the Colt: Thus, if it be rainy, windy, or stormy, in the Moment that the Mare conceives, the Colt will be vicious; but that, on the contrary, he will be very docile, if the Air is then clear and serene.

It is however certain, in spite of all that such People say, that a Horse produced between a Mare and a Stallion which are both perfect, will always be good, well-shaped, and vigorous, if he be got in the right Season; for this, joined to the Manner of bringing him up, is the only Thing that can contribute to his Perfection. You must assist your Mare in the feeding of her Foal, by giving him Provender, as Bran, with Wheat or Oats crack'd in the Mill, and mixed among it.

A Colt sucks for six or seven Months. When you take him from under his Dam, you must feed him Morning and Evening with Oats wetted, and Bran, during the Winter-Season. In the Spring, you must take him off gradually from this Diet, till the Grass grows hard and high; for if you let him eat the tender sprouting Grass, it may loosen his Belly too much, weaken him, and make him sick, and at last perhaps kill him. You must treat him thus from Year to Year, till he is four Years old, taking great Care not to let any whole Grain come in his Way; for as the Joints of his Jaws are yet very tender, he may, in striving to chew, bring down Defluxions on his Eyes, to his great Prejudice.

A Stone-Colt, that is well-shaped, may at four Years of Age be suffered to cover Mares, if you are sure he has never received any Hurt before. He might even serve for this Office at three Years old; but as he is not then quite at his full Growth, it is better to wait till he is four, when there will be greater Chance of his getting a Colt that may be good for something.

*Instructions for the Commissioners, who go to buy Horses in foreign Countries, in order to make them acquainted with their Defects.*

**T**HE *Persian* Horses are very good and vigorous, but they are subject to have high and close Heels, and also liable to Incastellations. They are very good to breed from.

The *Arabian* Horses are very good; but apt to have their Feet fat and large. They are also good Stallions.

The *Tartary* Horses are of middling Stature, and have Feet like Mules; that is, very good Feet.

The *Barbary* Horses have delicate Feet, and are subject to the Chilling of the Shoulders. Their Breed is admirable, when you can get a full-sized Horse; and for the generality very good. They should be loaded on the Shoulders.

The *Polish* Horses are small, and hang down their Heads: They will do good Service, but eat a vast deal.

The *Croatian* Horses are much like Mules, and have good Feet.

The *Hungarian* Horses are good Courfers; they have good Feet, but are with Difficulty held in, and carry the Nose almost always poking forwards.

The



The *Swedish* Horses are liable to the Mallenders, and transverse Mules.

The *Neapolitan* Horses are vigorous, and good Coursers; subject to have weak Feet, to be resty, malignant, and treacherous.

The *Spanish* Horses are fiery, and good for every thing, especially for War and the Manège: They are subject to dry Spavins.

The *Danish* Horses are very serviceable, but good for nothing till they are six or seven Years old. They are subject to Bleymes, and Defects in the Sight.

The *Italian* Horses are good Coursers; subject to Bleymes and Bone-Spavins; to be resty and malignant.

The *German* Horses are strong; fit for the Saddle and the Coach; but subject to Javarts, and watery Legs.

The *Swiss* Horses are good for Draught, as for the Train of Artillery; but liable to Defects of Sight, which they seldom have very clear. They have much Hair on their Legs.

The *English* Horses are good, easy to the Rider, and excellent for the Chace. They are subject to Bleymes and Seymes, and to have flat and close Heels.

The *Dutch* and *Friesland* Horses are good for the Coach: They are tall and fat; but subject to have flat Feet, Curbs in the Houghs, Veffigons, greasy Spavins, and Ox-Spavins.

The *Flemish* Horses have large Heads, and much Hair on their Legs: They are subject to Graps round the Hoof, to Figs in the Fruith, and to be full of Humours in their Legs.

The *Norman* Horses are excellent, and good for the Chace: They have good Feet, and some of them are fit for the Coach. Many of them are subject to Distempers in the Eyes.

The Horses of *Britanny* are not fit for Service till they are five or six Years old: They have heavy Heads, a cloudy Sight, and much Hair on the Legs.

The *Poitevin* Horses have large Heads, and are subject to be moon-ey'd. They have much Hair on their Legs, and wide open Feet.

The *Limosin* Horses are very good: They are fit for the Chace, and have good Feet and good Sight. Some of them are no ways inferior to the *English* Horses in any thing; which are however, in general, indisputably the best Horses in the Universe.

*To preserve and restore a Stable infected by the different Maladies of Horses.*

**F**IRST, when a Stable is spoiled by having had in it Glandery Horses, you must begin by unpaving it: Then take away at least half a Foot of Earth, or Sand, because the Urine that is soaked in it may infect the Air; and in the Place of what you take away, put fresh Earth or Sand.

If the Wood of the Rack, Manger, Pillars, and Bars, is not very old, and the Infection has not been of long standing, it will be sufficient to scrape them well, and wash them with hot Water. When the Whole is dry, take Pot-ash, and dissolve it in boiling Water, with which wash them a second time. You may dissolve what Quantity of it you please, in proportion to the Size of the Stable; but the Medium is, a Pound of Pot-ash to a common Pail of Water. When the Whole has been well scoured with this Lye, take Olibanum, and the Root of *Bobemian* Angelica, of each alike; pound them coarsely together, and take three or four Pots, or Chafing-dishes, according to the Magnitude of the Stable, and put in them lighted Charcoal; then shut up all the Windows and all the Doors, and put some of this Composition upon each Fire, where it will smoke very much. Get out of the Stable, and shut the Door close after you; and thus leave the Stable close stopped up for 24 Hours, in which time it will be purified. When you have opened the Doors and Windows long enough to let out the Smoke, and let in the fresh Air, you may put in it any Horse with safety. But if the Distemper be any thing less than the Glanders, there is no occasion for taking up the Pavement, because the Wash and the Perfume will of themselves be sufficient. If the Wood of the Rack or Manger be old and rotten, you must take them down and put up new, especially after the Glanders.



## THE

## Anatomical Description of the BONES and MUSCLES of a Horse.

## P L A T E I.

*Offium Equi Nomina.*

- A. **C**apitis Offium Structura.  
*a.* Frontis Os.  
*b.* Jugale Os.  
*c.* Maxilla superior.  
*d.* Nasi Offa furcalia.  
*e.* Occipitis Os.  
*f.* Maxilla inferior.
- B. *1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7,* Colli Offa.  
*g.* Spinæ, seu superiores Processus Colli Vertebrarum.  
*h.* Transversi Processus Colli Vertebrarum.  
*i.* Inferiores Processus Colli Offium.
- C. Sterni superior Processus.
- D. Scapula.  
*k.* Cartilago Scapulæ.  
*l.* Spina Scapulæ.  
*m.* Scapulæ Costa inferior, aut posterior.  
*n.* Anterior Costa Scapulæ.  
*o.* Acetabulum Scapulæ seu Junctura, quod & Caput ejus appellatur.  
*p.* Anchoræ formæ, quod appellatur in Homine Caput seu Processus Scapulæ, cui Clavicula jungitur.
- E. Thoracis Vertebrae, signatae *1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18.*  
*q.* Thoracis Vertebrarum Processus superiores, seu Spinæ Dorsi.  
*r.* Transversi Processus Thoracis Vertebrarum.
- F. Costæ Thoracem efficientes, numeratae, *1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9.* Costæ legitimæ, quarum Cartilagines nectuntur, *10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18.* Costæ spuria, *I, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, IX, X, XI, XII, XIII, XIV, XV, XVI, XVII.* Costarum omnium Cartilagines.
- G. Humeri Os, seu Axilla.  
*f.* Caput ejus superius.  
*e.* Caput inferius.  
*t.* Interior Pars superioris Capitis.  
*u.* Idem inferioris.

*The Names of the Bones in a Horse.*

- A. **S**tructure of the Bones of the Head.  
*a.* The Forehead-bone.  
*b.* The Yoke-bone.  
*c.* The upper Jaw-bone.  
*d.* The forked Bones of the Nose.  
*e.* The hinder Bone of the Head, or Noll-bone.  
*f.* The lower Jaw-bone.
- B. *1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7,* The Bones of the Neck.  
*g.* The Spinæ, or upper Processes of the Neck-bones.  
*h.* The transverse, or cross Processes of the Neck-bones.  
*i.* The lower Processes of the Neck-bones.
- C. The upper Process of the Breast-bone.
- D. The Shoulder-blade.  
*k.* The Cartilage of the Shoulder-blade.  
*l.* The Spine of the Shoulder-blade.  
*m.* The lower or hinder Shoulder-Rib.  
*n.* The fore Rib of the Shoulder.  
*o.* The Socket or Joint of the Shoulder, which is also called it's Head.  
*p.* The Anchor-form, which in a Man is called the Head or Process of the Shoulder, to which the Clavicula joins.
- E. The Vertebrae of the Thorax, or Chest, marked *1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18.*  
*q.* The upper Processes of the Vertebrae of the Thorax, or the Chine-bone.  
*r.* The transverse Processes of the Spinal Vertebrae.
- F. The Ribs forming the Thorax, numbered, *1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9.* The true Ribs, the Cartilages of which are knit to the Breast-bone, *10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18.* The false Ribs, *I, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, IX, X, XI, XII, XIII, XIV, XV, XVI, XVII.* The Cartilages of all the Ribs.
- G. The Shoulder-bone, or Axilla.  
*f.* Its upper Head.  
*e.* Its lower Head.  
*t.* The inner Part of the upper Head.  
*u.* The inner Part of the lower Head.

H. Cubiti



- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>H. Cubiti Os.<br/> <i>w.</i> Superius Caput Cubiti Ossis.<br/> <i>x.</i> Inferius Caput ejus.<br/> <i>y.</i> Processus magnus superioris Capitis Cubiti Ossis.</p> <p>I. Radius.<br/> <i>z.</i> Ligamenta &amp; Officula in junctura Radii superiore.<br/> <i>a.</i> Processus in posteriore junctura Parte superioris.<br/> <i>β.</i> Elevationes in posterioribus Radii Lateribus spinosæ.<br/> <i>γ.</i> Processus Officuli minor in junctura inferiore Radii.</p> <p>K, L, M. Tria Pedem imum constituentia Officula.</p> <p>O. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, Lumbares Vertebrae.<br/> <i>δ.</i> Spinæ Lumbarium Vertebrae.<br/> <i>ε.</i> Transversales Processus earundem Vertebrae.</p> <p>P. Os Sacrum, signatum, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6.<br/> <i>ζ.</i> Processus seu Spinæ sacri Ossis.</p> <p>Q. Os Coccygis, seu Caudæ Vertebrae, signata, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18.</p> <p>R. Os anonymum, seu triplex.<br/> <i>η.</i> Pars Ossis anonymi quæ Ilium Os appellatur.<br/> <i>η.</i> Coxendix, dicta ejus Pars.</p> <p><i>θ.</i> Pubis Os, nominata Pars ejusdem.<br/> <i>θ.</i> Processus magnus Acetabuli, qui Capiti majori seu Rotatori juncturam præbet.</p> <p>S. Femoris Os.<br/> <i>ζ.</i> Caput superius Femoris Ossis, seu Rotator magnus.<br/> <i>κ.</i> Trochanter major, dictus hic Processus.<br/> <i>λ.</i> Cervix Femoris Ossis.<br/> <i>μ.</i> Minor Locus, interior Trochanter ubi latet.<br/> <i>ν.</i> Caput inferius Femoris Ossis.<br/> <i>ο.</i> Capitis inferioris Pars exterior.<br/> <i>φ.</i> Interior ejus Pars.<br/> <i>π.</i> Patellæ vices agens Os.</p> <p>T. Tibia.<br/> <i>τ.</i> Caput superius Tibiæ Ossis.</p> <p><i>υ.</i> Ligamina &amp; Offa, junctura Tibiæ cum Fibula. <i>N. B.</i> Hæ ad præcedens pertinent Os.</p> <p>V. Os cui Fibulæ nomen dabimus.<br/> <i>z.</i> Processus Talum effingens. Sequentes duo Characteres ad Tibiam pertinent.<br/> <i>ω.</i> Caput superius Tibiæ.<br/> <i>σ.</i> Inferius ejusdem Caput.</p> | <p>H. The Leg-bone, or Cubitus.<br/> <i>w.</i> The upper Head of the Leg-bone.<br/> <i>x.</i> The lower Head of the same.<br/> <i>y.</i> The large Process of the upper Head of the Leg-bones.</p> <p>I. The Shank-bone.<br/> <i>z.</i> The Ligaments and little Bones in the Knee, or upper Joint of the Shank-bone.<br/> <i>a.</i> The Process in the hinder Part of the upper Joint.<br/> <i>β.</i> The knotty Elevations in the hinder Sides of the Shank-bones.<br/> <i>γ.</i> The smaller Process of the little Bone in the lower Joint of the Shank.</p> <p>K, L, M. The three small Bones that constitute the lower Foot.</p> <p>O. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, The Vertebrae of the Loins.<br/> <i>δ.</i> The Spines of the same.<br/> <i>ε.</i> Their transverse Processes.</p> <p>P. The Holy Bone, marked, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6.<br/> <i>ζ.</i> The Processes or Spines of the holy Bone.</p> <p>Q. The Os Coccygis, or Vertebrae of the Tail, marked, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18.</p> <p>R. The anonymous or triple Bone.<br/> <i>η.</i> That Part of the anonymous Bone which is called the Os Ilium.<br/> <i>η.</i> The Coxendix, or Huckle-bone, a Part of the same.<br/> <i>θ.</i> The Os Pubis, another Part of it.<br/> <i>θ.</i> The large Process of the Socket, which holds the larger Head, or the Rotator.</p> <p>S. The Thigh-bone.<br/> <i>ζ.</i> The upper Head of the Thigh-bone, or the large Rotator.<br/> <i>κ.</i> The larger Trochanter, called here the Process.<br/> <i>λ.</i> The Neck of the Thigh-bone.<br/> <i>μ.</i> The lesser Cavity, where lies the inner Trochanter.<br/> <i>ν.</i> The lower Head of the Thigh-bone.<br/> <i>ο.</i> The outer Part of the lower Head.<br/> <i>φ.</i> Its inner Part.<br/> <i>π.</i> The Bone that serves as a Knee-pan.</p> <p>T. The Shin-bone.<br/> <i>τ.</i> The upper Head of the Shin-bone, or Tibia.<br/> <i>υ.</i> The Ligaments and Bones that join the Tibia with the Fibula. <i>N. B.</i> These belong to the last mentioned Bone.</p> <p>V. The lesser Bone of the Leg, which we call Fibula.<br/> <i>z.</i> The Process forming the Heel. The two following References belong to the Tibia.<br/> <i>ω.</i> The upper Head of the Tibia.<br/> <i>σ.</i> Its lower Head.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>φ.</i> Elevations</p> |
|--|--|



Φ. Elevationes longiusculæ marginales in posteriore latere Fibulæ.  
 Ψ. Processus inferiori in junctura Fibulæ.  
 X, Y, Z. Tria Offa Pedem efficientia.

Φ. Longish Elevations on the Edge of the Fibula behind.  
 Ψ. The Process in the lower Joint of the Fibula.  
 X, Y, Z. The three Bones forming the Foot.

## P L A T E II.

*Explicatio Ossium Capitis.*

Figuræ primæ &amp; secundæ.

- A. **O**S Jugalæ.  
 B. Os Temporale.  
 C. Os Frontis.  
 D. Offa Nasum sustinentia.  
 E. Molares Dentes.  
 F. Canini Dentes.  
 G. Incisorii Dentes.

Figuræ tertiæ &amp; quartæ.

- A. Mammillaris Processus.  
 B. Occipitis Offa.  
 Δ. Processus inferioris Maxillæ, superiori in-articulatum.  
 C. Processus inferioris Maxillæ, in Temporalis Offi insertum.  
 D. Musculi Mastoidei Insertionis locus.  
 E. Musculi ejusdem Ortus locus.

*Explication of the Bones of the Head.*

Figures the first and second.

- A. **T**HE Yoke-bone.  
 B. The Temporal-bone.  
 C. The Forehead-bone.  
 D. The Bones supporting the Nose.  
 E. The Grinders.  
 F. The Pincers.  
 G. The Fore-Teeth.

Fig. three and four.

- A. The mammillary Process.  
 B. The Bones of the Occiput.  
 Δ. The Process of the lower Jaw, joined to the upper.  
 C. The Process of the lower Jaw, inserted in the Bone of the Temple.  
 D. The Place where the Muscle Mastoideus is inserted.  
 E. The Place which the same Muscle arises from.

## P L A T E III.

Fig. 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12.

Offa Pedis tria variè conspicienda, majores nempe, quæ in Scelecto Literis G, H, I, K, L, M, insignita & descripta sunt.

Fig. 13, usque ad 19.

Officula imi Pedis tria, variè conspicienda.

- A. Processus, seu Alæ, quibus Illi Offa in-junguntur.

Fig. 20 &amp; 21.

Officula, seu potius Cartilagine duæ, quæ inter Radium primumque Pedis Os interveniunt juncturæ.

Fig. 22.

Anterior Facies, exteriusque Latus Scapulæ.

Fig. 23.

Interius Latus Scapulæ, Costis adversum.

Fig. 24.

Os Sacrum, interiori & inferiori Latere conspiciendum.

Fig. 25.

Interius superiusque latus Sacri Ossis, cum Coccygis Ossibus, seu Caudæ Vertebrae.

Fig. 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12.

The larger Bones of the Feet represented in various Views. They are in the Figure distinguished by the Letters G, H, I, K, L, M.

Fig. 13, to 19.

The three small Bones of the lower Feet, to be viewed different Ways.

- A. The Processes, or Wings, by which the Bones of the Os Ilium are joined.

Fig. 20 and 21.

The small Bones, or rather the two Cartilages, which are joined between the Shank-bone and the first of the Foot.

Fig. 22.

The foremost Face, and outer Side of the Shoulder-blade.

Fig. 23.

The inner Side of the Shoulder-blade, opposite to the Ribs.

Fig. 24.

The Holy Bone, to be seen from the inner and lower Side.

## P L A T E IV.

Fig. 25.

The inner and upper Side of the Holy Bone, with the Bones of the Coccyx, or Vertebra of the Tail.

Fig.



Fig. 26.

Thoracis anterior seu inferior Facies.

- A. Sternum tota Longitudine conspiciendum.  
B. Elevatio in medio Sterni duos pectoris Musculos discernens.

C. Xiphoides Os.

D. Vertebrae Thoracis.

I, P. Claviculae.

2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, Costae legitimae. II, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, spuriae Costae. I, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, IX, X, XI, XII, XIII, XIV, XV, XVI, XVII, Cartilagine Costarum.

Fig. 27.

Lumbares Vertebrae & Os Sacrum.

Fig. 26.

The foremost or lower Face of the Thorax.

- A. The Breast-bone exhibited in full Length.  
B. The Elevation in the middle of the Breast-bone, dividing the two Muscles of the Breast.

C. The Bone Xiphoides.

D. The Vertebrae of the Thorax.

I, P. The Claviculae.

2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, the true Ribs. II, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, the false Ribs. I, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, IX, X, XI, XII, XIII, XIV, XV, XVI, XVII, the Cartilages of the Ribs.

Fig. 27.

The Vertebrae of the Loins and the Os Sacrum.

P L A T E V.

Fig. 28.

Os anonymum, Parte superna conspiciendum.

Fig. 29.

Idem Os inferna Parte apparens.

Fig. 28.

The nameless Bone, shewn from the upper Side.

Fig. 29.

The same Bone, appearing from the lower Part.

*Musculorum Corporis Equi Explicatio.*

*Caput moventes Musculi, quorum 8 sunt Paria.*

1. **A**Ernoides. Duplici Ortu, ex inferioris anteriore Parte Vertebrae primae Colli; inde oblique ascendens per anteriora Colli in mammillaribus Temporis Ossis Processibus inseritur. Caput & deorsum trahunt, & firmum antrorsum continent, si simul ambo agunt; si solus, Collum in suam Partem flectit.
2. Spernius. Ex quinque Thoracis totidemque Colli Vertebrae vicinis oritur nervosus, & satis latus & carnosus ascendens Occipiti innectitur; Caput retrorsum agit.
3. Complexus seu Trigemini. Nomen nactus a triplice Origine, quorum unum est quarta & quinta transversis Processibus Vertebrae Thoracis, secundum est prima & secunda, tertium vero ex posteriori Vimine septimae Colli Vertebrae enatus. Statim post Ortum in unum coalitus Corpus, in Occiput ascendit, ibique ad mammillarium Processuum Radices inseritur, quandoquidem uno, saepe & triplici Tendine. Caput retrorsum agit.

*An Explication of the Muscles of a Horse's Body.*

*The Muscles moving the Head, which are 8 Pair.*

1. **A**Ernoides. It rises with a double Root, from the fore Part of the first Vertebra of the lower Neck; whence ascending obliquely along the fore Parts of the Neck, it is inserted in the mammillary Processes of the temporal Bone. They draw the Head downwards, and keep it firm forwards, when both act together; when one only, it pulls it to its own Side.
2. Spernius. It arises from five Vertebrae of the Thorax, and as many neighbouring ones of the Neck; is nervous, and ascending broad and fleshy is knit to the Occiput. It pulls the Head backwards.
3. Complexus or Trigemini. So called from its triple Origin, one from the fourth and fifth transverse Processes of the Vertebrae of the Thorax, a second from the first and second, and a third from the hinder Branch of the seventh Vertebra of the Neck. Immediately after its Rise these unite in one Body, which ascends into the Occiput, and is there inserted at the Roots of the mammillary Processes, sometimes with a single, but often with a triple Tendon. It draws the Head backwards.

B b

4. Tur-



4. Turgidulus. Exiguus Musculus, sub Modo dicto latens, e sex superioribus transversis Colli Vertebrarum Processibus enatus, admodum nervosus, postea carnosior effectus ascendit, inque posteriores Partes Radicis mammillaris Processus inferitur, Caputque retrorsum trahit.

5. Rectus major. Parvus gracilisque, et si carnosus. E Spina Vertebræ secundæ Colli progenitus, paremque suum tangens, statim iterum separatim medio Occipiti innexus. Idem huic cum cæteris Ufus.

6. Rectus minor. Sub Modo dicto ortus, & persimilis illi: sed ex prima Vertebra oritur, ubi illa nullam ut aliæ Spinam habet, ne scilicet majorem Rectum super illam ascendentem impediret. Occipitis in Latere inferitur. Caput ut alii retrorsum ducit.

7. Obliquus superior. Sub Rectis situs illis Forma proxime similis, ut & Substantia. Exterius per Latera Rectorum Occipitis orti in transversales Processus primæ Colli Vertebræ innectuntur, dexter in dexterum, alter in alium Processum.

8. Obliquus inferior. E Spina secundæ Colli Vertebræ ortus, oblique sursum fertur, primæque Vertebræ transversis Processibus e Latere jungitur.

*Collum moventes Musculi, quorum quatuor sunt Paria.*

9. Spinatus Colli. E septem anteriorum Thoracis Vertebrarum Spinis enatus, quinque inferioribus Colli Spinis transmissis, quibus paulum adhæret, ac si quædam ejus pars ex his pronasceret, tandem secundæ deorsum Colli Spinæ Vertebræ inferiori Parti innectitur. Collum retrahit.

10. Transversalis. Ex Thoracis sex anteriorum Vertebrarum transversis Processibus enatus, carnosiorque ascendens, omnibus Colli Vertebrarum transversis Processibus innexus, Collum uti prior retrorsum ducit.

11. Longus Colli. E sexta & quinta Dorfi Vertebra (vel potius Sterno & Clavicula) ascendens, omnium Colli Vertebrarum Lateribus innexus est; donec in primum ascendens, ter ambo illi inferuntur. Collum deorsum trahunt, Caput inclinant, aut etiam directe adversum exhibent.

4. Turgidulus. A small Muscle, lying hid in the manner above-mentioned. It springs from the six upper transverse Processes of the Vertebrae of the Neck, is very nervous, and afterwards becoming more fleshy, it ascends, and is inserted into the hinder Part of the mammillary Process. Its Office is to pull the Head backwards.

5. The larger Rectus. A small and slender, though fleshy Muscle. It arises from the Spine of the second Vertebra of the Neck, and touching its Fellow, it immediately proceeds again separately, and is knit to to the Middle of the Occiput. Its Use is the same as the others.

6. The lesser Rectus. It arises in the same manner as, and is very much like the former; but its Root is from the first Vertebra, where that has no Spine like the others, so that it does not impede the larger Rectus which ascends over it. It is inserted in the Side of the Occiput, and, as the rest, pulls the Head backwards.

7. Obliquus superior. Situated under the Rectus's, and resembling them in Form as well as Substance. Outwardly arising by the Sides of the Rectus of the Occiput. This Pair of Muscles are knit into the transverse Processes of the first Vertebra of the Neck, the right into the right, and the left into the left.

8. Obliquus inferior. It rises from the Spine of the 2d Vertebra of the Neck, runs obliquely upwards, and is joined to the Side of the transverse Processes of the first Vertebra.

*The Muscles moving the Neck, of which there are four Pair.*

9. Spinatus Colli. It rises from the seven Spines of the fore Vertebrae of the Thorax, and passing by the five lower Spines of the Neck, to which it cleaves a little, as if some Part of it arose from them, it is at last knit to the lower Part of the 2d Spine, in order downwards, of the Neck, which it draws back.

10. Transversalis. Rising from the six transverse Processes of the fore Vertebrae, and growing more fleshy as it ascends, it joins to all the transverse Processes of the Vertebrae of the Neck, which it also draws back.

11. Longus Colli. Ascending from the sixth and fifth Vertebrae of the Back (or rather from the Breast-bone and Clavicula) it is knit into the Sides of all the Vertebrae of the Neck; then rising to the first, it is there inserted, and the Pair together draw the Neck downwards, incline the Head, or one of them moves it on one Side.



12. Scalenus, aut Triangulare. Incipiens ex posteriore Costa, carnosus largusque ascendens, omnibus transversis Processibus inferitur.

*Thoracem & Pectus moventes septem Paria & unus sunt.*

13. Subclavium Par. A Situatione dictus, quoniam Cavitatem inter Claviculam & primam Costam explet. Ex interiore & inferiore Parte Claviculae oritur, eque Colli ultima Vertebra, deorsumque tendens, primae Costae prope Sternum innexus.

14. Serratus major Anticus. A Forma & Proportione. Ex interiore Latere Scapulae, primae & secunda Costa pronatus, quinque sequentibus veris & duabus spuris Costis inferitur. Usus illius est movendi Scapulam, & dilatandi Costas in Respiratione.

15. Serratum posticum superius par. Situs est in Dorso sub Rhomboide (ad Scapulam pertinente) inter Scapulas. Oritur membranofus a tribus inferioribus Colli Ossibus, primoque Thoracis, & insertus est tribus aut quatuor Interstitiis primarum Costarum.

16. Serratus posticus inferior. Oritur ab ultimis Spinis tribus Vertebrarum Dorfi, & Lumbarum prima, admodum largus, carnosus, & nervosus principio, postea per 4 aut 5 posteriores spurias procedens Costas, iisdem antequam Cartilaginibus junguntur innexus est.

17. Triangularis pectoris. E media Sterni Linea (in Pectoris enim interna Cavitate sedem habet) oritur, & tertiae, quartae, octavae & sextae veris Costis antequam cartilaginofae fiunt inferitur.

18. Diaphragma. Musculus in Cavitate Thoracis Respirationi serviens inter hos numeratur.

19. Cervicalis descendens. Ex tertia, quarta, quinta, & septima Colli Vertebra oriens, Costis Thoracis e contraria vel anteriori Parte innexus est.

20. Sacro-lumbus. Ab Ortu, qui ex Osse Sacro & Spinis Lumbarium est, appellatur. Situs est sub Serrato postico inferiori, sursumque repens, longo Dorfi Musculo admiscitur, & sic transversis Lumbarium Processibus Vertebrarum usque ad ultimum Thoracis adnectitur, unde ascendens ad Costas, illis omnibus ad trium digitorum distantiam a Vertebra, Tendine cuique proprio inhæret.

12. Scalenus, or Triangularis. Beginning from the hinder Rib, it ascends fleshy and large, and is inserted in all the transverse Processes.

*There are seven Pair and an odd one that move the Thorax and Breast.*

13. The Subclavian Pair. So called from their Situation, because they fill the Cavity between the Clavicula and the first Rib. They rise from the inner and lower Part of the Clavicula, and from the hind Vertebra of the Neck, and running downwards, are knit to the first Rib near the Sternum.

14. Serratus major Anticus. From its Saw-like Form and its Proportion. Arising from the inner Side of the Shoulder-blade, and from the first and second Rib, it is inserted in the five following true and two false Ribs. Its Use is to move the Scapula, and dilate the Ribs in Respiration.

15. Serratum posticum superius par. Their Seat is in the Back under the Rhomboid (belonging to the Scapula) between the two Shoulder-blades. It rises membranous from the three lower Bones of the Neck, and the first of the Thorax, and is inserted in three or four Interstices of the first Ribs.

16. Serratus posticus inferior. It rises from the last three Spines of the Vertebrae of the Back, and the first of the Loins, is at the beginning very large, fleshy, and nervous, and then proceeding by the 4 or 5 hinder false Ribs, it is knit with them before they unite in Cartilages.

17. Triangularis pectoris. They arise from the middle Line of the Breast-bone, (for their Seat is within the Cavity of the Chest) and are inserted into the third, fourth, sixth, and eighth true Ribs, before they become cartilaginous.

18. The Midriff. A Muscle in the Cavity of the Chest, of use in Respiration. It is numbered with the rest.

19. Cervicalis descendens. Rising from the third, fourth, fifth, and seventh Vertebrae of the Neck, it is joined to the Ribs of the Thorax on the contrary or fore Part.

20. Sacro-lumbus. So called because it rises from the Holy-bone and the Spines of the Loins. It is seated under the lower backward Saw-bone, and creeping upwards, mixes with the long Muscle of the Back, and so is knit to the transverse Processes of the Vertebrae of the Loins quite to the last of the Thorax, whence arising to the Ribs, it joins to them all with a respective Tendon to each, at the Distance of three Finger's Breadth.

*Dorfi*



*Dorsi & Lumborum Motores quatuor Paria sunt.*

21. Longissimus Dorsi. Ex Offe Sacro & Ilio pronatus, totum percurrentes Lumbum, Dorsum & Collum, semper prope Vertebrae, usque ad Processus mamillares porrigitur, quibus innexus definit.
22. Quadratus. A Figura quam ambo Musculi simul efficiunt, nam singulus triangularis est. Latus, validus, & carnosus oritur ex posteriori superiorique Cavitate Ilii Ossis, & interiori superiorique Parte Ossis Sacri, & sic, carnosus uti est, omnibus transversis Processibus Lumborum Vertebrae ad primam usque Costam innectitur. Modo dicto Dorsum rectum continet: hic autem introrsum flectere videtur.
23. Semi-spinatus. Ex omnibus Sacri Lumbique Ossium Spinis nervosus oritur, & inseritur transversis Lumborum Ossium Processibus, ultimisque Thoracis. Hic cum sequente Sacro Cavitatem inter summas Spinas & Costas, Rimamque explet. Spinis contrahendis vacat hic Musculus.
24. Sacer Musculus. Oritur ex ea Ossis Sacri Parte, cujus Alæ Ilii cum Offe compactæ sunt. Post Originem crassior est, nec finitur antequam Spinas ultimarum Thoracis Vertebrae nanciscitur, quanquam per viam plerisque Lumborum transversis Processibus innectitur. Spinis extendendis facti sunt: sed si unus solum agit, Dorsum a suo Latere incurvat.

Notandum est inter unamquamque Costam duplicem esse Musculum, quorum tot sunt quot Costæ utriusque generis.

25. Illi quidem qui interius in Cavitate sunt, 26. interiores Intercostales, qui vero exterius apparent, Intercostales exteriores dicuntur. Usus eorum est facilitandæ Compressionis Costarum, Inflexione Corporis; ut & in Retractione.

*Scapularum moventium quatuor Paria sunt.*

27. Cucullaris. Nascitur ex Occipite modice nervosus, sed descendens ex quinque superioribus Colli Vertebrae Processibus accrescentibus Nervis; augmentatus imo denique etiam ex Thoracis Vertebrae ad octo usque Ramis auctus, Scapularum superiores anterioresque Processus, operiens ejus Spinas, Dorsum, Scapulae, & infimis

*The Movers of the Back and Loins are four Pair.*

21. Longissimus Dorsi. Arising from the Holy Bone of the Os Ilium, it pervades the Loins, the Back, and the Neck, keeping still near the Vertebrae, and extends quite to the mammillary Processes, in which it ends.
22. The square Muscle. Named from the Figure which both Muscles make together, each being of a triangular Form, broad, strong, and fleshy. It rises from the hinder and upper Cavity of the Os Ilium and the inner and upper Part of the Holy-bone, and so, fleshy as it is, is knit to all the transverse Processes of the Vertebrae of the Loins quite to the first Rib. In this manner it keeps the Back straight, and seems also to have a Power of bending it inwards.
23. Semi-spinatus. It rises nervous from all the Spines of the Holy-bone and the Loins, and is inserted in the transverse Processes of the Bones of the Loins, and in the last of the Thorax. This, with the following Holy Muscle, fill the Cavity and the Cleft between the upper Spines and the Ribs. It's Business, when used, is to contract the Spines.
24. The Holy Muscle. It rises from that Part of the Holy-bone where its Wings are compacted with the Os Ilium. After its Origin it grows thicker, and does not end till it gains the Spines of the last Vertebrae of the Thorax; though by the way it is knit with many transverse Processes of the Loins. Their Office together is to extend the Loins; but when one only acts, it bends the Body on its own Side.

It is to be observed, that there is a double Muscle within each Rib, and that these Pairs are just as many in Number as the Ribs. The inner ones, that lie hid in the Cavity, are called the inner Intercostals, and 26. those which appear outwardly, the outward Intercostals. Their Use is to facilitate the Compression of the Ribs, and the Inflexion of the Body; as also in drawing back.

*There are four Pair that move the Scapula, or Shoulder-blade.*

27. Cucullaris, or Monk's Hood. It rises moderately nervous from the Occiput, but descending its Nerves increase from the five upper Processes of the Vertebrae of the Neck; augmented also from below by the Vertebrae of the Thorax, it increases at last to eight Branches, covers the Spines of the upper and fore Processes of the Scapula, and at last Coll



Colli Vertebris tandem innexus est. Motiones ejus variæ pro Origine Partium sunt, Scapulam oblique sursum trahendo, eamque & Collum contrahendo.

28. Levatores. Quisque situs est super Claviculam, oritur è transversis Processibus primæ, secundæ, tertiæ, & quartæ Vertebrarum Colli; & hæc Principia postmodum unita in unum abeunt Tendinem, qui in anteriori Processu Scapulæ apud Juncturam Cubiti insertus est, & Caput Scapulæ antrorsum sursumque trahit.

29. Serratus minor Anticus. Situs est sub Pectorali, & oritur ex primis Costis quatuor, antequam Cartilagines fiunt; inde procedens ad Scapulam, illi largo Tendine in Loco anchora-formi inseritur, eamque antrorsum movet.

30. Rhomboides. Situs est sub Cucullari; tener, largus, & quadratus est; oritur carnosus ex tribus ultimis Colli Vertebris, & totidem anterioribus Thoracis, & admodum suo similis Origini extenditur usque ad Scapulam, cujus Basi insertus est, & trahit eum sursum & retrorsum.

*Axillam moventium sunt novem in Unaquaque.*

31. Deltoides. Ascendens ex medio Claviculæ, acumine Axillæ, & toto Scapulæ Dorso, extenditur ad Medium usque Scapulæ, ubi insertus est prius. Musculum Fibras habere quasdam oblique deorsum, tales quæ sunt in anteriori ejus Parte, alias oblique introrsum, uti in posteriori Parte, & denique alias uti in medio, quæ recta deorsum pedem versus descendunt, habere eum scilicet triplicem motum, observatum est. Si igitur Fibre prioris Partis contrahuntur, Axilla introrsum versum Nares Equi levatur; si mediæ, Dorsum versus; & si posteriores, oblique deorsum fertur. Itaque his Musculus non solum levat Axillam, sed & etiam alia quædam perficit.

32. Supra Spinatus, aut supra Scapularis superior. Cavitatem omnem inter Scapulæ Costam anteriorem & Spinam ejus explet. Oritur a Spina Scapulæ, transiensque Juncturam Axillæ Cervici largo Tendine innexus est. Opus ejus est Axillam levare.

2

knits with the Back, the Shoulder-blade, and the lowest Vertebrae of the Neck. Its Motions are various, according to the Origin of its Parts, in drawing the Scapula obliquely upwards, and by contracting that and the Neck.

28. Levatores, the Lifters. They are situated upon the Clavicula, and rise from the transverse Processes of the first, second, third, and fourth Vertebrae of the Neck. These Beginnings, united afterwards in one, go forth in a Tendon, which is inserted in the fore Process of the Scapula at the Joint of the Shank, and draws the Head of the Scapula forwards and upwards.

29. Serratus minor Anticus. It is seated under the Pectoral, and rises from the first four Ribs, before they become Cartilages; thence proceeding to the Scapula, it is inserted in it by a large Tendon in the anchor-form Place, and draws it forwards.

30. Rhomboides. It is seated under the Cucullaris; is tender, large, and square; rises fleshy from the three last Vertebrae of the Neck, and the three foremost of the Thorax, and continues very much in the same State quite to the Scapula, in the Base of which it is inserted, and draws it upwards and backwards.

*The Muscles that move each Shoulder are nine in Number.*

31. Deltoides. Ascending from the Middle of the Clavicula, Extremity of the Shoulder, and the whole Back of the Scapula, it extends to the Middle of the Scapula, and is there inserted. It is observed that this Muscle has certain Fibres obliquely downwards, such as are those in its fore Part, others obliquely inwards, as in the hinder Part, and others, lastly, as in the Middle, which descend directly towards the Foot; that is, it has a triple Motion. If therefore the Fibres of the first Part are contracted, the Shoulder is lifted inwards towards the Nostrils of the Horse; if the Middle, it is lifted towards the Back; and if the hinder ones, it is pulled obliquely downwards. By these therefore the Muscle not only lifts the Shoulder, but also performs other Functions.

32. Supra Spinatus, or supra Scapularis superior. It fills all the Cavity between the fore Rib of the Scapula and its Spine. It rises from the Spine of the Scapula, and crossing the Joint, is knit to the Neck of the Shoulder by a large Tendon. Its Office is to raise the Scapula.

C c

33. Latissimus.



33. *Latissimus*. A Quantitate. Oritur membranofus & largus a Processibus earum Vertebrarum quæ sunt inter sextum Thoracis & Medium Sacri, ut & a superiore Parte Ossis Ilii. Inde procedens usque ad eum locum, unde Costæ Caudam versus curvari incipiunt, carnosior fit, & posteriorem seu inferiorem Scapulæ Processum operiens transitu, gracilior, quandoquidem carnosus semper, fit. Largo fortique tandem Tendine Capiti Scapulæ interius inferitur, inter Pectoralem & Rotundum. Axillam retrorsum Caudam versus, quamque paulò oblique sursum versus trahit.
34. *Rotundus*. Oritur ex inferiore Scapulæ Costa, & admodum forti, carnofo, & nervoso Tendine interiori superiorique Axillæ Capitis Parti inferitur. Axillam retrorsum Caudamque versus trahit.
35. *Pectoralis*. Oritur superiori ejus Parte ex Clavicula in Medium usque; Parte media ex toto Sterno, atque illis Cartilaginibus quæ illi inhærent; inferiore autem Parte è Cartilaginibus sextæ, septimæ & octavæ Costarum. Post largum & membranofum Ortum, carnosior factus crassiorque, ad Axillæ Os descendit, & illi tandem brevior, sed admodum crasso fortique & largo Tendine paululum, sub Capite ejus, innectitur inter Deltoidem & Bicipitem. Officium ejus est, Axillæ Os antrorsum Pectusque versus movendi.
36. *Caracoides*. Oritur ex Processu caracoido Scapulæ, unde in Medium Axillaris Ossis insertus abit, & illud sursum & antrorsum ad Pectus trahit.
37. *Infra Spinatus, aut sub Scapularis inferior*. Situs est intra Spinam & posteriorem Scapulæ Costam, Cavitatem illam explens. Carnosus oritur a Basi Scapulæ & Processu inferiori; minuitur inde, ut & Scapula, & lato brevi Tendine insertus est in quarto Humeri Ligamento; retrorsum ac sursum Scapulam movet.
38. *Sub Scapularis, aut Immerfus*. Scapulæ interiori Lateri adhæret & Costis, nullo itaque modo apparens, cuidam Ligamentorum axillarium inferitur, Dorsum versus illud agens.
39. *Rotundus minor*. Oritur ex inferiore Scapulæ Latere, & inferitur in Cervicem inferiorem Axillaris, sursum Dorsum versus illud agens.
33. *Latissimus*. So called from its Magnitude. It rises membranous and large from the Processes of those Vertebrae that are between the sixth of the Thorax and the Middle of the Holy-bone, as also from the upper Part of the Os Ilium. Thence proceeding to the Place, where the Ribs towards the Tail begin to be bent, it grows more fleshy, and covering in its Passage the hinder and lower Process of the Scapulæ, becomes more slender, though still fleshy. At last, with a large and strong Tendon, it is inwardly inserted in the Scapula, between the Pectoral and the round Muscles. It draws the Shoulder backwards towards the Tail, though a little obliquely upwards.
34. *Rotundus*. It rises from the lower Rib of the Scapula, and with a very strong, fleshy, and nervous Tendon, is inserted in the inner and upper Part of the Head of the Shoulder. It draws the Shoulder back towards the Tail.
35. *Pectoralis*. It rises in its upper Part from the Clavicula quite to the Middle; in its middle Part from the whole Breast-bone, and those Cartilages that adhere to it; in its lower Part from the Cartilages of the sixth, seventh, and eighth Ribs. After its large and membranous Rise, grown more fleshy and thick, it descends to the Shoulder-bone, and at last, by a short, but very thick, strong, and broad Tendon, is gradually knit to it, under its Head, between the Deltoides and the Biceps. Its Office is to move the Shoulder-bone forwards, and towards the Breast.
36. *Caracoides*. It rises from the caracoidic Process of the Scapula, whence it proceeds and inserts it self in the Middle of the Shoulder-bone, which it draws upwards, and forwards to the Breast.
37. *Infra Spinatus, or sub Scapularis inferior*. It is seated between the Spine and the hind Rib of the Scapula, filling that Cavity. It rises fleshy from the Bottom of the Scapula and its lower Process; thence growing less, as does the Scapula, with a short broad Tendon it is inserted into the fourth Ligament of the Shoulder. It moves the Scapula backwards and upwards.
38. *Sub Scapularis, or Immerfus*. It cleaves to the inner Side of the Scapula and the Ribs, and thus no where appearing, is joined to some of the axillary Ligaments, working the Back towards the Shoulders.
39. *Rotundus minor*. It rises from the lower Side of the Scapula, and is inserted in the lower Neck of the Shoulder, working it upwards towards the Back.



*Pedis anterioris Cubitique Motores, quamquam plures sint, quoniam haud magni Momenti sunt, quatuordecim tantum statuemus.*

*The Movers of the Fore-foot and the Cubit or Shank, though they are many, yet as all are not of the same Moment, we shall take notice only of fourteen of them.*

40. Biceps. Duplici Origine: altero exteriorius, tendinoso rotundoque nascente e superiore Cavitate Scapulæ; altero ex anchora-formi ejusdem Processu, partim nervoso, partim carnosus, sed latiorique primo. Inde carnosus juxta interiorius Axillaris Caput descendens, superiori Cubiti Capiti anteriorius paulumque interiorius innectitur, quod antrosum, sursum, introrsumque paulum movet.

40. Biceps. It has a double Origin; one outwardly, arising tendinous and round from the upper Cavity of the Scapula; the other from its anchor-form Process; partly nervous, partly fleshy, but broader nearer the Rise. Thence it descends fleshy near the inner Head of the Shoulder, and a little lower and forwarder is inserted in the upper Head of the Cubit, which it moves forwards, upwards, and a little inwards.

41. Brachiaeus internus. Introrsum sub Bicipite situs, aliquantumque brevior eo; carnosus tamen admodum. Oritur prope Finem Deltoides, in Medio ferè Scapulæ, cui firmiter inhaeret. Inde priori similis Extensione exit ad anteriorem Cubiti Partem prope Caput ejus, ibique insertus sursum illud agit.

41. Brachiaeus internus. Seated inwardly under the Biceps, and a little shorter than that, but very fleshy. It rises near the End of the Deltoides, almost in the Middle of the Scapula, to which it firmly cleaves. Then with an Extension like the former, it proceeds to the fore Part of the Cubit near its Head, and, being there inserted, works it upwards.

42. Longus. Largus, fortisque oritur, partim carnosus partimque nervosus, ex interioriore Costa Scapulæ: Inde descendens per posteriorem Axillaris Partem, Cubiti Processui inferitur, Cubitum extendit.

42. Longus. It rises large and strong, partly fleshy and partly nervous, from the inner Rib of the Scapula. Thence descending by the hinder Part of the Shoulder, it is inserted in the Process of the Cubitus, which it extends.

43. Brevis. Oritur è posteriore Parte Cerviceque Axillaris, & sequens priorem Cursum, Cubito in eadem Parte, quæ Longus, insertus est, sed parumper inferiorius, idem quod prior agens.

43. Brevis. It rises from the hind Part of the Neck of the Shoulder, and following the Course of the former, is inserted in the Cubitus in the same Part, but a little lower. It has the same Office as the Longus.

44. Brachiaeus externus, qui aliis Pars Longi habetur, dum cum illo eundem Originem, Laborem, & Insertionem Partus est.

44. Brachiaeus externus, which some count a Part of the Longus, as its Origin, Office, and Insertions are the same.

45. Anconæus. Parvus Musculus, ex interioriore & posteriore Axillaris Parte ortus. Insertus est Cubito duorum Pollicum Latitudine a Processu cubitali. Idem cum Brevis agit.

45. Anconæus. A small Muscle, rising from the inner and hinder Part of the Shoulder. It is inserted in the Cubitus two Inches from the cubital Process, and has the same Office as the Brevis.

46. Cubitaeus internus. Oritur ex interiori Axillaris Capitulo, & interiorius Latus Cubiti persequens, interiori & posteriori Radii Capiti superiori inferitur, illudque flectit.

46. Cubitaeus internus. It rises from the inner Head of the Shoulder, and running along the inner Side of the Cubitus, is inserted in the inner and hinder upper Head of the Radius, which it bends.

47. Radiaeus internus. Eandem Originem, Laborem, & Insertionem cum priori habet.

47. Radiaeus internus. It has the same Origin, Office, and Insertion as the former.

48. Cubitaeus externus. Ab exteriori Capitulo Axillaris ortus, Cubitumque sequens, exteriori & anteriori superiori Radii Capiti Parti insertus, illud extendens.

48. Cubitaeus externus. Arising from the outer Head of the Shoulder, and running along the Cubitus, it is inserted in the outer, and upper fore Part of the Head of the Radius, which it extends.

49. Radiaeus externus. Similis modo dicto Ortu, Extensione, Insertione, & Opere.

49. Radiaeus externus. It resembles the last mentioned in its Rise, Extension, Insertion, and Use.

50. Plan-



50. Plantaris. Oritur carnosus ex inferiori Capitulo, sed citò in Tendinem abiens longum, Plantæ Pedis innexus est, illudque curvat.

51. Sublimis. Oritur ab interiori Capitulo Axillaris, & inseritur duobus illis superioribus Officulis, eorumque Appendici sub Radio. Pedem flectere Ufus ejus est.

52. Profundus. Ex superiore Parte Cubiti ortus, ultimo Lunato Officulo qui Ungulam induit insertus est. Pedem item flectit.

53. Extensor magnus. Oritur ab exteriori Capitulo Axillaris, & Tendo ejus anteriori exteriorique Parti tertii seu ultimi trium Officulorum Pedis innexus est. Pedem itaque extendere Ufui ille est.

*N. B.* Multitudo Tendinum plures in Pede Musculos esse arguit Motioni ejus inservientes, quos tamen obscuritas inutiles Instituto nostro reddit. Itaque iis prætermisiss ad alios transibimus, qui Partem conspicuam quandam Corporis constituent.

*Femur moventium 17 in utraque sunt.*

54. Psoas, five Lumbaris. (Femur intelligimus esse illud Os quod Coxendici jungitur.) Hic Musculus in Cavo Corporis situs est, circa Vertebrae Lumbarum. Carnosus oritur e duarum ultimarum Thoracis Vertebrae transversis Processibus, & tribus prioribus Lumbarum. Inde ad inferius Latus Ossis Ilii descendens, tandem in rotundum fortemque Tendinem abit, qui anteriori Parti inferioris Capitis Femoris Ossis superiori Parti insertus est. Femur antrorsum & parumper introrsum agit.

55. Iliacus internus. Oritur teneri carnosoque Tendine ex inferiore Latere Ilii Ossis, junctusque Tendine cum priori Musculo, in inferius Caput Rotatoris seu Femoris Ossis inseritur. Idem quod prior agit.

56. Pectinæus. Oritur largus & carnosus è Linea Ossis Pubis, perque Cartilaginem ejus, & insertus est interiore in Latere Femoris Ossis inferiore in Capite ejus. Levat introrsumque trahit Femoris Os.

57. Glutæus externus. Admodum carnosus oritur ex Vertebrae Lumbaribus, Spina Ossis Ilii, & Ossis Sacro. Postea oblique descendens, & super Femoris Juncturam & Cox-

50. Plantaris. It rises fleshy from the lower Head, but soon going off in a long Tendon, it is knit to the Bottom of the Foot, which it bends.

51. Sublimis. It rises from the inner Head of the Shoulder, and is inserted in the two upper small Bones, and in their Appendix below the Radius. Its Use is to bend the Foot.

52. Profundus. Rising from the upper Part of the Cubitus, it is inserted in the last Lunar bone which clothes the Hoof. It also bends the Foot.

53. Extensor magnus. It rises from the outer Head of the Shoulder, and its Tendon is knit to the outer fore Part of the third or last of the three Bones of the Foot. Consequently its Use is to extend the Foot.

*N. B.* The Multitude of Tendons proves there to be many other Muscles in the Foot which contribute to its Motion; but these are so obscure, that they can be of no Use in our present Design. Passing by them therefore, we will proceed to others, which constitute some visible Part of the Body.

*To move the Thighs there are 17 in each.*

54. Psoas, or the Loin-Muscle. (By the Thigh we mean that Bone which is joined to the Hip.) This Muscle is seated in the Hollow of the Body, about the Vertebrae of the Loins. It rises fleshy from the transverse Processes of the two last Vertebrae of the Thorax, and the three former of the Loins. Thence descending to the lower Side of the Os Ilium, it goes off at last in a round and strong Tendon, which is inserted in the fore Part of the lower Head of the Thigh-bone at the Top. It works the Thigh forwards, and a little inwards.

55. Iliacus internus. It rises with a tender and fleshy Tendon from the lower Side of the Os Ilium, and being joined by a Tendon with the preceding Muscle, is inserted in the lower Head of the Rotator or Thigh-bone. It has the same Office as the former.

56. Pectinæus. It rises large and fleshy from the Line of the Os Pubis, and by its Cartilage, and is inserted in the inner Side of the Thigh-bone in its lower Head. It lifts and draws inwards the Bone of the Thigh.

57. Glutæus externus. It rises very fleshy from the Vertebrae of the Loins, the Spine of the Os Ilium, and the Os Sacrum. Then descending obliquely, and extending upon endicem



endicem extendens haud jam tam largus donec in fortem definens Tendinem interiori Femoris Ossis Lateri supra Juncturam cum Tibia inseritur, quam fere attingere videtur. Femur retrorsum trahit & extendit.

58. Glutæus Medius. In Homine sub priori qui cæteris major est latet, sed longè aliter in Equo. Apparet in hoc major cæteris, inque Medio aliorum duorum qui æque spectandi sunt. Oritur largus carnosusque parum altius altero a Spina Ossis Ilii in anteriore ejus Parte, & inde descendens super Juncturam Femoris oblique repit usque ad Caput inferius Femoris Ossis, in cujus exteriori Parte Tendine forti, largo, & membranoso insertus est. Usus ejus est, extendere Femur, & paululum vertat extrorsum, uti scilicet Equus se habet urinando.

59. Glutæus minor. Cum modo dicto eundem habet Originem in Spina Ossis Ilii. Initio rotundus & carnosus est, sed latior fit procedens; oblique descendit ad Latus secundi seu Medii, inque Caput inferius Femoris insertus est, exteriori in Parte. Idem quod Medius agit.

60. Triceps, aut Quadriceps. A quatuor Principiis. Primum oritur in superiori Parte Ossis Pubis, admodum nervosus, & descendens insertus est in inferius Caput Os-

61. sis Femoris. Secundum, ab inferiori ejusdem Ossis Latere largus & carnosus existit, & in interiori Parte Femoris Ossis, inferiori in Capite, sed paulum altius quam 62. primus insertus est. Tertium, Caput carnosum nervosumque aliquando a tota inferiori Parte Coxendicis Ossis circum Foramen ejus, & prope secundi Caput.

63. Quartum, emanat nervoso carnosoque Origine a Processu Coxendicis, posteaque inferiorem Femoris Ossis Ductum sequens, in rotundum Tendinem exit, qui cum primi Capitis Tendine, in inferiore Capite Femoris Ossis insertus est. Hi Musculi Femur introrsum continent, & confirmant trahuntque, neque illis alius Usus est.

64. Iliacus externus, aut Pyriformis. Inter tres sequentes, qui simul uno Nomine Quadrigemini dicuntur, longissimus est. Oritur ab inferiori & exteriori Parte Ossis Sacri, inde deorsum vergit, ad posteriorem

the Joint of the Thigh and the Hip, not being now so large, it ends by Degrees in a strong Tendon, and is inserted together with the Tibia, above the Joint, in the inner Side of the Thigh-bone, seeming almost to touch the Tibia. It draws back and extends the Thigh.

58. Glutæus Medius. In a Man it lies hid by the foregoing, which is larger than the rest; but in a Horse it is quite otherwise. Here the Medius is the largest, and lies between the other two, which are equally obvious to the Sight. It rises large and fleshy a little above the other, from the Spine of the Os Ilium in its fore Part, and thence descending upon the Joint of the Thigh, it creeps obliquely to the lower Head of the Thigh-bone, in the outer Part of which it is inserted by a strong, large, and membranous Tendon. Its Use is to extend the Thigh, and bend it a little backwards, just as a Horse stands when he stales.

59. Glutæus minor. It has the same Origin with the former in the Spine of the Os Ilium; is round and fleshy at the Beginning, but grows broader as it proceeds: It descends obliquely to the Side of the second or Medius, and is inserted in the lower Head of the Thigh-bone, in its outer Part. It has the same Office as the Medius.

60. Triceps, or Quadriceps. It has four Beginnings. The first rises in the upper Part of the Os Pubis, is very nervous, and descending is inserted in the lower Head

61. of the Thigh-bone: The second has its Origin from the lower Side of the same Bone, is large and fleshy, and is inserted in the inner Part of the Thigh-bone, in the lower Head, but a little higher than

62. the former: The third has a fleshy and nervous Head, and rises sometimes from the whole lower Part of the Hip-bone about its Orifice, and near the Head of

63. the second: The fourth springs from a nervous and fleshy Origin at the Process of the Hip, and afterwards following the lower Duct of the Thigh-bone, it ends in a round Tendon, which is inserted with the Tendon of the Head of the first, in the lower Head of the Thigh-bone. These Muscles keep the Thigh in, and strengthen and draw it; which is their only Use.

64. Iliacus externus, or Pyriformis. Among the three following, which all go by the common Name of Quadrigemini, it is the longest. It rises from the lower and outer Part of the Os Sacrum; thence inclines

D d

Rotatoris



Rotatoris Partem, cujus inferioris Capitis 65. exteriori Parti insertus est. Secundus & 66. tertius Nomine particulari carent, sed ambo ex Ossis Ischii Protuberatione oriuntur, atque cum priore eodem loco inserti 67. runtur. Quartus horum Quadratus dicitur; carnosior latiorque cæteris est. Oritur ex interiori Parte Protuberationis Ossis Ischii, & distat ad tres Pollices ab alteris; sed Insertio ejus eadem est. Usus horum Musculorum est Femur extrorsum movendi.

68. Deltoides Femoris. Oritur ab exteriori Ossis Ilii Protuberatione acri initio, sed cito latius panditur in triangulari Forma, largoque & membranoso Tendine exteriori Femoris Ossis Parti innectitur. Eundem quem Quadrigemini Actum habet, nempe exterius vertendi Femoris Ossis, totumque cum Tibia Femoris Appendicem.

69. Obturator internus: Ab Officio quod præstat in explendo Cavitate inter Femoris & Coxendicis Pubisque Ossis. Oritur circum internum Latus Foraminis in Offe Ilio, inde procedens per Extremitates Ossis Coxendicis, ubi cum Femore articulatur, in Rotatoris Cavitate insertus est. Femur oblique circum agit.

70. Obturator externus. Ab Extremo Latere circum Foramen Modo dicto oritur, lato & carnosio Initio. Cervici postea Femoris Ossis circum Inflexus, cum modo dicto in eadem Cavitate magni Rotatoris insertus est. Idem quod prior agit.

*Tibiæ Motorum decem sunt in utroque Femore.*

71. Membranofus. Exoritur a superiori Parte Ossis Ilii exterius, & prope Processum Ossis Femoris membranofus factus latiorque (inde Fascia lata dictus, quoniam totum ferme Femur involvit) descendens ad Patellam usque, illam involvens, tandem Tibiæ Ossis anteriori Parti inferitur. Extendit Femur, & oblique parumper extrorsum illud vertit.

72. Longus. Sartorio in Homine respondet, acri Origine & Tendine forti ex anteriore superiorique Parte Ossis Ilii Appendicis oritur, & dum oblique deorsum ad interius Femoris Latus extendit, carnosior efficitur, talisque continuus est usque dum

downwards, to the hinder Part of the Rotator, in the outer Part of the Head of 65. which it is inserted. The second and 66. third want a particular Name, but both rise from the Protuberance of the Os Ischium, and are inserted with the first in 67. the same Place. The fourth of them is called Quadratus; and is more fleshy and large than the others. It rises from the inner Part of the Protuberance of the Os Ischium, and is three Inches distant from the others; but has the same Insertion. The Use of these Muscles is to move the Thigh outwards.

68. Deltoides Femoris. It rises from the outer Protuberance of the Os Ilium with a sharp Beginning, but soon grows wider in a triangular Form, and with a large and membranous Tendon is knit to the outer Part of the Thigh-bone. It has the same Action as the Quadrigemini, which is to turn the Bones of the Thigh outwards, as also the whole Appendix of the Thigh with the Tibia:

69. Obturator internus: So called from its filling the Cavity between the Bones of the Thigh, the Hip, and the Pubis. It rises about the inner Side of the Orifice in the Os Ilium; thence proceeding by the Extremities of the Hip bone, where it is articulated with the Thigh, it is inserted in the Cavity of the Rotator. It works the Thigh about obliquely.

70. Obturator externus. It rises from the Extremity about the Orifice in the Manner above mentioned, with a broad and fleshy Beginning. It is afterwards inserted about the Inflexions of the Thigh-bone, in the above Manner, in the same Cavity with the great Rotator.

*The Movers of the Tibia are ten in each Thigh.*

71. Membranofus. It rises from the upper and outer Part of the Os Ilium, and near the Process of the Thigh-bone growing more membranous and large (whence it is called the broad Fascia, because it involves almost the whole Thigh) it descends to and involves the Patella, and at last is inserted in the fore Part of the Shin-bone. It extends the Thigh, and turns it obliquely a little outwards.

72. Longus. It answers to the Sartorius in a Man, and rises from the fore and upper Part of the Os Ilium, with a sharp Origin and a strong Tendon; and while it obliquely extends downwards to the inner Side of the Thigh, it becomes more fleshy, Tibiæ



Tibiæ Capiti superiori appropinquat; illic, latiori Tendine, interiori ejus Lateri insertus est. Hujus Musculi Opere non solum extenditur Femur, sed & introrsum fertur.

73. Rectus. Oritur ex inferiore Margine Ilii Ossis, rectaque deorsum fertur rotundus carnosusque usque ad inferius Caput Femoris Ossis, & Rotulam complectens Processui anteriori Capitis superioris Tibiæ innectitur, quem extendit antrorsumque agit.

74. Vastus externus. Oritur largus & carnosus e Radice Rotatoris magni, seu Trochanteris, firmiterque adhærens Femoris Ossis per ejus Longitudinem, descendensque denique, haud longe ab Insertione ejus, in Tendinem latum firmumque abiens, Recti Tendini admixtus; Patellæ inhærens tandem in Capite superiori innectitur Tibiæ, sed in exteriori ejus Parte.

75. Vastus internus. Oritur è Radice minoris Trochanteris, atque Cervice Femoris Ossis, Initio nervoso. Postea carnosior effectus ad Rotulam usque descendens, cui cum aliis Tendinibus Recti Vastique externi commixtus inhærens tandem eundem Insertionis Locum adipiscitur. Hic cum Recto & Vasto externo idem agunt.

76. Biceps. Oritur acuto nervosoque Tendine ab Appendice Coxendicis, inque exteriorem Femoris Partem delatus circa Medium ejus carnosior factus, & secundum quasi Caput accipiens, inde descendens adhuc largior effectus, nervosusque exterius, donec in fortem Tendinem abit, qui insertus est in exteriori & posteriori Parte Appendicis Tibiæ. Flectit Tibiam retrorsum agendo.

77. Semimembranosus. Oritur ex Capitulo Coxendicis, teneri & membranoso Capite; inde descendit in posterius Femoris Latus donec Tibiam tangit, cui in posteriori Parte rotundo Tendine insertus est. Idem Officium cum prædicto habet.

78. Seminervosus. A Substantia. Ex eadem Coxendicis Parte æque procedentes duo enati, inde oblique in posteriori interiorique Parte Femoris Ossis descendens carnosior fit; Tendo ejus medio Tibiæ Ossis inseritur. Retrorsum Pedem trahit,

and continues to be so till it comes near the upper Head of the Tibia; there, with a broader Tendon, it is inserted in its inner Side. By the Help of this Muscle the Thigh is not only extended, but is likewise pulled inwards.

73. Rectus. It rises from the lower Edge of the Os Ilium, and proceeds round and fleshy directly downwards to the lower Head of the Os Femoris; then, embracing the Rotula, it is knit to the fore Process of the upper Head of the Tibia, which it extends and works forwards.

74. Vastus externus. It rises large and fleshy from the Root of the great Rotator, or Trochanter; and sticking close to the Thigh-bone its whole Length, and afterwards descending, not far from its Insertion, it goes off in a broad and hard Tendon, which mingles with the Tendon of the Rectus; then cleaving to the Patella, it is at last knit in the upper Head of the Tibia, but in its outer Part.

75. Vastus internus. It rises from the Root of the lesser Trochanter, and the Neck of the Thigh-bone, with a nervous Beginning. Grown afterwards more fleshy, it descends to the Rotula, to which cleaving, and mingling with the other Tendons of the Rectus and the Vastus externus, it reaches at last the same Place of Insertion. It has the same Office as the Rectus and the Vastus externus.

76. Biceps. It rises with a sharp and nervous Tendon from the Appendix of the Hip, and proceeding to the outer Part of the Hip, it grows more fleshy towards the Middle, and receiving as it were a second Head, it thence descends larger, and more nervous outwardly, till it goes off in a strong Tendon, which is inserted in the outer and back Part of the Appendix of the Tibia. It bends the Tibia by working it backwards.

77. Semimembranosus. It rises from the little Head of the Coxendix, with a tender and membranous Origin; thence it descends in the back Side of the Thigh till it touches the Tibia, in which it is inserted in the hinder Part with a round Tendon. It has the same Office with the preceding.

78. Seminervosus. From its half nervous Substance. They both proceed alike from the same Part of the Hip, and then descending obliquely become more fleshy in the hinder and inner Part of the Thigh, and are inserted by a Tendon in the middle Bone of the Tibia. They pull the Foot back.

79. Gra-



79. Gracilis. E Medio Pubis Ossis largo Tendine oritur, ad ejus prope Juncturam, & descendens ad interius Latus Femoris donec pervenit ad Tibiam, cujus etiam interiori Parti insertus est prope Modo dicto.

80. Poplitæus. Ab exteriori Capite Femoris nervosus latusque oritur, posteaque carnosior factus, Femoris juxta Offem descendens, Tibiæ Capitis posteriori Parti interius innectitur. Oblique Tibiam movet hic Musculus.

*Musculi Fibulam moventes, & totam Pedis Appendicem, 11 sunt.*

81. Tibiæus Anticus. A Situatione ejus sic dictus. Oritur carnosus & acutus e superiori Appendice Tibiæ, & firmiter huic Ossi inhærens per ejus Longitudinem, in ejus Fine in Tendinem abit; qui Tendo sub Cartilagine qui circum Juncturam volvitur perrepens, in duo aut tres dividitur Tendines, qui cuncti Fibulæ in-nexi sunt anteriori in Parte. Pedem an-trorsum levat & agit.

82. Peronæus Anticus. Oritur ex superiori Appendice Tibiæ, perque Ossis Longitudinem sese extendens ad inferius Caput ejus in Tendinem vertitur, qui Lateri exteriori adjacendo Juncturam transit, & Fibulæ exteriori Parti inseritur, quam cum Pede antrorsum & parumper extrorsum agit.

83. Gemellus externus. Oritur fortis, largus & tendinosus ex inferiore Capite Femoris, & ab ejus exteriori Capite; nam duplicem habet Originem, quæ duo quidem Capita tantisper separatim procedentes, ante medium adhuc Longitudinem eorum junguntur, inque unum Tendinem cohærent, qui latus & fortis est. Inferitur autem Ossi illo Appendici Radii qui Talum representat. Fibulam extendere Officium ejus, & retrorsum illud agere.

84. Gasterocnemius, seu Gemellus internus. Sub priori fitus est, & oritur a posteriori & interiori Processu Capitis Tibiæ, & forti nervosoque Tendine quidem. Postea in Medio fortior evadit, & tandem in Tendinem, qui cum priori conjunctus eandem Insertionem facit actumque habet.

79. Gracilis. It rises with a large Tendon from the Middle of the Os Pubis, near its Joint, and descends on the inner Side of the Thigh, till it comes to the Tibia, to the inner Part of which it is inserted almost in the Manner above described.

80. Poplitæus. It rises nervous and broad from the outward Head of the Thigh, grows more fleshy afterwards, and descending by the Thigh-bone, is knit to the hinder Part of the Head of the Tibia, which it moves obliquely.

*The Muscles moving the Fibula, or Shank, and the whole Appendix of the Foot, are 11 in Number.*

81. Tibiæus Anticus. So called from its Situation. It rises fleshy and sharp from the upper Appendix of the Tibia, and sticking very close to the said Bone its whole Length, goes off at the End of it in a Tendon; which Tendon creeping under the Cartilage, that is rolled about the Joint, is divided into two or three Tendons, which are all knit to the Fibula in its fore Part. It lifts the Foot and works it forwards.

82. Peronæus Anticus. It rises from the upper Appendix of the Tibia, and extending itself the Length of that Bone, at its lower Head is converted to a Tendon, which lying close to the outer Side, passes the Joint, and is inserted in the outer Part of the Fibula, which, with the Foot, it works forwards, and a little outwards.

83. Gemellus externus. It rises strong, large, and tendinous from the lower Head of the Thigh, and from the outward Head of the same; for it has a double Beginning. These two Branches proceeding separately a little way, before they have run half their Length are joined, and stick together in one Tendon, which is broad and strong. It is inserted in that Bone which represents a Heel, and is an Appendix of the Radius. Its Office is to extend the Fibula, and to work it outwards.

84. Gasterocnemius, or Gemellus internus. It is seated under the former, and rises from the hinder and inner Process of the Head of the Tibia, with a very strong and nervous Tendon. Growing stronger in the Middle, it goes off again at last in a Tendon, which, being joined with the preceding, has the same Insertion, and the same Office.

85. Plantaris.



85. *Plantaris.* Carnosus & rotundus (quavis aliquando tener) inter duos priores oritur, & quidem ab inferioris Capitis Tibiæ posteriori Parte, inter duos Musculos priores eorumque Tendines deorsum extenditur, & super Juncturam vergens, inque posterius Fibulæ Latus descendens, tandem sub ultimis duobus abiens Musculis tertio innectitur, retrorsum Pedem agens. Hi Musculi illum magnum Tendinem, quæ Chorda magna dicitur, in Talo efficiunt.
86. *Tibialis posticus.* Oritur è superioris Capitis Tibiæ interiore Parte, & inde descendens inter prius dictos Musculorum Tendines, per Juncturam in Fibulæ interiori Latus decurrens usque ad tertium Os, ubi sub Planta inferitur. Introrsum oblique Pedem movet.
87. *Peronæus posticus.* Ex superiori & posteriori Tibiæ Capite oritur, unde descendens in exteriori Offis Latere firmiter illi adhæret, donec Medium ejus attingit; inde tendinosus factus, cumque Antici Peronæi Tendine descendens, in exteriori Parte Fibulæ eam transgredit donec in Plantam Ungulæ inferitur. Oblique extrorsum Pedem movet.
88. *Flexor longus.* Oritur ex superioris Capitis posteriore Parte, Medioque tendinosus factus, in anteriorem ejus Partem descendens super Juncturam Fibulæ & Tibiæ, totam Longitudinem Pedis transmigrans usque ad Ungulæ Os, cui infra insertus est. Pedem retrorsum movet, & extendit.
89. *Flexor brevis.* Oritur a Fibulæ superioris Capitis posteriore Latere, sub Protuberatione seu Talo, eandemque Insertionem & Motionem habet cum priori.
90. *Longus Tensor.* A Femore sub Patella internus oritur, perque anteriorem Partem hujus Offis descendens, perque Longitudinem Fibulæ, trium Ossium inferiorum in ultimo Offe anteriori Parte superius insertus est. Pedem antrorsum extendit.
91. *Extensor brevis.* Ex anteriore Parte Ligamenti annularis oritur, illius qui Fibulam ambit superiori in Junctura; descendens cum priori eandem Insertionem & actum habet.
85. *Plantaris.* It rises fleshy and round (though sometimes tender) between the two former, and from the hinder Part of the lower Head of the Tibia; is extended downwards between the said two Muscles and their Tendons, and turning over the Joint, and descending into the hinder Side of the Fibula, at last, going off under the last two Muscles, is knit to a third, working the Foot backwards. These Muscles make that large Tendon in the Heel, which is called the Chord.
86. *Tibialis posticus.* It rises from the internal Part of the upper Head of the Tibia, and thence descends between the forementioned Tendons of the Muscles, running by the Joint to the inner Side of the Fibula quite to the third Bone, where it is inserted under the Bottom of the Foot. It moves the Foot obliquely inwards.
87. *Peronæus posticus.* It rises from the upper and hinder Head of the Tibia, whence it descends to the outer Side of the Bone, to which it sticks very close, till it comes to the Middle of it; thence, grown tendinous, and descending with the Tendon of the Peronæus Anticus in the outer Part of the Fibula, which it crosses, it is at last inserted in the Bottom of the Hoof. It moves the Foot obliquely outwards.
88. *Flexor longus.* It rises from the inner Part of the upper Head, and grown tendinous in the Middle, descends in the fore Part upon the Joint of the Fibula and the Tibia, wandering over the whole Length of the Foot to the Bone of the Hoof, in which it is inserted below. It moves the Foot backwards, and extends it.
89. *Flexor brevis.* It rises from the hinder Side of the upper Head of the Fibula, under the Protuberance or Heel, and has the same Insertion and Motion as the preceding.
90. *Longus Tensor.* It rises from the Thigh below under the Patella, and descending by the fore Part of the said Bone, and along the Fibula, it is inserted above in the fore Part of the last of the three Bones that form the lower Foot. It extends the Foot forwards.
91. *Extensor brevis.* It rises from the fore Part of the annular Ligament, that Ligament which encompasses the Fibula in its upper Joint, and descending with the preceding, has the same Insertion and the same Office.



*Capitis Musculi 25 sunt Paria.*

92. Oculorum Motioni tria Paria inserviunt. Duo qui eos aperiunt, sunt sita in Ossis superiori Margine, qui Oculos Cavitate sua amplectitur.
93. Secundum Par, qui claudunt eos, circum Palpebras sita sunt, ita ut illas includant, & affixæ interius Margini circulari.
94. Tertium Par, quod vel unus Musculus quibusdam habetur, haud propriè Oculis inservit, sed tantum accidentaliter, & ille est frontalis.
97. Nasum movent 4 Paria. Abducentium unum dicitur Par. Secundum sursum attrahens Par etiam quibusdam Deltoides dicitur; in Medio Nasi dividuntur.
99. Tertium Par adducit Nasum, & in anteriori Parte Nasi supra Labrum; & 100. quartum Par, quod idem agit, intra Nasum situm est.
101. Labia moventur septem Paria sunt. Quadratus detrahens Labia fere ipsa efficit in Latere eorum. Secundum, Follaris seu Bucca, totum Latus occupat ad Oculos usque, & natus ex superiori, 103. inferiori Maxillæ insertus est. Tertium Par attollentium Labia est, in anteriora superioris Maxillæ. Quartum Par Abducentium est, sub Jugali Osse or- 105. tus. Quintum Par Jugale, seu Zygomaticum, oritur ex Processu Ossis Jugalis. Hæ omnia superius Labrum mo- 106. vent. Sextum Par Deprimentes sunt. Inferioribus Labris inservit, oritur ex 107. Lateribus Maxillarum inferiorum. Septimum Par oblique detrahens est paulum, paulum sub illo situm est.
108. Maxillam inferiorem movent quinque Paria. Temporalis in Temporis Osse oritur, & minori Processui Maxillæ in- 109. feritur, sursumque illum trahit. Secundus Deprimens est. Oritur ex Styli seu Maxillæ-formis Officulis Temporis Ossis seu Occipitis, & posteriori Costæ Maxillarum insertus est; deorsum illos 110. trahit. Mastoideus, ex superiori Maxilla ortus, in inferiorem exterius innectitur.
111. Manducando inservit. Pterigoideum post hos positum Cervicem versus videmus, primoque externum, secundo sub illo

*The Muscles of the Head are 25 Pair.*

92. There are three Pair that serve to the Motion of the Eyes. Two that open them are seated in the upper Margin of the Bone which receives the Eye in its Cavity or Socket.
93. The second Pair, which shuts them, are seated about the Eyelids, so as to inclose them; and fastened within to the circular Margin.
94. The third Pair, which some take only for one Muscle, does not properly officiate for the Eye, but only accidentally, and that is the frontal Muscle.
97. Four Pair move the Nose. One is called the adducent Pair: The second, the Pair that draws up, and by some the Deltoides, which are divided in the Middle of the Nose. The third is the adducent Pair, seated in the fore Part of the Nose, 100. over the Lip: The fourth Pair, which has the same Office, is situated among the Bones of the Nose.
101. There are seven Pair that move the Lips. The Quadratus draws the Lips back, and almost forms the Sides of them.
102. Secondly, the Follaris or Bucca possesses the whole Cheek up to the Eyes, and rising from the upper, is inserted in the 103. lower Jaw. The third Pair draw the Lips up, in the fore Part of the upper 104. Jaw. The fourth Pair are the Abducents, and rise under the Os Jugale.
105. The fifth is the Jugal Pair, or Zygomaticum, which rises from the Process of the Os Jugale. All these move the 106. upper Lip. The sixth Pair are the Depressors. They serve the lower Lips, and rise from the Sides of the lower 107. Jaws. The seventh Pair draw obliquely back a little, and are seated somewhat under the former.
108. To move the lower Jaw there are five Pair. The temporal Muscle rises in the Temporal-bone, and is inserted in the lesser Process of the Jaw, and draws it 109. upwards. The second Pair are the Depressors. They rise from the little Bones of the Style, or Jaw-like-bone of the Temples or Occiput, and are inserted in the hinder Protuberance of the Jaws, 110. which they draw downwards. The Mastoideus, rising from the upper Jaw, is outwardly knit into the under. Its Use is in 111. chewing. After these is the Pterigoideum, placed towards the Neck, the first the external, and under that the internal



112. internum. Ab Offe Alæ-fimili ortus sub Jugali, inferiori Maxillæ inferuntur. Dentes femovit, feu aperit Os, & antrorsum Maxillam inferiorem movit.
113. Aures quatuor Par reguntur. Primum Par attollens dicitur. A frontis Musculo antrorsum oritur, & Auri in Radice insertus est. Detrahens secundus est. Ex mamillari Processu oritur, & inferius in Radice Auris necitur triplici Tendine. Tertius Aures Adducens est, Pars creditur Quadrati Labiorum esse. Abducens ultimum Par est. Oritur ex Occipite, & Auri antrorsum insertus est, retrorsum Aures vertit.

*Explicationis Finis.*

112. One. They rise from the Wing-like bone under the Os Jugale, and are inserted in the lower Jaw. It separates the Teeth, or opens the Mouth, and moves the lower Jaw forwards.
113. Four Pair govern the Ears. The first are the Drawers-up. They rise from the forehead Muscle forwards, and are inserted in the Root of the Ear. The second Pair draw back. They rise from the mamillary Process, and are knit below in the Root of the Ear with a triple Tendon. The third Pair are the Adducents, and are taken for Part of the Quadratus Labiorum. The last are the Abducents. They rise from the Occiput, and are inserted in the fore Part of the Ear, which they turn back.

*End of the Explanation.*

*Sequitur simplex Musculorum, quod cuius Parti inserviunt, quidque agunt Explicatio Brevior.*

*Capiti inservientes, & quidem primum Oculis.*

- |              |   |    |
|--------------|---|----|
| 1. Aperiens  | — | 92 |
| 2. Claudens  | — | 94 |
| 3. Frontalis | — | 96 |

*Nasum moventes.*

- |                      |   |     |
|----------------------|---|-----|
| 1. Abducens          | — | 97  |
| 2. Sursum trahens    | — | 98  |
| 3. Adducens exterior | — | 99  |
| 4. Adducens interior | — | 100 |

*Labia moventes.*

- |                        |   |     |
|------------------------|---|-----|
| 1. Quadratus detrahens | — | 101 |
| 2. Bucca feu Follis    | — | 102 |
| 3. Attollens           | — | 103 |
| 4. Abducens            | — | 104 |
| 5. Jugale              | — | 105 |
| 6. Deprimens           | — | 106 |
| 7. Detrahens obliquus  | — | 107 |

*Maxillam movent inferiorem,*

- |                          |   |     |
|--------------------------|---|-----|
| 1. Temporalis            | — | 108 |
| 2. Deprimens             | — | 109 |
| 3. Mastoides             | — | 110 |
| 4. Pterigoidæus exterior | — | 111 |
| 5. Pterigoidæus interior | — | 112 |

*Aurium Musculi.*

- |              |   |     |
|--------------|---|-----|
| 1. Attollens | — | 113 |
| 2. Detrahens | — | 114 |
| 3. Adducens  | — | 115 |
| 4. Abducens  | — | 116 |

*Here follows a simple and short Explanation of the Muscles, the Number of them to each Part, and their Offices.*

*Of the Muscles of the Head, and first those of the Eyes.*

**T**HE Opener.  
The Shutter.  
The frontal Muscle.

*To move the Nose.*

The abducent Muscle.  
The Puller-up.  
The external adducent Muscle.  
The internal.

*To move the Lips.*

The four-square Drawer.  
The Trumpet or Bellows.  
The Lifter-up.  
The Abducer.  
The jugal Muscle.  
The Depresser.  
The oblique Drawer.

*The lower Jaw is moved by,*

The temporal Muscle.  
The Depresser.  
The Masseters or Chewers.  
The external } Wing-like Muscle.  
The internal }

*Muscles of the Ear.*

The Lifter-up.  
The Puller-back.  
The Adducer.  
The Abducer.

*Caput*



*Caput moventes sunt antrorsum.*

1. Sternoides ——— 1  
2. Obliquus inferior ——— 8

*Retrorsum.*

1. Splenius ——— 2  
2. Complexus ——— 3  
3. Parvus & crassus ——— 4  
4. Rectus major ——— 5  
5. Rectus minor ——— 6  
8—6. Obliquus superior ——— 7

*N. B.* Hi Musculi si ambo agunt id efficere dicuntur, sed si ex uno Latere solus quidam agit, semper in suam Partem Caput flectit.

*Colli sequuntur Motores.**Retrorsum.*

1. Spinatus ——— 9  
2. Transversalis ——— 10  
3. Cucullaris ——— 27

*Antrorsum.*

1. Longus Colli ——— 11  
5—2. Scalenus ——— 12

*Idem quod diximus de Capitis Motoribus, quod nempe singulus in suum Latus movet, cum ambo aut antrorsum aut retrorsum id agant, hic verum est.*

*Thoracem movent,**Contrahendo,*

1. Intercostrales interni & externi 3, 2, 25, 6  
2. Triangularis ——— 17  
3. Sacro-lumbus ——— 20

*Dilatando Respirationi,*

1. Subclavium ——— 13  
2. Major Serratus Anticus ——— 14  
3. Serratus superior Posticus ——— 15  
4. Serratus Posticus inferior ——— 16  
5. Cervicalis descendens ——— 19  
40—6. Diaphragma ——— 18

*Dorsum Intendentes.*

1. Longissimus Dorsi ——— 21  
2. Quadratus ——— 22  
3. Sacer ——— 24  
4—4. Semi-spinatus ——— 23

*Scapulam movent,**Sursum & antrorsum,*

1. Levator ——— 28

*Sursum & retrorsum,*

1. Rhomboides ——— 30

*Antrorsum,*

1. Serratus minor Anticus ——— 29

*Retrorsum seu sursum Dorsum versus,*

- 4—1. Cucullaris ——— 27

*These move the Head forwards.*

- The Breast-bone Muscle.  
The lower oblique Muscle.

*Backwards.*

- The Splenius.  
The complex Muscle.  
The small thick Muscle.  
The greater } right Muscle.  
The lesser }  
The upper oblique Muscle.

*N. B.* When these Muscles act on both Sides, they perform the Office here assigned them; but if one of them only pulls, it always bends the Head towards its own Side.

*Here follow the Movers of the Neck.**Backwards.*

- The spinal } Muscle.  
The transverse }  
The Monk's Hood.

*Forwards.*

- The long Neck Muscle.  
The triangular Muscle.

What we remarked of the Movers of the Head, namely, that singly they draw the Head their own way, but both together either backwards or forwards, is true here.

*The Thorax or Chest is moved,**In contracting it, by*

- The internal and external Intercostrals.  
The triangular Breast Muscle.  
The Holy-Loin Muscle.

*In dilating it for Respiration, by*

- The Subclavian Muscle.  
The larger fore Saw-like Muscle.  
The upper hind Saw-like Muscle.  
The lower hind Saw-like Muscle.  
The descending Neck Muscle.  
The Midriff.

*The Benders of the Back.*

- The longest Back Muscle.  
The four-square Muscle.  
The holy Muscle.  
The semi-spinal Muscle.

*The Shoulder-blade is moved,**Upwards and forwards, by*

- The Lifter or Heaver.

*Upwards and backwards, by*

- The rhomboidal Muscle.

*Forwards, by*

- The lesser fore Saw-like Muscle.

- Backwards, or upwards towards the Back, by*  
The Monk's Hood.

*Humerum*



<i>Humerum movent,</i>			<i>The Shoulder is moved,</i>		
<i>Sursum seu antrorsum,</i>			<i>Upwards or forwards, by</i>		
1. Deltoides	—	31	The Delta-like triangular Muscle.		
2. Supra-spinatus	—	32	The upper spinal Muscle		
<i>Deorsum seu retrorsum,</i>			<i>Downwards or backwards, by</i>		
1. Latissimus	—	33	The very broad } Muscle. The larger round }		
2. Rotundus major	—	34			
<i>Antrorsum,</i>			<i>Forwards, by</i>		
1. Pectoralis	—	35	The pectoral } Muscle. The caracoidal }		
2. Caracoidæus	—	36			
<i>Retrorsum,</i>			<i>Backwards, by</i>		
1. Infra Spinatus	—	37	The inner spinal } The upper blade } Muscle. The lesser round }		
2. Sub Scapularis	—	38			
9—3. Rotundus minor	—	39			
Ultimi quinque Musculi non tam Scapulam quam Humerum movent.			The last five Muscles do not so much move the Shoulder-blade, as the Shoulder itself.		
<i>Cubiti Flexores id faciunt</i>			<i>The Movers of the Cubit-bone perform their Office</i>		
<i>Vel flectendo, ut</i>			<i>By bending it, as</i>		
1. Biceps	—	40	The double headed } Muscle. The inner arm }		
2. Brachiaëus internus	—	41			
<i>Vel extendendo, ut</i>			<i>Or by extending it, as</i>		
1. Longus	—	42	The long } The short } Muscle. The outer arm } The anconeal }		
2. Brevis	—	43			
3. Brachiaëus externus	—	44			
6—4. Anconæus	—	45			
<i>Radium movent Flexores.</i>			<i>These bend the Radius or Shank.</i>		
1. Cubitaëus internus	—	46	The inner Cubit } Muscle. The inner Shank }		
2. Radiæus internus	—	47			
<i>Et Extensores.</i>			<i>These extend it.</i>		
1. Cubitaëus externus	—	48	The outer Cubit } Muscle. The outer Shank }		
2. Radiæus externus	—	49			
<i>Trium Pedis Ossium Flexores.</i>			<i>The Benders of the three Bones of the Feet.</i>		
1. Sublimis	—	51	The sublime } The profound } Muscle. The solar }		
2. Profundus	—	52			
3. Plantaris	—	50			
<i>Extensores.</i>			<i>Their Extenders.</i>		
8—I. Extensor magnus	—	53	The large Pair.		
<i>Femoris Musculi.</i>			<i>Muscles of the Thigh.</i>		
<i>Flexores antrorsum.</i>			<i>To bend it forwards.</i>		
1. Pfoas	—	54	The Loin Muscle.		
2. Iliacus internus	—	55	The inner Haunch Muscle.		
<i>Sursum &amp; introrsum.</i>			<i>Upwards and inwards.</i>		
3. Pectinaëus	—	56	The Comb-like Muscle.		
<i>Retrorsum, seu Extendentes &amp; paulum extrorsum Vertentes.</i>			<i>To bend it backwards, or to extend and turn it a little outwards.</i>		
1. Glutæus major	—	57	The greater Buttock Muscle.		
2. Glutæus medius	—	58	The middle Buttock Muscle.		
3. Glutæus minor	—	59	The lesser Buttock Muscle.		
<i>Extrorsum Flexores.</i>			<i>To bend it outwards.</i>		
1. Quadrigeminus primus pyriformis	—	64	The Pear-like Muscle, or first of the 4 Twins.		
2. Quadrigeminus secundus	—	65	The second of the Quadrigemini.		
3. Quadrigeminus tertius	—	66	The third.		
			F f 4. Qua-		



4. Quadrigeminus quartus, seu Quadratus	67	The fourth, or the four-square Muscle.
5. Deltoides Femoris	68	The Delta-like Muscle of the Thigh.
<i>Introrsum Flexores.</i>		
1. Quadricipitis Pars prima	60	The first Head of the Quadriceps.
2. Eiusdem secunda	61	The second
3. ———— tertia	62	The third } of the same.
4. ———— quarta	63	The fourth }
<i>Oblique Flectentes.</i>		
1. Obturator externus	70	The outward Stopper, or Filler-up.
17—2. Obturator internus	69	The inward Stopper.
<i>Tibiae Musculi.</i>		
<i>Extensores.</i>		
1. Membranofus	71	The membranous
2. Longus	72	The long
3. Rectus	73	The right
4. Vastus externus	74	The vast external
5. Vastus internus	75	The vast internal
<i>Flexores.</i>		
1. Biceps	76	The two-headed
2. Semi-membranofus	77	The half membranous
3. Semi-nervofus	78	The half nervous
4. Gracilis	79	The slender
<i>Oblique Flectens.</i>		
10—1. Popliteus	80	The Ham Muscle.
<i>Radii Musculi.</i>		
<i>Flexores ejus sunt.</i>		
1. Tibialis Anticus	81	The fore tibial
2. Peronæus Anticus	82	The fore peroneal or fibular
<i>Extensores.</i>		
1. Gasterocnemius externus	83	The external
2. Gasterocnemius internus	84	The internal
3. Plantaris	85	The solar Muscle.
<i>Extrorsum oblique.</i>		
1. Tibialis posticus	86	The hind tibial
7—2. Peronæus posticus	87	The hind peroneal
<i>Inum Pedem moventes Musculi.</i>		
<i>Flexores.</i>		
1. Longus Flexor	88	The long
2. Brevis Flexor	89	The short
<i>Extensores.</i>		
1. Longus Extensor	90	The long
2. Brevis Extensor	91	The short

The Delta-like Muscle of the Thigh.

To bend it inwards.

The first Head of the Quadriceps.

The second

The third } of the same.

The fourth }

To bend it obliquely.

The outward Stopper, or Filler-up.

The inward Stopper.

Muscles of the Tibia or Leg.

Extenders.

The membranous

The long

The right

The vast external

The vast internal

Muscle.

Benders.

The two-headed

The half membranous

The half nervous

The slender

Muscle.

To bend it obliquely.

The Ham Muscle.

Muscles of the Radius.

Its Benders.

The fore tibial

The fore peroneal or fibular

Its Extenders.

The external

The internal

The solar Muscle.

Gasterocnemius.

Obliquely outwards.

The hind tibial

The hind peroneal

Muscle.

Muscles moving the lower Foot.

Benders.

The long

The short

Bender.

Extenders.

The long

The short

Extender.





*Characterum Musculos in Figuris Indican-  
tium Explicatio.*

*Explanation of the References that point out  
the Muscles in the Plates.*

P L A T E VI.

Fig. 1.

- A. Frontalis.  
B. Temporalis.  
C. Auris Motores, Ear Movers.  
D. Palpebras Moventes, Eyelid Movers.  
E. Philtra nominati Narium Motores } Nose  
F. Nares Adducens } Movers.  
G.  
H. Longum Par Colli.  
I. Scalenus, aut Triangularis.  
K. Trigemini, aut Complexus.  
L. Sternoides.  
M. Scapularium Musculorum Massa, Mass of  
scapulary Muscles.  
N. Pectorales Musculi.

- O. Deltoides Scapulæ.  
P. Dentatus major Anticus.  
Q. Serratus, aut Dentatus Posticus.  
R. Cucullaris, aut Trapezius.  
S. Sacro-Lumbaris.  
Z. Vastus externus.  
Δ. Glutæus anterior.  
Θ. Glutæus medius.  
Γ. Glutæus posterior.  
T. Longissimus Dorfi.  
U. Semi-Spinatus.  
W. Obliquus descendens.  
X. Deltoides Femoris.  
Y. Rectus.

P L A T E VII.

Fig. 2.

- A. Frontalis.  
B. Temporalis.  
C. Mastoides.  
D. Palpebrarum Motor.  
E. Philtrum Nares movens.  
F. Alter Narium Motor.  
G. Labia Claudens.  
H. Masseter Scalenus.  
I. Trigemini aut Complexus.  
K. Trigemini.  
L. Sternoides.  
M. Subclavius.  
N. Pectoralis.  
O. Deltoides Scapulæ.  
P. Dentatus major Anticus.  
Q. Trapezius.  
R. Dentatus posticus.  
S. Sacro-Lumbaris.  
T. Longus Dorfi.  
W. Obliquus descendens.  
V. Semi-spinatus.  
U. Processus cartilagineus Scapulæ, The  
cartilaginous Process of the Scapula.  
X. Deltoides Femoris.  
Y. Rectus.  
Z. Vastus externus.  
Δ. } anterior.  
Θ. } Glutæus } medius.  
Γ. } posterior.  
a. Triangularis seu Splenius.  
b. Spinatus.  
c. Complexi, aut Trigemini Partes.  
d. Supra-Spinatus Scapulæ.  
e. Spina Scapulæ.  
f. Infra-Spinatus Scapulæ

- g. Depressor Cubiti.  
h. Brachæus externus.  
i. Longus.  
k. Biceps.  
l. Longi, Bicipitis, & Brachæ Tendinis In-  
sertio; Insertion of the Tendon of the  
Longus, Biceps, and Brachæus.  
m. Cubitæus externus.  
n. Radiæus externus.  
o. Extensor magnus.  
p. Radiæus internus.  
q. Cubitæus internus.  
Δ. Transversalis Abdominis.  
Σ. Ventris Rectus.  
Ξ. Obliquus descendens.  
Π. Biceps Femoris.  
r. Gastrocnemius externus.  
s. Gastrocnemius internus.  
t. Tibius.  
u. Flexor Fibulæ.

Fig. 3.

- A. Mastoides.  
B. Philtrum.  
C. Labia Claudens.  
D. Cucullaris.  
E. Transversalis Colli.  
F. Spinatus Colli.  
G. Triangularis.  
H. Trigemini, aut Complexus.  
I. Sternoides.  
K. Subclavius.  
L. Deltoides Scapulæ.  
M. Processus cartilagineus Scapulæ.  
N. Spina Scapulæ.  
O. Supra-Spinatus.  
P. Infra-Spinatus.

Q. Biceps.



Q. Biceps.  
 R. Dentatus major anterior.  
 S. Longus Cubitalis.  
 T. Brachiaëus externus.  
 V. Dentatus posterior.  
 U. Sacro Lumbaris.  
 W. Longus Dorfi.  
 X. Obliquus ascendens.  
 Y. Obliquus descendens.  
 Z. Deltoides.  
 □. Rectus Abdominis.  
 Γ. Biceps Femoris.  
 Δ. Longissimi Dorfi Portio.  
 Θ. Glutæus anterior.

Λ. Medius Glutæus.  
 Σ. Glutæus posterior.  
 Π. Vastus externus.  
 Ξ. Biceps posterior.  
 Φ, Ω. Lividus aut Pectinalis.  
 †. Semi-nervofus.  
 α. Cubitæus externus.  
 β. Radiæus externus.  
 γ. Extensor magnus.  
 δ. Radiæus internus.  
 ε. Cubitæus internus.  
 ϕ. Peronæus anticus.  
 γ. Peronæus posticus.  
 h. Gasterocnemius externus.

*F I N I S.*





A

# SUPPLEMENT:

CONSISTING OF

## CHOICE RECEIPTS

For most of the

**DISTEMPERS** to which **HORSES** are incident,

According to the best modern Practice.

Communicated by several Persons of the first Distinction in the Knowledge  
of Horses in this Kingdom.

**T**HE Proprietor of this Work would have done honour to himself, and pleasure to the Publick, had he been permitted by those noble Persons who favour'd him with their Receipts, to insert their Names; but as that, in such a Work as this, could not be complied with, it is hoped the Encouragers of this Undertaking will excuse the Omission: And if any Receipts mentioned in this Supplement should agree with the Translations of the Receipts of *Saunier*, the Publick is desired to excuse that also; they being faithfully transmitted as they came to the Proprietor's Hand. But if our Countrymen have made any Additions or Improvements in this noble Art, we cannot doubt but the same will with pleasure be approved of and encouraged by *Europe* in general, and these Kingdoms in particular.

*Receipt for a Cold, by Sir John Lowther.*

One Ounce of Rue, two Ounces of Tar, and as much fresh Butter: mix them together with Powder of Liquorice, Anniseeds, Nutmegs, and brown Sugar-Candy. Make them into three Balls, and put into a Ball two or three Cloves of Garlick; give one, and then walk a while.

*A Drink for a Cold, by the same.*

One Ounce of Elicampane, one Ounce of Powder of Liquorice, one Ounce of Powder of Anniseeds, one Ounce of Sugar-Candy, a quarter of an Ounce of Butter, half a Pound of Honey, a quarter of a Pound of Treacle, a Handful of the Leaves of Rue, three Heads of Garlick, the Rue and Garlick minced small together: boil them in a Quart of Ale about half an Hour; then take it off the Fire, put in the other Ingredients, stir it well together till 'tis almost cold, and give it the Horse. The Horse must have warm Water a Day after. Three Drinks cures most Colds. There must be two or three Days between every Drink.

*An excellent Ointment for watry Legs, by Monsieur Foubert.*

Take two Quarts of Milk, a Pound of fine Flour, a Pound of Honey, half a Pound of Turpentine, an Ounce and an half of black Pitch, half an Ounce of Sulphur, two Spoonfuls of Oil of Olives; put the Milk and the Flour together over a gentle Fire, and mix them; then put in the other Ingredients, and let them stand there till the whole is dissolved and incorporated together. Cut the Horse's Hair as close as you can, and dress with this Ointment every Day, as hot as he can bear it, till the Sore begins to dry; after which every other Day is sufficient.

*Another.*

Take white Mercury, and black Soap, well mixed, and rub the Sores with it.



*Foot Ointment.*

Take a Pound of Mutton Suet without any Skin, a Pound of Hog's Lard, half a Pound of Turpentine, half a Quarter of yellow Wax, and a Quarter of Oil of Olives: melt the Fat, the Oil, and the Wax together over a gentle Fire, and when they are half dissolved put in the Turpentine. Let them take two or three Boils after they are all well incorporated, and then strain for Use.

*A Salve for Horses Hoofs, from Petworth.*

Four Ounces of *Venice* Turpentine, half a Pint of Salad Oil, half a Pint of Linseed Oil, Hogs Lard and sweet Butter of each half a Pound, Mutton Suet half a Pound, two Ounces of *Burgundy* Pitch, four Ounces of Bees-Wax and Rosin; boil them all together, and anoint the Hoofs within and without, as need shall require.

*For the Grease in the Heel.*

Let Honey and white Copperas be mixed together, and apply it to his Legs till he be well.

*Another.*

Take Gun-Powder, black Sope, and Verdigrease; put it into old Steel, and clean the Legs once a Day.

*For the Farcy, from Stockpool.*

A Handful of Rue, a Handful of Wormwood, half a Pound of Bole Armoniac, and two Ounces of Oil of Spike; put all together in a Quart of old Beer and give it the Horse luke-warm. No Meat for twelve Hours before, nor twelve Hours after. No Water for twenty-four Hours after. Keep the Horse very warm for three Days after.

*How to dress the Sores.*

You must take eight Pennyworth of the Oil of Vitriol, four Pennyworth of the Oil Origenum, and mix it in a Glas; lay it on with a Feather.

*To manage a Horse with the Farcy.*

Sugar-Candy beaten to Powder, half an Ounce of the best *Venice* Treacle, a quarter of a Pound of Honey, and three Spoonfuls of the best Salad Oil; it must be given luke-warm. After you have given it the Horse, clothe him well, and tie him to the Rack four Hours; then give him a little Hay, then a little scalded Bran, and afterwards warm Water, with Oatmeal Flour to colour it; next Day Bran, Hay, and the Water as before; the third Day walk him gently in the Day, and water him with cold Water; the fourth Day, give another Drink, and feed him as before: and in three or four Days after bleed him in the Liver-Vein.

*Another Receipt for the Farcy, from the Farrier at Bricks.*

Half a Pound of Savine, half a Quarter of Sena, half a Quarter of Lawrel Berries, half a Quarter of Sulphur, a Quarter of Alum, a Quarter of Cummin Seeds: mix them all together small, and give it him in Oats three Mornings, the Horse fasting twelve Hours before.

*For a Shoulder-sipt or Stiff.*

First bleed on the Plate-Vein; then take of Oil of Turpentine, of Oil of Camomil, of Oil of Millepedes, of Oil of Peter or Petreole, of each an equal Quantity: rub it and chaff it in all over.

*For the Farcy.*

Let the Horse be blooded on the Full of the Moon more than ordinary; the next Day give this Drink Milk-warm. Take one Pound of Alum, six Drachms of the blackest Sort of Aloes, half a Pound of Honey, and three Ounces of Brimstone-flour: put the Alum, Honey, and Brimstone, into two Quarts of Ale, and let it boil to one Quart; and when it is almost cold, put in the Aloes ready pulveris'd: mix all well together, ride your Horse very well before, and afterwards give it him. If the first do not cure him, repeat the same again ten Days after, two or three times.

*Another.*



*Another from Mr. de la Coudrier, tried.*

First bleed the Horse on the Full of the Moon; the next Day slit him open in the Fore-Head; melt a big Musket Ball, or pour into it two Drachms of Quicksilver: cover it over with a Plaister of Pitch, and let it lie till the Horse is cured. It will prevent any Farcy at the first Discovery. It has been tried with Success.

*For the Grease in Ireland.*

Take Snails in quantity, and mash them together; a proportionable quantity of Oatmeal and Milk; mix them all well together, make a Poultice of it, and fasten them to the Legs.

*For the Farcy, from Capt. Gore.*

One Ounce of Quicksilver, a quarter of a Pound of *English* Soap, dissolve them in a Quart of Ale; then take of Saffron and Rue, each a Handful, beat them in a Mortar with four Ounces of Oil of Turpentine: strain the Juice in the Ale, give it the Horse in the Morning, keeping him six Hours fasting.

*For the Farcy.*

Take Herb of St. John's Wort, beaten with Pepper, Salt, and Vinegar; put it in the two Ears, and tie the Ears fast till it hath cured him.

*For the Heat of the Feet or Foundering.*

Pare the Feet as thin as you can, and keep the Heels as well open as you can; then with a Rasp, rasp the outside of the Foot, almost to the Blood, and up to the Crown of the Foot; then put into it fresh Butter, and on the outside also, and keep the Feet always moist, and take care to shoe the Horse, so as the Foot may open and spread upon it.

*For the Grease, from Capt. Davenport.*

Take Roots of Birtworth, Turmerick, Anniseeds, sweet Fennel Seeds, of each one Ounce.

*For a Cold.*

Three quarters of an Ounce of Aloes, two Drachms of Jalap, two Drachms of Sena, two Drachms of Cream of Tartar, made up with a little Powder of Liquorice and Flour of Brimstone, in one Ounce of Syrup of Roses.

*For a Cold.*

One Ounce of Diapente in Powder, one Ounce of Flour of Brimstone, a Pennyworth of *London* Treacle, made up with white Wine, for one Dose.

*For the breaking a Cold.*

A Spoonful of Honey, about the Bigness of a Walnut of Alum, in powder, a quarter of a Pint of white Wine Vinegar; give it the Horse, half in one Nostril, half in the other; two Mornings will be sufficient.

*Another Purge, not so strong as the other.*

One Ounce of Aloe Succotrine, as much Diapente as will cover a Sixpence, Flour of Brimstone and Cream of Tartar, the same Quantity.

*Receipt for a Cold.*

Two Quarts of the best Beer, boil it to one by Scumming of it; then take half an Ounce of *Venice* Treacle, two or three Pennyworth of Saffron; ride the Horse well, and clothe him very warm; and when he hath sweated cool him by degrees. Give it him for three or four Mornings, keeping him fasting. You may give him some Honey, Elicampane, and Flour of Brimstone, or some Saffron in his Oats.

*For a broken or short-winded Horse.*

Take two Handfuls of Alehoof, one Handful of Groundfil, three Sprigs of Celandine, three Sprigs of Rue, all picked clean, six Cloves of Garlick picked; chop them as small as possible,



possible, and put them in a Quart of Ale which hath been boiled and scummed, and boil them till a fourth part be boiled away; then put in two Ounces of brown Sugar-Candy, beaten to powder, half an Ounce of best *Venice* Treacle, a quarter of a Pound of Honey, and three Spoonfuls of Salad Oil: it must be given luke-warm: after you have given it the Horse, clothe him well, and tie him to the Rack four Hours; then give him a little Hay, then a little scalded Bran, and afterwards warm Water, with Oatmeal Flour to colour it; next Day Bran, Hay, and the Water as before; the third Day walk him gently, in the Day, and water him with cold Water; the fourth Day another Drink, and feed him as before, and in three or four Days bleed him in the Liver-Vein.

*To make an Horse's Hoof grow.*

Take new Wax, Goat's Grease, or for want of that fresh Sheep's Suet; the fat of Bacon cut small, and steeped in Water four and twenty Hours, till it grow fresh, the Water being changed every three or four Hours; of each one Pound; melt them together, and then add a large Handful of the second Bark of Elder, and if it be in the Spring two Handfuls of Elder Buds; boil them over a gentle Fire, about a quarter of an Hour, stirring them from time to time; then strain it in a Pot, with two Ounces of Olive Oil, four Ounces of Turpentine, and the like quantity of Honey: after which remove the Vessel from the Fire, and stir the Ointment till it's cold; then anoint the Hoof for the breadth of an Inch round the Hair, and repeat the Application once a Day.

*For a Bite.*

Take the White of an Egg, some Bole Armoniac and Vinegar, mix them together and apply it.

*For a Crack or Prick in the Hoof.*

A little Turpentine, Tar, and Hogs-lard boiled together; dip a little Toe in it, and apply it.

*For a gaul'd Heel.*

Apply a Poultice composed of Honey, Turpentine, and Hogs-lard, with a little White of an Egg.

*To refresh a Horse after a Cold.*

Take some Garlick, Butter, and Nutmeg and Honey; mix them together, wrap them in a Cloth round a Stick, and let him champ upon it.

*For a Cold.*

Take half a Pint of Sack, half a Pint of Linseed Oil, two Pennyworth of Sugar-Candy; mix them well together, and apply it.

*For a Swelling.*

Take some *Venice* Turpentine, Honey, and Hogs-lard, White of Eggs, with Flour of Beans; make them into a Poultice and apply it.

November 1727, was attended with an ugly Distemper amongst the Horses; it declared itself by a violent Coughing, Running at the Nose, and Loss of Appetite. The Method we used for the Cure was keeping them very warm, giving them warm Water and warm Meat; in the Mornings fasting, thirty or forty Drops of Spirit of Sulphur, in half a Pint of Ale; likewise putting into their Mashes one Ounce of Antimony is esteemed exceeding good.

*A Pectoral Ball for a Horse that has got a Cough.*

One Ounce of Liquorice Powder, one Ounce of Fenugreek, one Ounce of Diapente; take care your Diapente has Myrrh in it; half an Ounce of Chemical Oil of Anniseeds; four Drachms of Balsam of Sulphur, two Ounces of Garlick, one Ounce of Flour of Brimstone; half a Pound of Honey: beat up together they will make eight Balls; give the Horse one Ball every Morning early before he is fed, and continue this till his Cough is gone.

This Receipt was given me by Captain J. Lamley.

*Receipt for the Grease in Horses Legs.*

Take two Quarts of Rye Flour, mix into it one Pound of Hogs-lard; let your Poultice be wrapt quite round the Sore.



*Another for the Grease.*

Two Quarts of Milk, one Pound of Meal, one Pound of Honey, half a Pound of Horse Turpentine, one Ounce of Rosin, two Spoonfuls of Olive Oil; you must beat the Milk and Meal together, and put it over the Fire, and when it begins to boil take it off the Fire, and put in all the Ingredients; then put it over the Fire again till all is melted, and then you must leave it over a gentle Fire till it is thick. You must cut off the Hair as close as you can at first. Apply the Poultice as hot as you can once a Day, and when it begins to dry, every other Day.

*A Drink for a Cold.*

Take a Quart of new Milk; boil it, then put to it five Cloves of Garlick; peel every Clove, shread them very small, and put them into the Milk; boil them very soft, then put to them half a Pound of Honey; let it stand till it is luke-warm, then give it the Horse.

*N. B.* Over Night give your Horse a Mash and warm Water; let him fast two Hours before you give him this Drink, and let him stand two Hours after it; then give him warm Water, and walk him for two Hours, and give him warm Water at Night. The second Day take a little Blood from him, and if required, give a second Drink; the fourth Day observing the same Rules, except bleeding.

*To take off a Splint.*

Cantharides and Euphorbium, of each half a Drachm; mix them up with as much Unguentum Nervinum as is sufficient to cover the Splint; spread it upon a piece of Leather a little bigger than the Splint, tie it up with a Fillet ten Hours, and when taken off let the Groom press the Place with his Thumb, four or five times a Day: If the Splint is not quite taken off with the first Application, repeat it five or six Days after; whilst the Plaister is on, tie your Horse's Head to the Rack.

*For a Cold.*

Take three Cloves of Garlick, beat them, and boil them in a Quart of Ale, with Rosemary and Rue, of each half a Handful; strain it, and add Honey and Treacle, of each four Ounces, Diapente, Barberries, and Elicampane, of each half an Ounce, of Salad Oil half a Gill, and of Sugar-Candy, and Syrup of Colts-foot, two Ounces of each: Mix all well together, and give it warm, letting your Horse fast two Hours before, and two Hours after.

*For a Shoulder-slip, or Stiff Shoulder.*

First bleed on the Plate-Vein; then take of Oil of Turpentine, of Oil of Camomil, Oil of St. John's Wort, Oil of Peter, of each an equal Quantity; rub it and chaff it in well all over.

*Sharp Water.*

White Vitriol and common Alum, of each a Quarter of a Pound; burn them together, put in two Quarts of boiling Water, and keep it stirring whilst cold; use it warm with a little Spirits of Wine, when it is settled and poured off clear.

*The Blistering Charge.*

Black Pitch, two Ounces, Turpentine, two Ounces, Rosin, *Burgundy* Pitch, Mastich, Frankincense, Galbanum, of each one Ounce, Euphorbium, *Spanish* Flies, *Affa* Foetida, of each half an Ounce, Oil of Bays, one Ounce, Oil of Origanum, one Drachm, Sublimate, one Drachm.

*The Blistering Ointment.*

Oil of Bays, four Ounces, *Spanish* Flies, two Ounces, Euphorbium, two Ounces, Oil of Origanum, one Ounce, Sublimate Mercury, two Drachms, Hogs-lard, one Ounce; mix all together in a Gallipot.

*To make a Horse-stale.*

Take Grumel Seed, Cummin Seed, Parsley Seed, Broom Seed, *Castile* Soap, of each one Ounce, brown Sugar-Candy, four Ounces; to be given in a Pint of white Wine.



*For the Gripes.*

Take four Drachms of the Spirit of Turpentine, Oil of Dialthæa, four Drachms, Ginger, four Drachms, six Cloves of Garlick, Syrup of Roses, five Drachms; mix these together in a Pint of white Wine, and give it the Horse blood warm; walk him half an Hour afterwards.

*A Purge for a Horse, to be work'd with warm Water.*

Take the best Succotrine Aloes, one Ounce and two Drachms, Diapente, half an Ounce, Powder of Ginger, two Drachms, Mercurius Dulcis, two Drachms, Oil of Anniseeds, one Drachm; mix it up with Syrup of Buckthorn.

*To ease a Splint or Spavin.*

Spirit of Wine and *Hungary* Water, of each two Ounces, Oil of Origanum and Spirit of Sal Armoniac, of each two Drachms.

*The red Ointment for Grease or Cracks.*

Take of Litharge of Gold, one Pound, Bole, half a Pound, Verdigrease, four Ounces, let them be all in fine Powder; then add to them Honey and brown Sugar, of each one Pound and a half; beat them all well together in a Mortar, put them in a deep Pot, and set it in a Dunghil three Days and three Nights.

*A Purge.*

Aloes, one Ounce and a Quarter, Cream of Tartar, half an Ounce, Mercurius Dulcis, Rhubarb, of each one Drachm, Oil of Anniseeds, forty Drops, Powder of Liquorice a sufficient Quantity, and make up with Syrup of Roses.

*For the Canker in the Nose of a Horse.*

Take Lime Water, one Pint, Sublimate Mercury, half an Ounce, finely powdered, Honey of Roses, half an Ounce, *Ægyptiacum*, one Drachm; mix them together, and inject it up the Nostrils, and put up a long Tent of Tow dipt in the Mixture; to a Gallon of Water put half a Pound of Lime Stone; pour the Water boiling upon the Lime Stone to make the Lime Water, and pour off the clear Liquor for Use, after it has stood some Hours to settle.

*For a Swelling.*

Take Ointment of Marshmallows and Populeon, of each one Ounce, Oil of Camomile and Worms, of each one Ounce, Oil of Turpentine, two Spoonfuls, Ointment of Elder, Oil of Swallows, Linseed Oil, of each one Ounce, Oil of Peter, one Spoonful, Oil of Origanum, Oil of Brick, of each half an Ounce.

*A Cure for the Gravel in a Horse's Foot.*

Pare the Foot very thin, about the Frog especially; then take half a Spoonful of double Aqua-fortis, and half a Spoonful of Spirits of Wine, mix them together in a Spoon with the Point of a Knife, and put it into the Heart of the Foot, holding the Foot up till it sinks in; then set on the Shoe, but let the Nail be down, and the gravelly Part open'd; fill it only with a little Flax before you set on the Shoe. Be sure you don't cut any Part of the Hoof away. You may travel or work in three or four Hours time without Trouble or Hazard.

*A Glisten for a Horse.*

Take new Cows Milk, one Pint and a half, Lenitive Electuary, two Ounces, brown Sugar, a quarter of a Pound, warm these all together; when the Sugar is dissolved, take it from the Fire, and put to it Oil of Roses, three Ounces; give it Blood warm.

*A Purge for a Horse.*

Aloes, one Ounce, Rhubarb, one Drachm, Cream of Tartar, two Drachms, Jalap, one Drachm, Oil of Anniseeds, forty Drops, Mercurius Dulcis, one Drachm, made up with Syrup of Roses.

*A sharp*



*A sharp Water.*

Take Alum and green Copperas, of each half a Pound, and three Quarts of Water; beat the Alum after boiled a little, then put a Pint of Vinegar to two Quarts of Tanners Water, the strongest you can get.

*A Drink.*

Diapente, Elicampane, Sulphur, of each one Ounce, given in a Quart of warm Ale; fast two Hours after; give warm Water at Night; repeat it the next Morning; keep warm in the Day; bleed the first Day, the third Day give cold Water, with a gentle Gallop.

*For a Shoulder or any other Strain.*

Linfeed Oil six Ounces, Oil of Swallows one Ounce, Oil of Peter six Drachms, Nerve Oil one Ounce and half, Oil of Spike two Ounces, Oil of Vitriol two Drachms and half; this Oil will do when another has no Effect.

*Ointment for Horses Heels.*

Hog's-lard one Pound and a half, Venice Turpentine half a Pound, Oil of Camomile four Ounces, Ointment of Marshmallows and Populeon of each half a Pound, Egyptiacum two Ounces, Verdigrease in Powder two Ounces; heat these gently over the Fire, until they are well incorporated; strain it through a Cloth, and keep it for Use.

*The green Ointment to cure all Wounds and Sores.*

Take Rosin and Bees-wax, as much as a large Walnut, make them small, and put them into a Skillet to melt; then add Hog's Grease and common Turpentine, of each half a Pound, and one Spoonful of Honey; let them boil and melt well together; keep it stirring, and take it off the Fire; add one Ounce of Verdigrease in fine Powder, keeping it stirring over a gentle Fire; as it rises, take it off the Fire, stirring it, that it may be well mixed, taking care it rises not over; then strain it through a Cloth, keeping it stirring till it settles and begins to thicken.

*For a Horse's Foot when the Sole is taken out.*

Take some Nettles, Soap, and common Turpentine, shred the Nettles small, pound them all together, and put some into the Horse's Foot three Days; then open it and dress it with warm Medicines, keeping it close stop'd.

*Horse Balls.*

Take sweet Fennel Seed, Sulphur, Elicampane, Anniseeds powdered, of each three Ounces, Fenugreek, Liquorice, of each two Ounces, Syrup of Colts-foot, Maiden Hair, Oil of Anniseeds, of each one Ounce, Figs and Raisins, of each half a Pound, Juice of Liquorice two Ounces, brown Sugar-Candy half a Pound, Diapente two Ounces, Sweet Oil half a Pint, Honey and London Treacle of each half a Pound.

*Balls.*

A Quart of white Wine, Spanish Liquorice two Ounces, dissolve it over the Fire; then put in four Ounces of Anniseeds, and four Ounces of Liquorice, powdered Flour of Brimstone two Ounces, Sugar-Candy four Ounces beat fine, Syrup of Colts-foot two Ounces, Oil of Anniseeds one Ounce, Sweet Oil half a Pint; mix them with fine Flour, with half a Pound of Honey; keep them in a Bladder.

*A Drink.*

Venice Treacle one Ounce, Turmeric half an Ounce, Saffron one Drachm, Diapente half an Ounce, common Treacle half a Pound; warm it in a Quart of Ale, and fast two Hours.

*A sharp Water for a Fistula, or Canker, or to wash and cure any Sore.*

Take white Copperas, and Roman Vitriol, of each one Ounce, Alum half a Pound, Juice of Celandine one Pint, the Juice of Savin three Spoonfuls; burn the Vitriol, Alum, and Copperas, and beat them to powder; put the Powders and Juices into a Quart Bottle of Spring Water, keeping it for your Use.

For



*For the Gripes.*

A Pint of Ale, half a Pint of Geneva, a quarter of a Pint of Oil of Turpentine, two Ounces of Anniseeds, two Ounces of Cummin Seeds, a quarter of a Pound of *Castile* Soap, one Ounce of Diapente. Give it warm.

*A Hoof Salve.*

Take two Pounds of Sheep's Tallow, one Pound of Turpentine, one Pint of Train Oil, half a Pound of Bees Wax, one Pound of Hogs-lard; boil the Tallow and Wax together, then put in the Turpentine and Lard; boil them together, then add the Train Oil, and let them simmer; strain it into an earthen Pot, and keep it for Use.

*Lime Water for the Mange.*

Take two or three Pounds of unslack'd Lime that is newly made, put it into a Pot or Bason, and pour by degrees upon it five Quarts of Rain-Water; then set the Bason in a convenient Place for two or three Days, stirring it often; after which let the Lime fall to the Bottom, and pour off the Water by degrees from the Lime; filter it through a brown Paper, and to three Pints of the Water add half a Pint of good Spirits of Wine, an Ounce of Spirits of Vitriol, and as much corrosive Sublimate in Powder: Mix and preserve this for Use, dabbing it on their mangy Tails, or any Part infected.

*Ointment for a Horse's Heels.*

Hogs-lard one Pound and a half, Verdigrease half an Ounce, *Venice* Turpentine, Oil of Camomile, Marshmallows, Populeon, Egyptiacum, of each half an Ounce; keep it stirring over the Fire, whilst melted; strain it through a Cloth, and keep it for Use.

*A Charge.*

Boil a Pound of Tar in a Pint of strong Aqua Vitæ, or good Spirits of Wine, over a clear Fire, for a quarter of an Hour, stirring it often; then add to it two Ounces of fine Bole in Powder, and thicken it with Wheat Flour to the Thickness of a cold Charge. Apply it hot to scald the Horse.

*For the Stranguillion.*

Take sweet Parsley Seed, sweet Fennel Seed, Anniseeds, of each one Ounce, one Pint of Brandy, one Quart of new Milk; give it warm, keep the Horse stirring, and set him up warm.

*Oils good for Strains, Knocks, or Swellings.*

Take Linseed Oil, six Ounces, Exeter and Swallows of each one Ounce, Peter six Drachms, Nerve Oil one Ounce and a half, Spike and Turpentine of each two Ounces, Oil of Vitriol two Drachms and a half; put them together, and mix for Use.

*A Drink for a Cold.*

Take one Quart of Ale, three Pennyworth of Turmeric and Honey, boil them together, with three Pennyworth of Saffron; let them stand all Night; then put three Pennyworth of *London* Treacle, and give it the Horse.

*For a Cold.*

Take half an Ounce of *Spanish* Liquorice, half an Ounce of Mithridate, half an Ounce of Diapente, and a quarter of a Pound of Liquorice Powder.

*To make Extract of Malt.*

Take a Gallon of Wort, the best that comes off the Tun; hang it over the Fire; when it boils, scum it well; then put in two Pennyworth of Liquorice scraped and sliced, half a Pound of Raisins of the Sun stoned, let them boil whilst they are as thick as a Syrup; then take out the Liquorice and Raisins, and put in an Ounce of brown Sugar-Candy, and boil it till dissolved.



*For a Cold.*

Take one Ounce of Garlick, and the like Quantity of Liquorice: boil them in two Quarts of Water to one Pint, sweeten it with Honey; give a Spoonful four or five times a Day.

*For a Strain in the Back-Sinew.*

Take the Whites of a dozen Eggs, white Wine Vinegar a quarter of a Pint, and two Ounces of Bole; beat them together, and apply them three Days afunder; tie on a Cloth with some Lift.

*N. B.* This should be applied cold.

*Balls.*

Liquorice, Anniseeds, Diapente, of each one Pound, *London* Treacle, two Pounds, Flour of Brimstone six Drachms, Elicampane four Ounces, Antimony two Pounds and half: make these up into the Consistence of Balls with Honey, or Syrup of Ground-Ivy.

*For a Cold.*

Take a Quart of Ale, two Heads of Garlick, Elicampane, Anniseeds, Turmerick, of each one Ounce, Liquorice one Ounce: boil them together with Honey and Sweet Oil, of each two Ounces.

*A Purge.*

Aloes one Ounce, Cream of Tartar one Ounce, Ginger two Drachms, Diapente one Pennyworth, a Pint and a half of Ale.

*A Drink.*

*Venice* Treacle one Ounce, Turmerick three Pennyworth, Saffron six Pennyworth, Diapente two Pennyworth, common Treacle half a Pound, three Pints of Ale; mix them together.

*For the Canker.*

White Wine Vinegar one Pint, the best Roch Alum half a Pound, one Handful of red Sage: boil them together, and wash the Horse's Mouth and Tongue.

*Sharp Water.*

White Wine Vinegar one Quart, *Roman* Vitriol one Ounce, Roch Alum one Ounce; boil all together.

*A Poultice.*

Take a Pint of Milk, Rye Flour one Pound, Turpentine four Ounces, Hog's Lard four Ounces; laid on with a Cloth and Lift.

*For the Bite of a mad Dog.*

Take Rue six Ounces, Garlick four Ounces, bruised well, *Venice* Treacle, Mithridate, of each two Ounces, scraped thin. Boil them in five Pints of Ale, until a Pint is wasted, being close stoppt: strain the Liquor, and give eight Spoonfuls to a Man three Mornings together; the like Quantity to a Beast; four Spoonfuls to a Dog, cold; three Spoonfuls to a Sheep, &c. warming it. *Note*, you are to apply the Drugs to any Part hurt, or bit. It ought to be given before nine Days is expired, after the Biting of any mad Creature, with bleeding.

*Mr. Mountford's Receipt for any Sore.*

Take a Pound of unslacked Lime, and put to a Quart of Water; when it is dissolved and settled, pour the Water as fine from the Settling as you can; put to it half an Ounce of Mercurius Sublimate, one Ounce of Roch Alum, one Ounce of white Copperas, a very little *Roman* Vitriol, simmer them all together; all this is to make a Pint of the Water. Wash the Part three times a Day.

*For a Splint, Spavin, or Ringbone.*

Two Ounces of Spirits of Wine, the same of *Hungary* Water, Spirits of Sal Armoniac, Oil of Origanum each two Drachms; rub a little on a Splint once in three Days, about a Tea-spoonful on a Spavin.



*For the Worms or Bots in a Horse.*

Take a Handful of Saffron, and shred it small, and some fresh Butter, and two Drachms of Æthiops Mineral mixt in a Ball; give it three Mornings fasting, then miss one Morning, and then ditto; add half an Ounce of Succotrine Aloes.

*For a Swelling.*

Two Ounces of Oil of Peter, one Ounce of Ointment of Bays, and two Ounces of Train Oil.

*For any Swelling or Strain.*

Take old Verjuice and Oil of Charity; mix them and rub it well in before the Fire.

*For a Splint, Spavin, or Curb.*

Take Spirits of Wine and Camphire one Spoonful, put it into a Gallypot; then take an Ounce of Mercury Sublimate, so mix it with a Stick and rub it with your Finger well in. Tie him up.

*To cure the Bots or Worms.*

Take common Wormwood Seeds, and Worm Seeds, of each three Quarters of an Ounce, Ethiops Mineral a Quarter of an Ounce, Tansey in Powder half an Ounce, Myrrha in Powder one Drachm; mix all these Ingredients into a Ball, with Syrup of Buckthorn. This Quantity may be given to either Horse or Mare, for a single Dose every other Morning fasting; take care to keep them from eating any Food for four Hours after taking the same.

This Preparation will cure either Bots or Worms in five or six Times taking; or you may give it as often as Occasion requires.

*For a Sinew Strain.*

Dissolve half an Ounce of Camphire, in half a Pint of strong Spirits of Wine; when you have done that, put it into an earthen Pan with a quarter of a Pound of Castile Sope; take care and melt them all together, and stand till cold for Use. Two or three Spoonfuls of this may be rubbed on the Part affected warm, Night and Morning, for an Hour, applying a warm Flannel after using.

*A Gripe Drink.*

One Ounce of Carraway Seeds, one Ounce of Cummin Seeds, half an Ounce of sweet Fennel Seeds, scrape one Ounce of Castile Sope, one Ounce of Oil of Turpentine, one Pint of Geneva. For two Drinks. Keep the Horse stirring and warm.

*For the Gripes.*

Take half a Pint of Daffy's Elixir, sixty Drops of the Oil of Juniper; mix them, and give it the Horse or Mare.

*A Receipt for the Farcy.*

Take red Precipitate two Drachms, Rosin of Jalap three Drachms, Venice Treacle one Ounce and half; make it into a Ball, give the Horse this early in a Morning, and tie the Horse up from Meat three Hours; then give him a hot Mash, and keep him warm with Clothes. Let this be repeated every other Morning for nine times. This has seldom failed curing the most obstinate Farcy.





## Representation of the Jugular Veins.

**P**LATE Letter A represents the external jugular Veins, commonly called the Neck Veins, which are the Branches of the hollow Veins; and shews how, when the Muscles and Glands that cover it are taken away, it separates first into two Branches, and afterwards into four, sending forth several others, some to the internal, some to the external Part of the Head.

- N<sup>o</sup> 1. The external jugular Vein, which, ascending the Side of the Neck, sends out Branches continually to the neighbouring Muscles.
- N<sup>o</sup> 3. The upper Branch of the second Division of the jugular Vein, which descending under the Glandule that covers it, sends a Branch to the Brain, by the Hole which is in the Skull above the Ear-Hole.
- N<sup>o</sup> 2. The lower Branch of the second Division of the jugular Vein, which being hid under Glandules, creeps under the lower Jaw-bone, and dividing into many Branches, enters into the internal Part of the Head, dispersing itself by the Brain, the Throat, the Tongue, the Os Hyoides, and other Parts.
- N<sup>o</sup> 4. A small Branch of N<sup>o</sup> 2, called the Eye-Vein, which separating into two, spreads over the Parts of the Eye. It is this small Branch that we cut in Disorders of the Eyes.
- N<sup>o</sup> 5. The lower Branch of the first Division of the external jugular Vein, which burrows under the Cheek, separating into two Branches, one whereof runs to the internal Parts of the Head, the other to the internal Parts of the Jaws.
- N<sup>o</sup> 15. A Branch of N<sup>o</sup> 5, which extends by the upper Part of the Jaws, and goes to the Angles of the Eyes.

*Figures representing the Moulds for cutting large Ears, and reducing them to their natural Size, and other Instruments for the Performance of different Chirurgical Operations.*

Fig. I. You must first cut off the Hair of the Ears, both without Side and within, as close to the Skin as possible: Then put N<sup>o</sup> 1 into the Ear, and N<sup>o</sup> 2 without it, so that the Ear is even between them both: Then with N<sup>o</sup> 5 take them hold by the Ends marked 4, to press them close together, as you see described in Plate A, where the Numbers 1, 2, and 4 are all fasten'd together by the Screw N<sup>o</sup> 3. Mind to take hold of both Ears alike, and with the Bistoury or Incision Knife, N<sup>o</sup> 6, cut them all round close to the Instrument. The Operation being performed, put the Tail of the Horse towards the Manger, and tie him in such manner that he may not rub his Head for four or five Hours, till the Bleeding is intirely stop'd, and a sort of Crust formed round the Edge of each Ear. The next Day take a Feather, and anoint them all round with the Ointment prescribed for Burns, Morning and Evening, till the said Crust falls off of itself: Which being exactly observed, the Skins at the Edges of the Ears will join so close, that it will be impossible to see whether they have been cut or no. For want of the Ointment for Burns, a little Marshmallows, Honey, and Hog's Lard mixed together over the Fire, in equal Quantities, will answer the Purpose, and may be used in the same manner as the other Ointment. See Fig. I. Plate A.

Fig. II. represents a little Horn, which is used to unnerve a Horse, or to bar his Veins, or to give him the Prick with a Horn in his upper Palate. See Plate B.

Fig. III. It would be useless to give here the Draught of a Case of Fleams, if it was not to shew their Want of Experience who use small and narrow ones, with which it is almost impossible to make a good Orifice; whereas by using them according to the Model here given, the Bleeding will be of much greater Advantage. See Plate B.

Fig. IV. represents an Instrument call'd a Scraping-knife, which serves to separate the Foot, when you would unsole a Horse, and also to make an Opening within Side of a Foot that has been prick'd with a Nail, when the Matter does not easily come out. It is absolutely necessary that a Groom should have one of them. Your Wine-Merchants have things in the same Form, but larger, to mark their Casks. See Plate A.

Fig. V. represents a Kind of Knife to give the Fire, which ought to be two Foot long, with a wooden Handle (though not here describ'd) to hold it by when hot. On the  
Back,



Back, at N° 6, it should be a full Inch thick, and at the Edge, N° 7, 7, 7, as thin as a common Knife when blunted. The Manner of heating it is describ'd in the Article of giving the Fire. The Edge must absolutely be of Steel, and not of Iron.

Fig. VI. is a Fire-Button, made use of for Spavins, for the Anticor, or to pierce and fire with the Point, 9, any Part where there is Matter enclos'd, which you want to discharge. You see these Operations describ'd at large in the Places where this Instrument is mentioned.

Fig. VII. is an Iron made to solder up Seymes, as has been explain'd in the Article concerning them. You make it red hot, and press it cross the Cleft, from the Crown to the Bottom of it, according to it's Length. This Iron makes the Impression of the Letter S, and sometimes, when the Cleft is long, there must be three or four of these Impressions: After which apply the Remedies prescrib'd in the Article of Seymes. The Part number'd 8 is for the Middle of the Cleft, and ought to be of Steel, and as sharp as the Fire-Knife.

Fig. VIII. is the Form of a Bistoury, or Incision-Knife, proper for all Sorts of Operations, whether for unnerving a Horse, or cutting his Veins or Arteries. Cut the Skin with it delicately, and then finish the Incision with the Bistoury prescrib'd for cutting the Ears; which, being crooked, opens the Skin without offending the Nerves or Veins you design to cut.

Fig. IX. exhibits an Iron call'd a Flap, or Mouth-Iron (in *Saunier* often a Colt's Foot.) This is to put into the Mouth of a Horse, to examine at leisure the Disorders that are here, as the Bean, alias the Lampas, or to cut off the Barbs, or to prick him with the Horn, or to smooth his Teeth when they grow out, or uneven.

N° 14 shews the upper Bar.

N° 15 the lower Bar, which goes into the Horse's Mouth, to make him hold it open.

N° 16 the Bar, or Handle, which you hold when you make use of it.

*A Description of the different Sorts of Shoes, proper for the various Diseases of the Feet, taken from Monsieur de Saunier; and of many others now in the Possession of Mr. Merrick of Grosvenor-Meuse, Yeoman-Farrier to his Majesty.*

*From Monsieur de Saunier.*

Fig. X. represents a Shoe for all Feet, which every Man, who has a large Equipage to conduct, whether in the Road or the Army, ought to be provided with. It opens and shuts in the Middle, as marked at N° 8, and is more especially proper for the Fore-feet, which are most subject to receive Damage.

Fig. XI. represents a Shoe broken at the two Corners, to open the Heels of a Horse who has them clos'd or incastellated. It opens and shuts at N° 7, 7, as was describ'd in the Chapter of close and incastellated Heels. N° 6 marks the Figure which is plac'd between the Teeth of the Iron Branches. 'Tis the Business of him who makes the Operation to lengthen it every time he dresses the Horse, according as he sees occasion. See Plate B.

Fig. XII. represents a Shoe to make such Horses raise their Feet as are stiff before, by trotting them Evening and Morning with a Pair of them; as also when you cut their Nerves above the Knees, as mark'd in Plate B.

Fig. XIII. demonstrates a Shoe which may serve upon Occasion, on a Journey or in the Army, when a Horse has slip'd his Foot into a Hole, or any close Place, and pull'd off the Shoe with Violence, and all the Edge of the Crown with it, which makes it impossible to nail on another Shoe. No Groom, who has the Charge of many Horses, should be without one of these.

N° 5 points where the Shoe plays, to open and shut it as much as you please.

N° 6 shews the Circle or Border round the upper Part of the Shoe, by which it encloses the Bottom of the Hoof all round. After having fix'd it, take the Screw,

N° 17, and pass it through the two Holes, N° 18, in order to fasten the Shoe behind; which being well adjusted in this Manner, the Horse may travel upon it, till the Hoof is grown out enough to hold the Nails of a common Shoe.

Fig. XIV. exhibits a Shoe that is of equal Thickness without Side and within, as may easily be perceived by N° 9. It is proper for a Horse that has a Seyme, that is to say, whose

Hoof



Hoof is cleft, either on the Outside or the Inside. The Branch N<sup>o</sup> 7 ought to be shorter than that N<sup>o</sup> 8, because it is to come on the Side where the Seyme is: These Clefts closing up better when you fix them, and the Shoe does not bear upon them, as describ'd in the Article of Seymes.

Fig. XV. This Shoe is proper to re-establish the Feet of Horses who have close Heels: It ought to be of equal Thickness, as you see at N<sup>o</sup> 10, but to grow thinner towards N<sup>o</sup> 11, thinner still at 12, and so on to 13, always diminishing gradually; so that the Branches on that Side, opposite N<sup>o</sup> 13, ought to be thicker than the Back of a common Knife. Every Man of good Sense, and who understands Horsemanship ever so little, may see, when a Horse is shod, that if the Shoe is vaulted all along, from the Point to the End of the Branches, the Heels straiten themselves: On the contrary, the Branches of the Shoe being thinner without Side than within, the Heels bearing upon them must necessarily dilate and spread, as they meet with no Resistance; and the Hoof will follow the Shoe which is thinner towards the Numbers 11, 12, and 13.

*From Mr. Merick.*

Fig. XVI. a Tongue-Shoe for a Foot where both Heels are broke or wore away. This is for strengthening the Foot.

Fig. XVII. a Shoe proper to conceal a bad footed Horse, to be thick all the Outside of the Fullering, and to be thin upon the Ball of the Foot, and thick heel'd to hide the hollow Work on the Inside.

*N. B.* This is very proper for a Horse on Sale.

Fig. XVIII. represents a Box-Shoe, with an open Heel and Toe, for a Horse that is foundred, hurt, or a Pain in the Toe.

Fig. XIX. represents a Box-Shoe, with a Cap to the Front, for a foundred Horse, when the Crust is gone below the Coffin-Bone; to be hob'd and seated very fine.

Fig. XX. a Bar-Shoe for a Horse that has a Corn in the Heel, and likewise lined with Leather to bear upon the Frog, where it is strong and will bear it.

Fig. XXI. a Patten-Shoe for a lame Horse, either in the Shoulder, Whittle-bone, or Stifle; to be put on the contrary Foot.

Fig. XXII. a Box-Shoe for a Pomice Foot, to be seated level all round.

Fig. XXIII. a Box-Shoe, where there is a Pain in the Quarters, to be left open for Ease and for the Gravel to work out.

Fig. XXIV. a plain Shoe for a bad Foot.

Fig. XXV. a Shoe where the Ball of the Foot is very thin; the void Place being for the Gravel to work out.

Fig. XXVI. ditto, for a Bruise for the inside or outside Toe; the Part grieved to be left open.

Fig. XXVII. a Bar-Shoe where the Toe and Quarters are broke away, to be seated smooth and nail'd up at the Heels, the Toe being supported by a Clip, for a hind Foot.

Fig. XXVIII. a narrow Bar-Shoe, to improve a thin Foot.

Fig. XXIX. a Bar-Shoe where both the Heels and the Foot are wore away, being lin'd with Leather when the Frog will bear it.

Fig. XXX. a Bar-Shoe when the Heel is wore away, and the Foot and Frog is very thin.





A Table of the Remedies prescrib'd in this Book, in the Order they occur, with the Prices of the Principal when compounded, which may be had faithfully prepared of Mr. *Wootton*, Chymist, at the *Golden Head* in *Brookstreet, Grosvenor-Square*.

*N. B.* Wherever Wine is order'd to be made use of in any internal Medicine, Ale may be used in it's stead.

	Page.		l.	s.	d.
Chap. II.	7	<b>A</b> Remedy for the Barbs			
Chap. III.		A Remedy for the Lampas			
Chap. IV.		For Gigs in the Lips			
Chap. V.	8	For Gag-Teeth			
Chap. VI.		An Eye-Water for a Blow on the Eye			
Chap. VII.	9	Remedy for a moon-ey'd Horfe			6
Chap. X.		— for a Web in the Eye			
		— for disorder'd Sight			
		Pills to purge the Brain of a Horfe that has sore Eyes			
	10	A Powder to dissipate a Web		1	6
		Another for the same Purpose			6
		Another with White Wine		1	3
		Another with Snail Shells		2	6
Chap. XI.		A Remedy for Wounds in the Eye		1	
		An Eye-Water			
		Another with Lapis Mirabilis			6
	11	A Draught for the Eyes		1	
		An Eye-Water			8
Chap. XII.		A Remedy for a Whitloe on the Eye			6
Chap. XIII.	12	An Ointment for the Strangles			
		A cordial Drink for the same		2	8
		A cordial Drink for the Bastard Strangles		2	9
	13	An Ointment for the Stranguillion		1	6
		A Drink for the same			
	14	A Cordial for Horses that are sick and have lost } their Stomachs		2	8
		Another Remedy for the Strangles			
		A Drink for the simple Strangles			
		An Ointment for the running Strangles			
		A Drink for the same			
		Chewing Balls for the same			
		Pills for a Horfe that has a Running at the Nose without being Glandery			
Chap. XIV.	15	A Remedy for a morfounder'd Horfe			
		A Medicine for a Running at the Nose			
	16	Another Medicine for the same Purpose			
		A Perfume for the same		1	2
		A Plaister for the Glands		1	10
		A Drink for the Glanders			
Chap. XV.	17	Remedies for the Farcy call'd the Farini Oculus		2	
		A Remedy for the flying Farcy			
		— for the corded Farcy		1	
		— for the Hens Arse Farcy			
	18	A Purge for the Farcy			
		An Ointment for all Sorts of Farcies		1	8
		Another Ointment for the same		4	6
		A Remedy for all Sorts of Farcies		1	

A Caustic



	Page.		l.	s.	d.
Chap. XV.		A Caustic Stone for the same		2	6
	19	Balls for the Farcin		3	6
		An Ointment for the same		3	4
		An internal Remedy			
		A Lye for the Farcy			
		An Ointment with Quicksilver for the same		8	
		A Drink for the same		1	6
Chap. XVI.	20	A caustic Ointment for the Buds		1	10
		A Composition to eat proud Flesh in the Farcy, } one Ounce, at 3 d. per Ounce.			3
		A Sulphur Bag for the Mange			
		Powders for the same		1	6
		Another Remedy for the Mange with Quicksilver		1	6
	21	Another for the same			
		Another with <i>Spanish</i> Flies		2	6
		Another			
		A Wash for the same		1	6
		An Ointment with Quicksilver for the same		4	
		A Purge for the same		4	
Chap. XVII.		A Remedy for the Mange call'd the Old Reds			
Chap. XVIII.	22	A Remedy for Tetters or Ring-Worms			
		An Ointment to make the Hair come when fallen off by Tetters, &c.			
		Another for the same			
Chap. XIX.	23	A Remedy for founder'd Horses			
		A Draught for the same		1	9
		Another Remedy for the same			
		A Draught for the same, with Garlick			
	24	Another way of treating a founder'd Horse			
Chap. XX.		A Remedy for a Horse whose Grease is melted			
		Another for the same		2	
	25	Another			
Chap. XXI.		An Ointment for the Stag-Evil			
		A strengthening Medicine for the same			
		An Embrocation for the same			
		A Medicine for the Stag-Evil		1	4
Chap. XXII.	26	A Remedy for the Vives			
		Another			
Chap. XXIII.		A Remedy for the Gripes and Cholick			
	27	A Draught for the same			
		Oil of Amber, one Ounce			6
		Another Remedy for the Gripes			
		Another			
		Another to make a Horse piss			
		Another for the Gripes			
		An Ointment to provoke Urine			
	28	A Glister for the Gripes of every kind			
		A Drink for the Gripes		1	4
Chap. XXIV.		The Method of Cure for the Vertigo or <i>Spanish</i> Evil			
		Another Method			
Chap. XXV.	29	A Remedy for Numbness of the Senses, which re- sembles a Vertigo			
		Another Remedy for the Head-Ach			
		An Ointment for a Vertigo		2	6
		A Powder for the same, one Ounce			2
	30	Another Remedy for the same			

A Drink



	Page.		l.	s.	d.
Chap. XXVI.	30	A Drink in a Fever or fiery Evil			
		Another for the same			
		Chewing Balls for the same			
	31	Glass of Antimony, one Ounce			6
		A Remedy for a Fever		I	4
Chap. XXVII.		Sal Prunella for the Fashions, one Ounce			2
		A Glister for the same		I	6
		A Drink for the same			
		Another			
	32	A Medicine for the same		3	2
		A nourishing Glister for the same			
		Another Remedy		I	2
		Another for the same			8
		Another		2	4
Chap. XXVIII.		A Remedy for Incontinence of Urine			
		for a Horse that pisses Blood			
Chap. XXIX.	33	The Method of curing the Anticor or Anticou			
		Another Remedy for the same			
Chap. XXX.	34	A Medicine for the Relief of broken-winded Horses			
		A Powder for the same			
		Another Remedy			
		Another for a broken Wind			
		Another			
	35	Another			
		Another			
		Another with Aloes and Saffron		2	6
		Another cordial Drink			
		Another to preserve a Horse's Wind			
		Another alleviating Remedy to a broken-winded Horse			
		A Medicine to prevent a broken-winded Horse from growing worse			
	36	Another			
		Another for the same Purpose			
		Balls for a broken Wind			10
		A Powder to mix with Oats for the same			
		Iron prepar'd with Sulphur, one Pound		I	
		Balls for a broken Wind			
		Other Balls with the Gums and Flowers of Benjamin, one Pound		9	
Chap. XXVII.*	33 *	A Remedy for Heaving of the Flanks		2	
		Another for the same		2	
		A Powder for the same		4	6
		A Charge for a Strain		2	
Chap. XXVIII.*	34 *	A Remedy for a Horse that is over heated			
		A Remedy for a Chest-founder			
		Another for the same			
Chap. XXIX.*	35 *	A Remedy for Worms			
		Æthiops Mineral, one Ounce			4
		Another for Worms			
		Purge for Worms			
Chap. XXX.*		Crocus Metallorum, 2 d. 1 Ounce, 1 Pound		2	6
		A Poultice for swell'd Testicles		2	6
		Another			
	36 *	Another			
		A Plaister for the same			



	Page.		l.	s.	d.
Chap. XXX.		A Remedy for another Sort of Swelling in the Testicles			
		Another			
		Another			
Chap. XXXI.	37	A Stone for a Gangrene		1	6
		Another Remedy for the same			
		A Remedy to hinder the Gangrene reaching the Heart		1	8
		Another for the same			
		A Fomentation for the same			
		A Drink against internal Venom			
		Another with <i>Venice</i> Treacle		1	8
Chap. XXXII.	38	For Bites of venomous Animals			
		An Ointment of Colewort Leaves			
Chap. XXXIII.		To purge a Horse gently, and fatten him			
		A Decoction of Starlings			
		A Feed with Nettle Seed			
		— with Fenugreek Seed			
		— with Rye Flour			
		Balls to give a Horse Appetite		1	2
		A Wash for Cancers in the Mouth			
Chap. XXXIV.	39	A Remedy for the Tongue cut by the Bridle			
		Another with Figs			
		Pills for a Horse in a sick and languishing Condition		2	6
		A Purge for a Horse with sweet Oil		2	6
		A Wash for all Sorts of Wounds		2	6
		A Remedy to dry up Wounds			
		A Suppurative for Kernels on a Horse's Back			
		Effence of Turpentine, one Ounce			2
	40	Another Remedy for a fore Back			6
Chap. XXXVII.	41	A Remedy for Hurts on the Withers			
Chap. XLII.	44	Another			
		A Remedy for a bruised Shoulder			
		An Ointment for the same		1	2
	45	<i>Flanders</i> Oil of Bays, one Pound		2	
		Candles for a Shoulder-slip		2	6
Chap. XLIII.	46	An Ointment for the Sponge		3	
Chap. XLVI.	48	A Remedy for Splints			
	49	An Ointment for Splints and Fusses			7
		Another			
		Another			
		A Caustic for the same			6
		Another			
		Another			
Chap. XLVIII.	51	An Ointment for Windgalls		3	
		A Remedy to make Windgalls disappear			
Chap. XLIX.	52	An Ointment for Burns			
Chap. L.	53	An Ointment for the Mallenders			
		Another for Mallenders, Mules, and Sallenders		2	4
		Another			
		Another		2	
Chap. LIV.	55	A Remedy for a Blow on the Nerve			
		An Ointment for the same		2	6
		A Remedy for the Nerves		3	



	Page.		l.	s.	d.
Chap. LIV.		Another for ruin'd Nerves		1	2
	56	A Fomentation for the same		2	
		Oil of Nuts for swelled Legs, one Pound		2	
		Another Remedy for the same			
		An Ointment for a Horse that has got Thorns } in Hunting		2	6
		An Ointment to fortify relax'd Nerves		2	6
Chap. LV.	57	A Remedy for Mallenders and Sallenders			
Chap. LVI.		A Digestive for a Blow near the Fetlock			8
	58	A Remedy for a simple Javart			
		A Plaister for the same			
Chap. LVII.	59	A Tincture for a Prick in a Horse's Foot			8
		Powdered Sublimate, one Ounce			6
		Another Remedy for the same			
Chap. LXI.	61	An Ointment for Maltlongs or Maltworms			8
Chap. LXIII.	62	A Remedy for a Quarter Seyme			
		Another for ditto			
		Another with Orpiment			
Chap. LXIV.		A Remedy for a Bleye			
		Another			
	63	A Defensative when a Horse's Soles are drawn			
Chap. LXV.		A Wash for drying of corrupted Frogs		1	4
	64	Aqua Infernalis		3	2
Chap. LXVI.	65	An Ointment for narrow Heels			
Chap. LXVIII.	66	A Remedy for a Numbness or Stunning of the Hoof			
		Another			
		Another to make the Feet good			
Chap. LXIX.		A Remedy for a Horse that is tender sol'd		4	4
		Another for fat and soft Feet			
	67	An Ointment for all Sorts of Feet			
Chap. LXX.	68	A Remedy for the Capelet			
		Another with Spirit of Turpentine			
Chap. LXXII.	69	Ætherial Spirit of Turpentine, one Ounce			2
		A Remedy for extended or relax'd Nerves			
		An Ointment for the same		2	4
Chap. LXXIII.		A Remedy for Disorders in the Haunch			
Chap. LXXIV.	70	— for a false Step			
Chap. LXXV.		— for the Comb or Crown Scab			
	71	An Ointment for the same			
Chap. LXXVI.		A Remedy for Watery Sores on the Leg			9
		Another for the same			
		A Remedy for watery Sores		6	6
		Another for the same Distemper		2	6
		Another for scabby Legs		3	4
		Another for watery or scabby Legs		2	
Chap. LXXVII.	72	Lapis Infernalis for Warts, one Ounce			6
		A Stone to eat off Warts and proud Flesh		1	6
Chap. LXXXI.	74	A Remedy for batter'd Soles			
Chap. LXXXIII.	75	— for Spavins			
		The strong Ointment for Spavins			
Chap. LXXXIV.	76	A Remedy for Varices		5	
Chap. LXXXV.		— for a Vessigon			
		Another with Spirits of Wine and Camphire			
Chap. LXXXVII.	79	Purging Pills for a Horse		5	
		Another Purge with Æthiops Mineral		2	
				2	4

Liver



	Page.		<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
Chap.LXXXVII.		Liver of Antimony, one Pound —		2	
		Crocus Metallorum, one Pound —		2	6
	80	A Glister for a Looseness			
		Another for a Horse that has taken a Purge } which has not work'd		2	
		A refreshing Glister —		2	
		Another —		2	
		The cordial and universal Powder, one Pound		2	
	81	Another Medicine to fortify a Horse whose Ap- } petite is pall'd		1	6
		How to dye the Hair of a Horse			
		How to paint the Eye-brows of an old Horse			
		A Remedy to make Hair come			
	82	How to make what we call a Star come on the Forehead of a Horse			
		How to fill up the hollow Places over a Horse's Eyes			
		Remedies for Figs in a Horse's Feet —		4	
	83	Double Aquá Fortis, one Ounce —			4
	84	Madam Feuillet's green Balsam, one Ounce — Gunshot Water		1	
	85	Lapis Mirabilis, one Ounce —			8
		A Remedy for Sprains			
		A Poultice for swell'd Stones.			





## I N D E X S

T O

## V O L U M E II.

## I. An Index of Diseases, and other Particulars relating to the Knowledge of a Horse.

## A.

*AGE* of a Horse, how to know, 5.  
*Anticor*, or Anticow, 33. Most dangerous in hot Countries, *ibid.*  
*Appetite*, bad, 38.

## B.

*Barbs*, how to know and cure, 6.  
*Bastard-Strangles*, 12.  
*Batter'd Soles*, 73.  
*Beating* of the Flank, occasioned by Straining, 33.  
*Begue*, a Mark so called, 6.  
*Bite* of a mad Dog, 116, 126.  
*Bite* of a Serpent, or other venomous Animal, 37.  
*Bleyme*, how to know, &c. 62.  
*Bloated* Windgalls, 50.  
*Blood* Spavins, 74.  
*Bloody* Gripes, 27.  
*Bloody* Urine, 85.  
*Blow* on the Eye, 8. On the Nerve, 54.  
 Between the Fetlock and Heel, 56.  
*Bone-Spavin*, 74.  
*Bow* Legs, a Horse that has them to be rejected, 54.  
*Broken* winded, or Purfive, 34.  
*Burns*, 52.

## C.

*Cancer* in the Mouth, 38.  
*Cancerous* Farcy, 17.  
*Cancerous* Glanders, 15.  
*Canker* in the Nose, 118, 121.  
*Capelet*, or Passe Campana, 68.  
*Chest-Foundering*, 34\*.  
*Cholick*, see Gripes, 118, 120.  
*Circled* Feet, 73.  
*Cloven*, or Oxes Feet, 61.

*Cold*, 113, 115, 116, 117, 120, 121.  
*Cooling*, or Chilling of the Shoulders, 45.  
*Core* in the Pastern, or Javart, 57.  
*Cough*, see broken Wind, 116.  
*Crown* Scab, or Comb, 70.  
*Curb*, the Distemper so called, 77.

## D.

*Dragon* in the Eye, 20.  
*Dung*, Remark on it, 78.

## E.

*Eye*, Diseases of the, a Blow on the, 8.  
 Hollow, *ibid.*  
*Eyes*, Sight of, disordered, 9. A Web in, *ibid.* Whitlow in, 11.  
*Eyes* of a Colt, how strained, 8.

## F.

*Faintness* for want of Nourishment, 43.  
*False* Step, 69.  
*Farcy*, the several Sorts of, 16. Farini Oculus, *ibid.* Flying Farcy, 17. Corded Farcy, *ibid.* Hen's Arse Farcy, *ibid.* 114, *ibid.* 115, 122. Cancerous Farcy, *ibid.* Internal Farcy, 18. How to manage, *ibid.*  
*Farini* Oculus, see Farcy.  
*Fashions*, Description and Cause of, 31.  
*Fat* Spavin, 75.  
*Feet*, soft and tender, 66, 67. Full, or clogg'd up, 73. Circled, *ibid.*  
*Fetlock* and Heel, a Blow between, 56.  
*Fever*, or fiery Evil, 30, &c. How to know, *ibid.*  
*Figs* in a Horse's Feet, 82, 83.  
*Flanks*, see Heaving.  
*Fleshy* Fogs on the fore Feet, 72.  
*Flying* Farcy, see Farcy.

*Forging*,



*Forging*, what it means in a Horse, 54.  
*Foundering* of Horses, Causes and Description of it, 22, 23.  
*Frogs*, or *Frushes*, new, 63. Corrupted, ib.  
*Full*, or clogg'd-up Feet, 73.  
*Fusces*, or *Splents*, 48.

G.

*Gag-Teeth*, how to know and make even, 7.  
*Gangrene*, or *Mortification*, 36\*.  
*Giggs* upon the Lips, how to know and cure, 7.  
*Glanders*, incurable Sorts, 15. Of the Glands, how to know, ib. Of the Spine, or Backbone Marrow, ib. The cankerous Glanders, ibid.  
*Graps* upon the Legs, 72.  
*Greasy* Heels,  
*Green* Diet, a Cause of the Farcy, 22.  
*Gripes*, or *Cholick*, 67, 68, 69.

H.

*Halter-cast*, 59.  
*Haunch*, Disorders of, 69.  
*Head-ach*, and Numbness of the Senses, 29.  
*Head-evil*, the contagious, 13. Cure of, ib.  
*Heaving* of the Flank, 33\*.  
*Heel*, gaul'd,  
*Hen's arse* Farcy, see Farcy.  
*Hoof*, numb'd, 66. Brittle, 67.  
*Horny* Javarts, 58.

I.

*Javart*, or Core in the Pastern, 57.  
*Impostumations* of the Withers, 42.  
*Incastellated* Feet, or narrow Heels, 64.  
*Incontinence* of Urine, 32.  
*Inflammation* of the Yard, Testicles, &c. 41.  
*Internal* Farcy, see Farcy.  
*Itch*, see Mange.

L.

*Lampas*, how to know and cure, 7.  
*Legs*, Defects of, 54. Swelling of, 56.  
 Watery Sores on, 71.

M.

*Mallenders*, how to know, &c. 52, 53.  
*Maltlong*, or Maltworms, 60.  
*Mange*, Itch, or Scab, Causes of, 20.  
*Mark* in a Horse's Mouth, 5. How to counterfeit, 6.

*Melted* Grease, what it is, 24. How to know it, ibid.  
*Moon-Eyes*, how to know, 8.  
*Morfounding*, a Species of the Strangles, 12.  
*Mortification*, see Gangrene.  
*Mules*, distinguish'd from the Mallenders, 53. Transverse, what, 60.

N.

*Narrow* Heels, 64.  
*Navel Galls*, or Hurts upon the Navel, 42.  
*Nerve*, a Blow on the, or Nerve-Shoe, 54.  
*Nerves* that are ruin'd, 55. Relax'd, or extended, 68.  
*Nervous* Windgall, 50.  
*Nervous* Javarts, 58.  
*Numbness* of the Senses, resembling a Vertigo, 29.  
*Numbness*, or Stunning of the Hoof, 66.

O.

*Old Reds*, a Disease so called, being a Species of the Mange, 21.  
*Opening* of the Shoulder, or true Shoulder Slip, 45.  
*Osselets*, the three several Kinds of, 49.  
*Ox-kneed* Horses, incurable, 47.  
*Ox*, or cloven Feet, 61.

P.

*Pissing* Blood, 32.  
*Poison*, internal, 37.  
*Pole-evil*, what, 43.  
*Prick* in the Foot, 59.  
*Proud* Flesh, 20.  
*Purpse*, or broken-winded Horse, 34.

Q.

*Quarter* Seyme, 62.

R.

*Rats Tails* on the Legs, 67.  
*Ring-worms*, see Tetters.  
*Running* at the Nose, 30.

S.

*Saddle* not fit, Effects of it, 43, 44.  
*Sallenders*, Difference between that and the Mallenders, 53.  
*Scab*, see Mange.  
*Scratches*, or Chaps, 59.  
*Seyme*, what and whence, 61.

M m

Shoulder



*Shoulder-slip*, or *Shoulder-wrench*, 43. Different Causes and Kinds of it, ib. 44, 45.  
*Shrew Mouse*, his venomous Bite, 37.  
*Soles*, battered, 73.  
*Spanish Evil*, see *Vertigo*.  
*Spavin*, Bone, 74.  
*Spavin*, Fat, 75.  
*Spavins*, or *Blood-Spavins*, 74.  
*Spinal Glanders*, 15.  
*Splents*, three several Sorts of, 43.  
*Sprains*, 85.  
*Sponge*, a Disease so called, 46.  
*Stable*, infected, may be of dangerous Consequence, 15, 33.  
*Stag-evil*, why so called, &c. 25.  
*Step*, false, 69.  
*Stiffness* of the Legs, 47.  
*Stirrups* uneven, Effect of it, 43.  
*Straining*. Beating of the Flank, occasioned by Straining, 34.  
*Strangles*, various Species of, 11. How to know them, 12.  
*Stranguillon*, a Species of Strangles, 13.  
*Stunning* of the Hoof, 66.  
*Swelling* of the Testicles, see Testicles.

## T.

*Tail* of a Horse, 40.  
*Teeth*, Names of, and Manner of their coming, 1, &c.

## II. An Index of Remedies, Operations, Instruments, &amp;c.

## A.

*ADders*, Preparation of, for a Seyme, 62.  
*Æthiops Mineral*, for the Worms, 35\*.  
*Antimony*, Liver of, how to make, 79.  
*Appetite*, to provoke, 114.  
*Aqua infernalis*, for corrupted Frogs, 64.  
 How to make, ibid.

## B.

*Bacon*, fat, for a broken Wind, 34. For the Heaving of the Flank, 33\*. Rind of, for Splents, 49.  
*Bag of Sulphur*, for the Mange, 21. Of hot Ingredients, for the Fever, 80.  
*Balls*, for a Horse to hold in his Mouth, 30.  
 For the Farcy, 19. For a broken Wind, 34.  
 To give a Horse Appetite, 38. Pectoral, 116. Other Sorts, 119, 121.  
*Balm*, green, *Madam Feuillet's*, 84.

*Tender-sole*, 66.  
*Testicles*, Swelling of the, 35\*. Another Sort, 36\*.  
*Tetters*, or Ring-worms, 22.  
*Thorn* got in Hunting, 56.  
*Tongue* cut by the Bridle, 39.

## U.

*Varices*, 76.  
*Venom*, see Poison.  
*Vermiforme*, the Vertigo so called.  
*Vertigo*, or *Spanish Evil*, 28.  
*Vessigon*, 76.  
*Vives*, Cause, &c. of, 26. To prevent, ib.  
 More of, ib. And in the Chapter of Gripes.  
*Urine*, see Incontinence of, and Bloody.

## W.

*Warts* upon the Legs, 72.  
*Watery Sores* on the Legs, 71.  
*Web* in the Eye, 9.  
*Whitlow* in the Eye, 11.  
*Windgalls*, the three several Kinds of, 50.  
 What Horses are most subject to them, ib.  
*Wither-wrung*, or Hurts on the Withers, 41.  
 Impostumations of, 42.  
*Worm*, Notion of one in the Vertigo fabulous, 29.  
*Worms* in Horses, 35\*.  
*Wounds*, all Sorts of, 39.

*Barring* a Vein, 78.  
*Bark*, Jesuits, for a Fever, 30, 31.  
*Bathing*, for a founder'd Horse, 23.  
*Billet* a Horse in gelding, how to, 40.  
*Bite*, Receipt for, 116. Of a mad Dog, to cure, 121.  
*Black Soap*, for the old Reds, 52.  
*Bladder* of a Pig, or Ox, to use in Splents, 48.  
*Bleeding*, when prescribed, with various Methods of, in different Cases, 18, 23, 26, 27, 34\*, 45.  
*Bones* of a Horse, Anatomy of them, 90, &c.  
*Bots*, or Worms, to cure, 122.  
*Broken Wind*, Receipts for, 115.  
*Bull's Pizzle*, it's Use in Farriery, 13, 29.  
*Burgundy Pitch*, prescribed in the Anticor, 33.

## C.

*Candle*, how to make use of one for an Opening of the Shoulders, 45.

*Caustic*,



*Caustic*, to use in Splents, 49.  
*Charge*, the Blistering, 117. Others, 120.  
*Cloth*, Linen for the Pole-evil, 43.  
*Cold*, Sir John Lowther's Receipt for a, 113.  
 A Drink for the same, ib. Various Receipts for, 115, 116.  
*Colt's Foot*, an Instrument so called among Farriers, 7.  
*Commissioners* to buy Horses, Instructions for them, 88, 89.  
*Composition* to hold in the Mouth, 39. For Wringing on the Withers, 41. For the Inside of a Horse's Foot, 66. To put round the Foot of a Horse, ibid. For a false Step, 70.  
*Cordial*, see Draught.  
*Cordial Powder*, how to make, 80.  
*Coudrier*, Mr. de la, his Receipt for a Farcy, 115.  
*Cow-dung*, for a founder'd Horse, 56.  
*Cream*, to be used in Inflammations of the Yard, &c. 41.  
*Crocus Metallorum*, Infusion of, 31. For the Worms, 35.  
*Cutting a Vein*, 78.

D.

*Davenport*, Capt. his Receipt for the Grease, 115.  
*Decoction*, for a morfounder'd Horse, 14.  
 For the Mange, 21. For Pissing of Blood, 32.  
*Defensative* for a Horse whose Soles are drawn, 63.  
*Digestive Ointment*, 57.  
*Draught*, a cordial one, 12. Another, ib.  
 In the Stranguillon, 13. For a sick Horse, 14. For a Running at the Nose, ib. Another, 15. For the Farcy, 18, 19. For melted Grease, 24. For the Stag-Evil, 25. For the Vives, 26. For the Gripes, 27, 28. For the Vertigo, &c. 30. For a Fever, ib. For the Fashions, 31, 32. For a Horse that pisses Blood, 32. For a broken Wind, 34, 35, 36. For the Heaving of the Flanks, 33\*. For the Worms, 35\*. Against a Gangrene, 37. Against internal Poison, ib. To fortify a Horse that is ready to cast, 81. For the Farcy, .  
*Drink* for a Cold, 117, 120. For the Gripes, 118, 120. Other Sorts, 119, 121.

E.

*Eggs*, Yolks of, for a Halter-cast, 59.  
*Elder*, Conserve of, for the Vives, 26.

*Elder Shoots*, for Chest-foundering, 34\*.  
*Emetic*, prescribed, 27.  
*Emetic Wine*, how made, 31.  
*Expressions*, for the Eyes, 14, 15. Of Figs for a broken Wind, 92.  
*Eyes*, various Forms of Remedies for, 10, &c. How to fill up the hollow Places in them, 82.  
*Eye-brows* of an old Horse, how to paint, 81.  
*Eye-water*, for a Blow, 8. For a Web in the Eye, 9. Other Forms of, 9, 10.

F.

*Farcy*, various Remedies for, 42, 48, 114, 122.  
*Farrier*, cannot have a light Hand, 77.  
*Fatten a Horse*, how to, 112, 113, 114.  
*Feet*, how to pare, 82. And dress afterwards, 83.  
*Feuillet*, Madam, her green Balm, 79. How to make, 84.  
*File*, Steel, it's Use to Horse's Teeth, 7.  
*Fire*, to give a Horse the Fire, Manner of that Operation for Windgalls, 51. Only a good Horse worthy of it, 52. Manner of it for Maltlongs, 60. For the Capellet, 68. For the Bone-Spavin, 74. For Spavins in general, 75.  
*Fomentation*, for swelled Testicles, 36\*.  
 Against a Gangrene, 37.  
*Foubert*, Mr. his Ointment, 113.  
*Founder*, various Remedies for, 56, 58, 115.  
*Fumigation*, for a broken Wind, 35.

G.

*Garlick*, Infusion of, for a foundered Horse, 23. To use in Splents, 49.  
*Geld a Horse*, how to do it, 40.  
*Glands*, how to take away, 15. Inefficacy of that Operation, ib.  
*Glisters* prescribed, 22, 24, 25, 28, 30, 33, 34\*. One for the Gripes, 27, 28. For the Fashions, 32. For the Bastard-strangles, ibid. For a Looseness, 80. For a Horse that has taken a Purge, ib. A refreshing one, ib. Others, 118.  
*Goat Horns*, how used in Farriery, 8, 33.  
*Gore*, Capt. his Receipt for a Farcy, 115.  
*Gravel* in the Foot, to cure, 118.  
*Greasy Heels*, Receipts for, 114, 115, 116, 117.  
*Gunshot Water*, or a vulnerary Draught, 84.

H.

*Hair* of a Horse, how to die, 81.  
*Hair* fallen off, to make it come, 22, 81:  
*Hazlestick*,



*Hazlestick*, to use in Splents, 48.  
*Hellebore-root*, how used in the Vertigo, 29.  
 In the Anticor, 34.  
*Holes*, to be made in a Vertigo, 74.  
*Hoof*, to make it grow, 116.  
*Honey* prescribed, for Chest-foundering, 102.  
*Horses*, Characters of those of different Countries, 88, 89.

## I.

*Jesuits Bark*, in Fevers, 30. How supplied, if not to be got, ib.  
*Jews and Jockies*, their Manner of marking Horses, 6.  
*Incision* of the Glands, 15. For the Vives, 26. For the Head-ach, 29. For the Anticor, 33.  
*Impostumation* of the Withers, 42. For stiff Legs, 47.  
*Intusions*, for the Glanders, 16. For the Mange, 21. For melted Grease, 25. For the Vives, 26. For a Fever, 31. For Incontinence of Urine, 32.  
*Iron*, Farrier's, to pierce a Swelling, 33. For a venomous Bite, 37. For an Incision in impostumated Withers, 42.

## K.

*Knives of Steel*, to give the Fire with, 51.

## L.

*Lapis infernalis*, it's Use, and how to make, 72.  
*Lapis Mirabilis*, how used for the Eyes, 18. How to make, 85.  
*Lard*, Boar's, for a broken Wind, 35. For Javarts, 58.  
*Lees of Wine*, in what Case to use, 46.  
*Lily-roots*, for a Javart, 57.  
*Lime-water*, 120.  
*Liniment*, for the Heaving of the Flank, 33\*. Against a Gangrene, 37.  
*Liver of Antimony*, for the Tetters, 53. How to make, 79.  
*Lowther*, Sir John, his Medicines for a Cold, 113.  
*Lye*, for a Farcy, 19.

## M.

*Malt*, to make Extract of, 120.  
*Mares*, how to chuse, 87. Other Particulars concerning, ib. 88.  
*Mafs*, to tie up in a Cloth, 14.

*Mixture*, for a Running of the Nose, 16. For a Farcy, 18. Melted Grease, 25. For the Vives, 26. For a broken Wind, 34, 35, 36.  
*Moon-ey'd Horse*, how to cure, 8.  
*Mountfort*, Mr. his Receipt for any Sore, 121.  
*Muscles* of a Horse, Anatomy of them, 95.

## N.

*Navets*, see Turnips.  
*Nerves* of the fore Legs, how to cut the, 47.

## O.

*Oil of Turpentine and Brandy*, for a foundered Horse, 23. Mixture of, for the Stag-evil, 25. For the Gripes, 26. Of Bays, &c. for a broken Wind, 35. For Heaving of the Flank, 34\*. Against a Gangrene, 35\*. For a Shoulder-slip, 45. For the same, 114. Another, 117. Another, 119. For Strains, &c. 120.  
*Ointments*, to ripen the Swelling in the Strangles, 12. Others for the Strangles, 14. For the Farcy, 18, 19. For the Mange, 20, 21. In the Head-ach, 29. For a venomous Bite, 38. Suppurative, 39, 40. For a Shoulder-slip, or Strain, 44. For the Sponge in Horses, 46. For Splents, 48, 49. For Windgalls, 51. For Burns, 52. For the Mallenders, 53. For a Blow on the Nerve, 55. For ruin'd Nerves, ibid, 56. For relaxed Nerves, 56. For a Thorn in the Foot, ibid. For a Blow on the Fetlock, 57. For incastellated Heels, 65. For the Hoof, 66. To make the Horns good, ib. For a tender Sole, ib. For all Sorts of Feet, 67. For relaxed Nerves, 69. For Disorders of the Haunches, ib. For the Crown-Scab, 71. For fore Legs, ib. For a Spavin, 75. For watry Legs, 113. Foot Ointment, 114. For greasy Heels, ib. For the Farcy, ib. For a Swelling, 116. The Blistering, 117. The Red, for greasy Heels, 118. For the Heels, 119. The Green, for all Sores, ib. For a Strain, ib.

## P.

*Panada*, for the Stag-Evil, 25. For the Fever, 31.  
*Paring the Feet*, for Figs, 82.  
*Patience*, the Herb so called, 42.  
*Perfume*, for a glandery Horse, 16.

*Pills*,



*Pills*, to purge the Brain of a Horſe that has fore Eyes, 9. For a Running at the Noſe, 14. For a broken Wind, 36. For the Heaving of the Flank, 33\*. For the Worms, 35\*. For a Horſe in a languiſhing ſick Condition, 39. General purging ones, 79.

*Plaſter*, for ſwelled Teſticles, 36\*. For Javarts, 58. For a Seyme, 62.

*Poultice*, for ſwelled Teſticles, 35\*, 36\*. For a Bleyme, 62. For Sprains, 85. For ſwell'd Stones, ib. Other Sorts,

*Powder*, to diſſipate a Web, 10. For the Eyes, ib. For a broken Wind, 34, 35, 36. For the Heaving of the Flank, 33\*. Cordial Powder, how to make, 80. A general one, ib.

*Proud Fleſh*, a Compoſition to eat off, 18.

*Purge*, for the Farcy, 8. For the Mange, 21. A gentle one, that fattens a Horſe, 38. Another Sort of, 39. A general one, 78. Another, 79. Another, *ibid*. Another, 115. Another, 121.

## Q.

*Quills*, Goofe, their Uſe in the Head-Evil, 13.

## R.

*Raponti*, or Monk's Rhubarb, 23.

*Reſtringents*, for the fore Feet of a foundered Horſe, 24.

*Rowell*, for the Vertigo, 28. For an Im-poſtumatation on the Withers, 42.

*Ruſhes*, Juice of, for melted Greafe, 24.

## S.

*Scarification* of the Lips, 7.

*Sealing Wax*, to uſe in a Bleyme, 63.

*Shoe*, a peculiar Sort for incaſtelled Heels, 65.

*Shoes*, in what Caſe to be taken off, 23.

*Sope*, black, of uſe in the Glanders, 15. In the Old Reds, 21. In the Tetters, 22. In the Wringing of the Withers, 41. In a lame Shoulder, 44. In the Crown Scab, 70.

*Stable*, how to preſerve, or reſtore an infected one, 89.

*Stale*, to make a Horſe, 18.

*Stallions*, how to chuſe, 87.

*Star* in the Head, how to make one come, 82.

*Starlings*, a Medicine made of them, 38.

*Stone*, to uſe in Farcies, 5. Againſt a Gangrene, 36\*. To eat off Warts, 72.

*Strangles*, various Remedies for, 23, &c.

*Stranguillion*, to cure, 120.

*Stud*, a Treatiſe of the, 86. Rules to be obſerved in, *ib*.

*Suppurative*, for Kernels on a Horſe's Back, 39, 40.

*Swelling*, Receipts for,

*Swim* on dry Ground, how to make a Horſe, 45.

## T.

*Tail*, the beſt Way of cutting it off, 40.

*Teazles*, for a broken Wind, 35.

*Temporal Artery*, how to cut, 13.

*Tendon* of the Leg, how to cut, 47.

*Tile*, Pieces of, to uſe in Splents, 49. In Spavins, 75.

*Tincture*, for Javarts, 58. For a Prick in the Foot, 59.

*Turnips*, wild, to uſe in Splents, 49. In the Mallenders, 53.

*Turpentine*, Spirits of, 44, 55. Effence of, for Splents, 48. For Javarts, 58. For incaſtelled Feet, 65. For the Capelet, 68. For relaxed Nerves, 69. For a falſe Step, 70. For watery Sores on the Legs, 71.

## U.

*Vein*, how to cut, for the Varices, 76. How to bar, for the Curb, 78.

*Vine Aſhes*, preſcribed for Cheſt-foundring, 34\*.

*Vine-Tops*, wild, for a founder'd Horſe, 24.

*Vinegar*, and Honey, their Uſe, 29. Vinegar is in many Compoſitions with Spirits of Turpentine, and with Urine for a Veſſigon. See thoſe Words.

*Unnerve* a Horſe, how to, 9.

*Unſole* a Horſe, how to, 63.

*Urine*, to provoke, 27.

*Urine*, for a Fomentation, 71. For a Veſſigon, 76.

*Vulnerable Draught*, or Gunſhot Water, 84.

## W.

*Waſh*, for a Cancer in the Mouth, 38. For a Tongue that is cut, 39. For a Blow on the Nerve, 55. For corrupted Frogs, 63. For ſore Legs, 71.

*Water*, ſee Eye-Water. For all Sorts of Wounds, 39. Sharp Water, 121. Other Sorts, 119, 120.

*Wedge* of Wood, for a Horſe's Mouth, 25.

*Whale-bone*, uſe of in the Gripes, 68.

*Whip* a Horſe in gelding, how to, 40.

*Windgalls*, to make them diſappear, 51.

*Worm*, the *Italians* pretended Manner of taking it, 29.

## N n



*An INDEX of Remedies in the Supplement, with the Prices of the principal affixed to them.*

	s.	d.		s.	d.
Page 113. <b>A</b> Receipt for a Cold			To ease a Splint or Spavin	1	0
by Sir John Lowther			The red Ointment for Grease or		
A Drink for a Cold, by the same	1	8	Cracks	3	
An Ointment for watery Legs, by			A Purge	1	8
Monfieur Foubert			For a Canker in the Nose of a Horfe	1	
Another			For a Swelling	2	4
Page 114. Foot-Ointment			A Cure for the Gravel in a Horfe's		
A Salve for Horfes Hoofs from			Foot		
Petworth			A Glyster for a Horfe		
For the Grease in the Heels			A Purge for a Horfe	1	8
Another			Page 119. A sharp Water		
For the Farcy, from Stockpool	1	6	A Drink		
Another for the Sores			For a Strained Shoulder	1	8
To manage a Horfe with the Farcy			Ointment for Horfes Heels	4	8
Another Receipt for the Farcy			Green Ointment for Wounds and		
from the Farrier at Bucks	2		Sores	1	3
For a Shoulder Slipt or Stiff			For a Horfe's Foot when the Sole is		
For the Farcy	2		taken out		
Page 115. Another from Monfieur			Horse Balls at 2s. 6d. per lb.		
De la Coudrier			A Drink	1	
For the Grease in Ireland			A Sharp Water for a Fistula or		
For the Farcy from Capt. Gore			Cancer, or to wash and cure		
For the Farcy			any Sore	2	
For the heat of the Feet or foundering			Page 120. For the Gripes	1	6
For the Grease, from Capt. Davenport			A Hoof Salve		
A Purge for a Cold	1	2	Lime-Water for the Mange		
For a Cold			Ointment for Horfes Heels	1	4
For the Breaking a Cold			A Charge		
Another Purge not so strong as the			For the Stranguillion		
other	1		Oils good for Strains, Knocks		
A Receipt for a Cold			or Swellings	1	8
For a broken or short winded Horfe			A Drink for a Cold		
Page 116. To make a Horfe's Hoof			For a Cold		8
grow			To make Extract of Malt		
For a Bite			Page 121. For a Cold		
For a Crack or Prick in the Hoof			For a Strain in the Back Sinew		
For a Gall'd-Heel			Balls		
To refresh a Horfe after a Cold			For a Cold	1	4
For a Swelling			A Purge		9
A Pectoral Ball for a Cough	1	10	A Drink	1	10
For the Grease in Horfes Legs			For the Canker		
Page 117. Another			Sharp Water		
A Drink for a Cold			A Poultice		
To take off a Splint			For the Bite of a Mad-dog		
For a Cold	2		A Receipt for any Sore		
For a Shoulder slip or			by Mr. Mounford		
stiff Shoulder			For a Splint, Spavin, or Ringbone		
Sharp Water			Page 122. For Worms and Bots		
The Blistering Charge	2	6	For a Swelling		
A Blistering Ointment	4	0	For any Swelling or Strain		
To make a Horfe Stale			For a Splint, Spavin, or Curb		
Page 118. For the Gripes			To cure the Bots, or Worms	1	0
A Purge to be worked with warm			For a Sinew Strain		
Water	1	8	A Gripe Drink		
			For the Gripes	1	6
			A Receipt for the Farcy	2	3

*F I N I S.*



a

8



1. Shows the barbs that hinder a Horse from drinking.
2. Where to make the Operation for the Anticor.
3. 4. Seat of the Ring Bones.
5. Seat of the Crown-scalp.
6. The Pincer.
7. The Middle Tooth.
8. The Corner Tooth.
9. The Tusk.



1. Where the Leg trembles after hard Labour.
2. Mark of a Horse that stumbles or falls on his knees.
3. Circled Feet.
4. Blisters on the Lips.







C









d



1. The Operation for palsy Horses.  
2. Elbow of the Hough.  
3. Shackle Vein.  
4. Close Heeld.  
5. Pastern Joint.  
6. Horny Hoof.

7. Chaps in the Heel.  
8. Hoof bound.  
9. Sole of the Foot.  
10. Rats tail on the Legs.  
11. Tufts.  
12. Elephantick Scurf.







2



1. Seat of the Bone Spavin.
2. Seat of the Ring-bones.
3. Knubs and Warts.
4. To know the true or bastard Strangles by the Nose.
5. How to make a Horse carry his Ears well.
6. Boreing of Shoulder with Artual Cautery.
7. Operation for Lameness in of Round bone.
8. A Quiter Bone.









1. Claw in the Eye.  
 2. Where to bleed Horses.  
 3. Splents.  
 4. Sinew Sprain.  
 5. Outward or inward Seime.

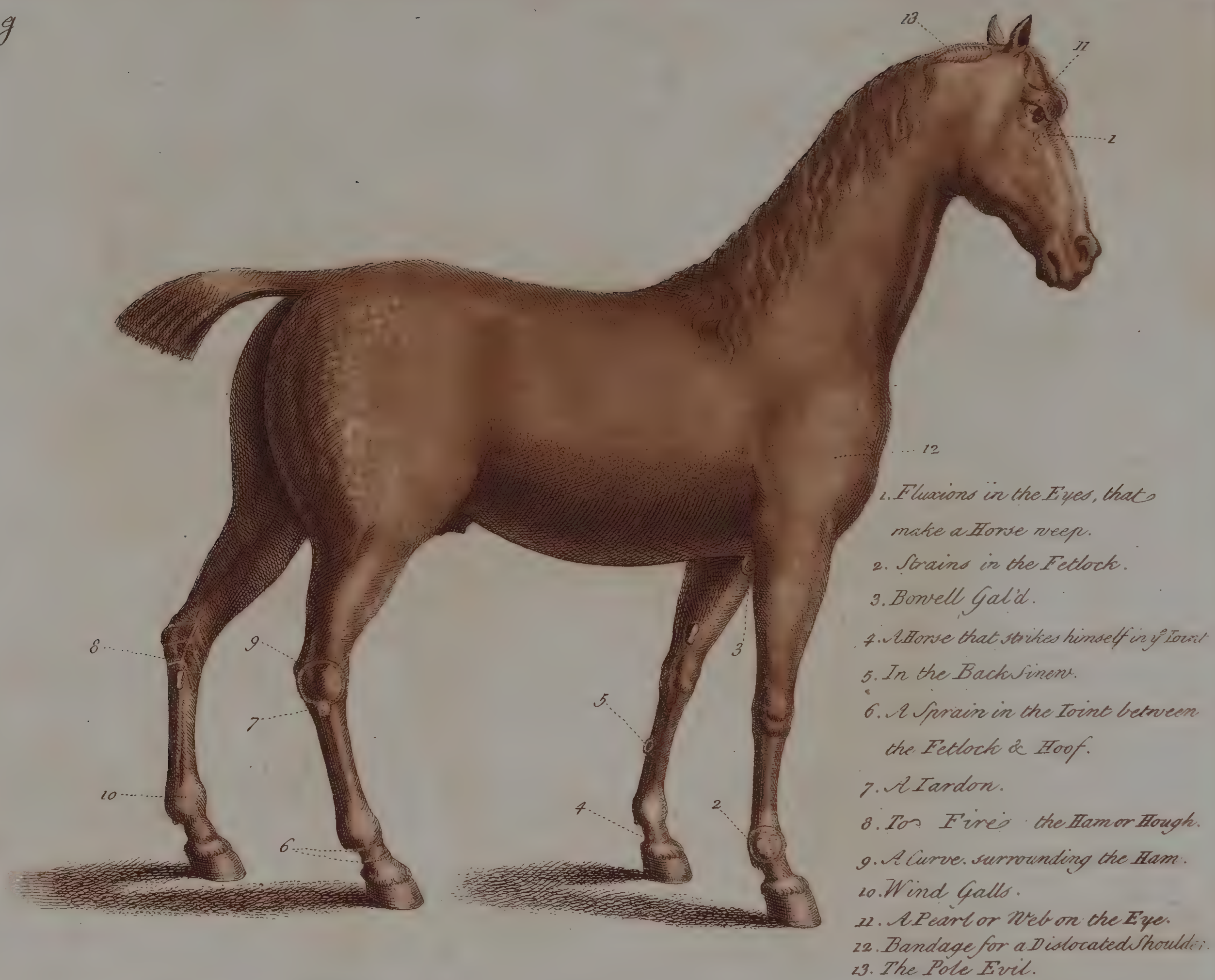
6. To know when a Horse has  
 the Antecor, or Palpitation of Heart.  
 7. A Simple Motette.  
 8. Blood Sparin.

9. Nervous Motette behind.  
 10. Dry Spavins.  
 11. Wind Gall.  
 12. String Halt.  
 13. Excreencies on the Sides.  
 14. Operation on the Artery  
 for Sore Eyes.  
 15. Bandage for y<sup>e</sup> Scifle.  
 16. To Seton y<sup>e</sup> Shoulder.

















1. 7. Seat of the Lampas.
2. 5. A Horse that Knuckles Over.
3. A Sand Crack.
4. Crown Seal.
6. Where to bleed for the  
Shoulder-slip or Shoulder-Wrench.



1. Operation for the Vertigo,  
or Staggers.
2. A Seton to draw Humors from the <sup>Eyes</sup>
3. A Wound.
4. Operation for a Chest-founder.
5. Cloven or Ox Feet.







h









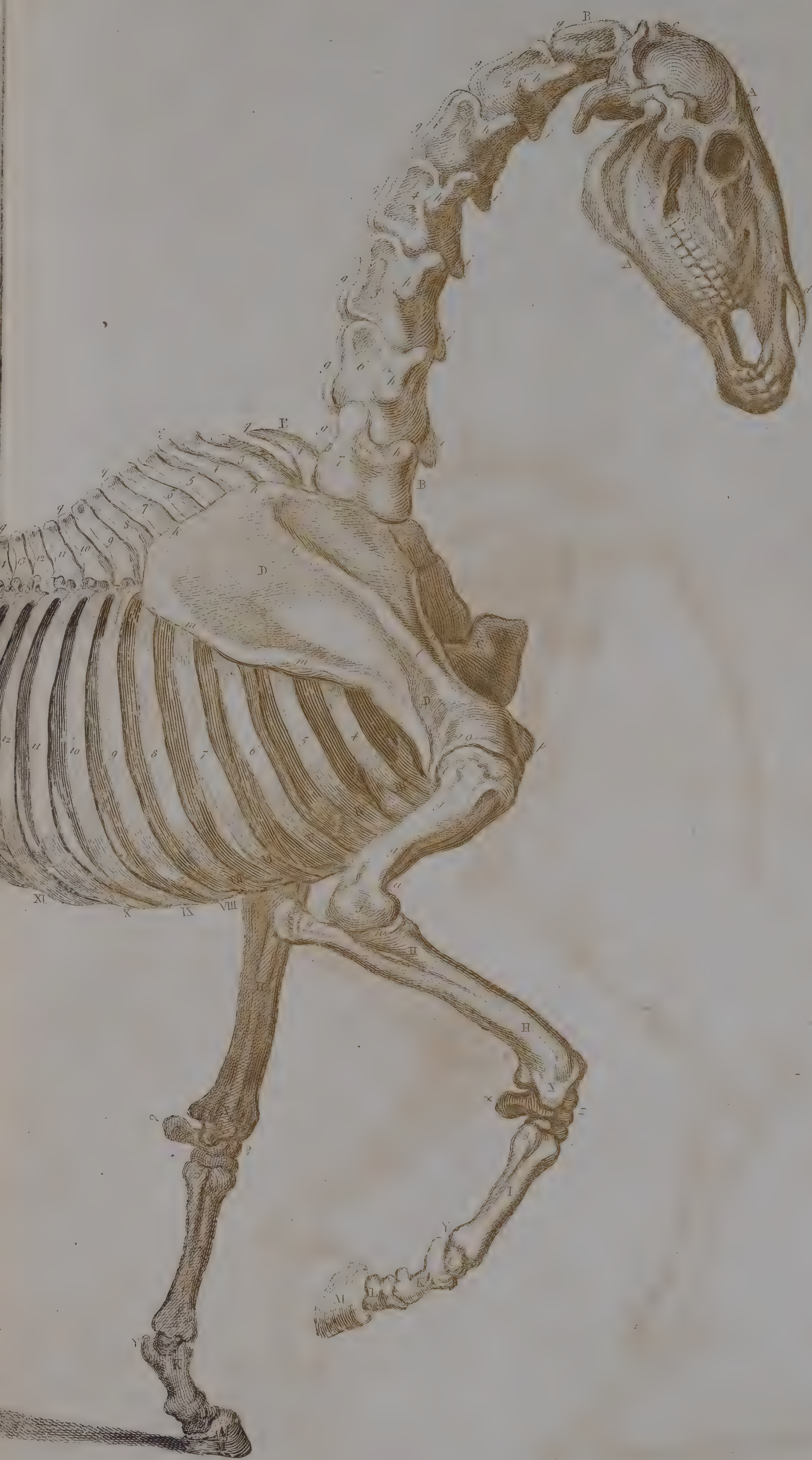






Indica del.





A. Parr Sculp.







PLATE. II.

Fig. 2.



Fig. 1.

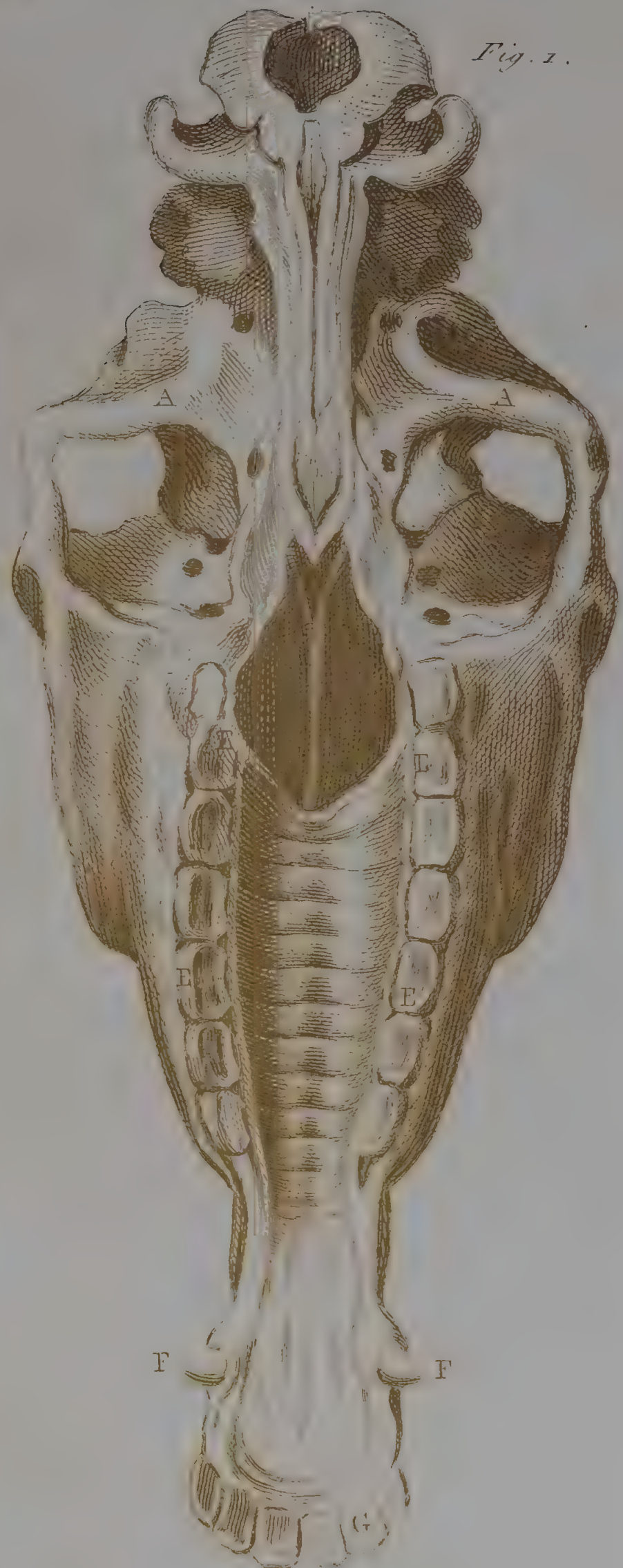


Fig. 3.

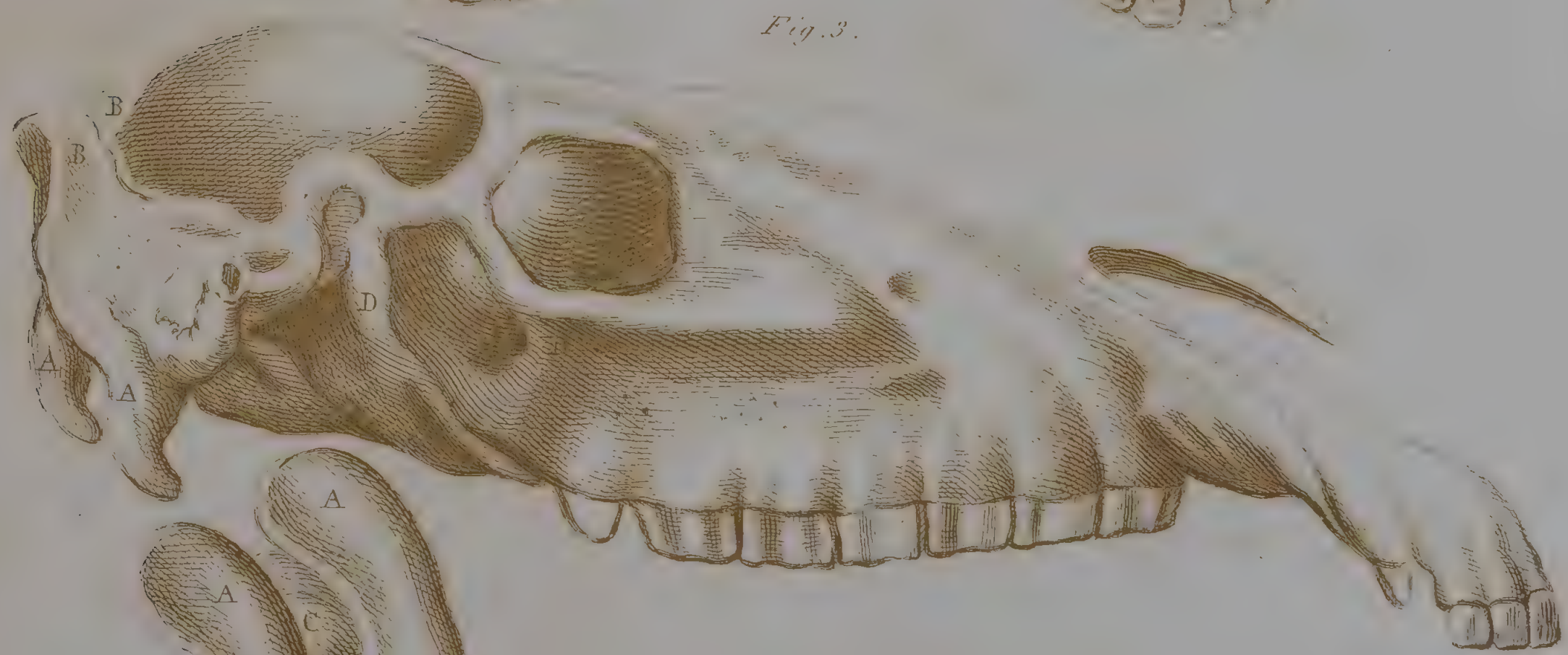
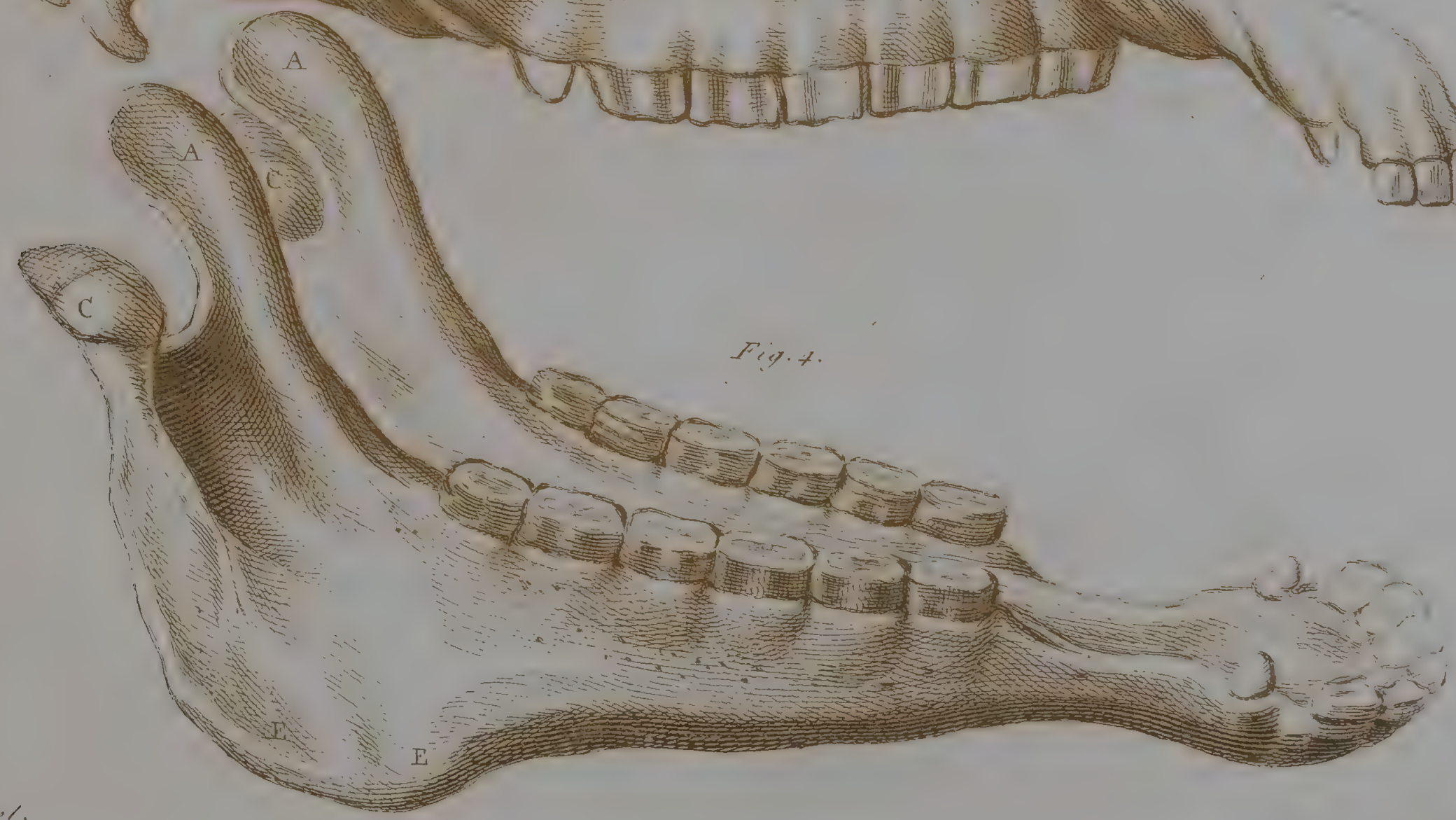


Fig. 4.



Andrea del.

R. Parnock.







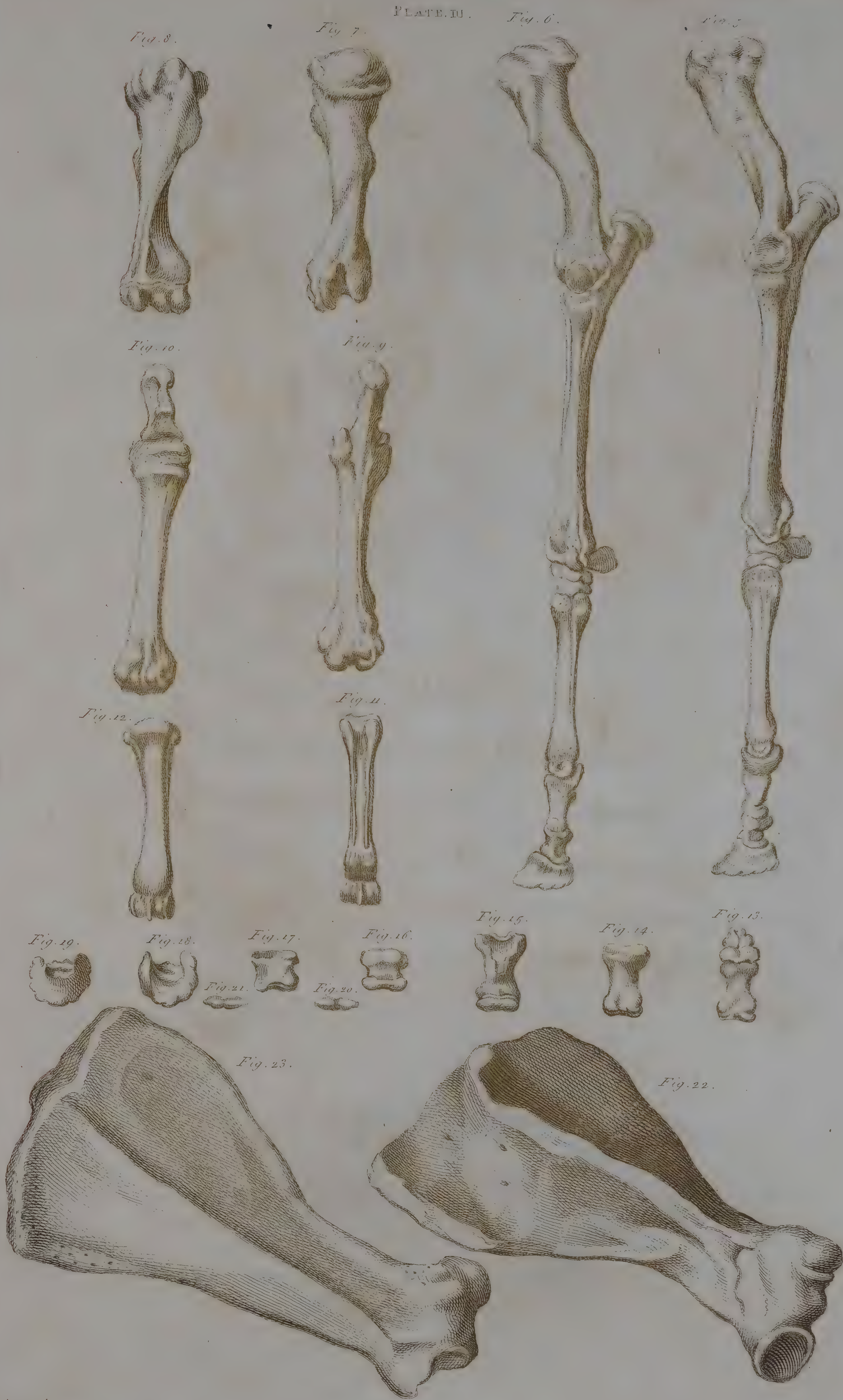








PLATE. IV.

Fig. 26.

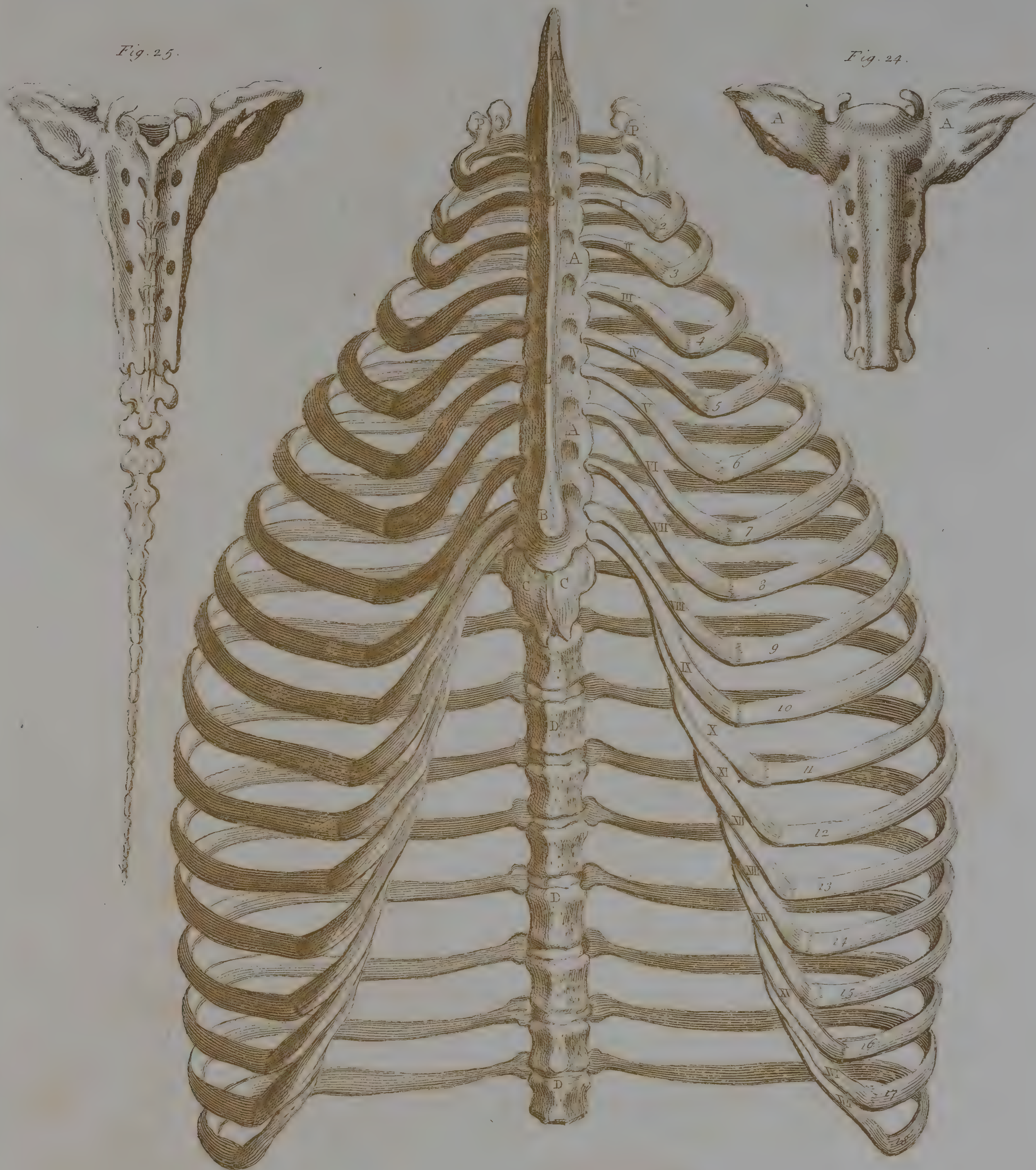
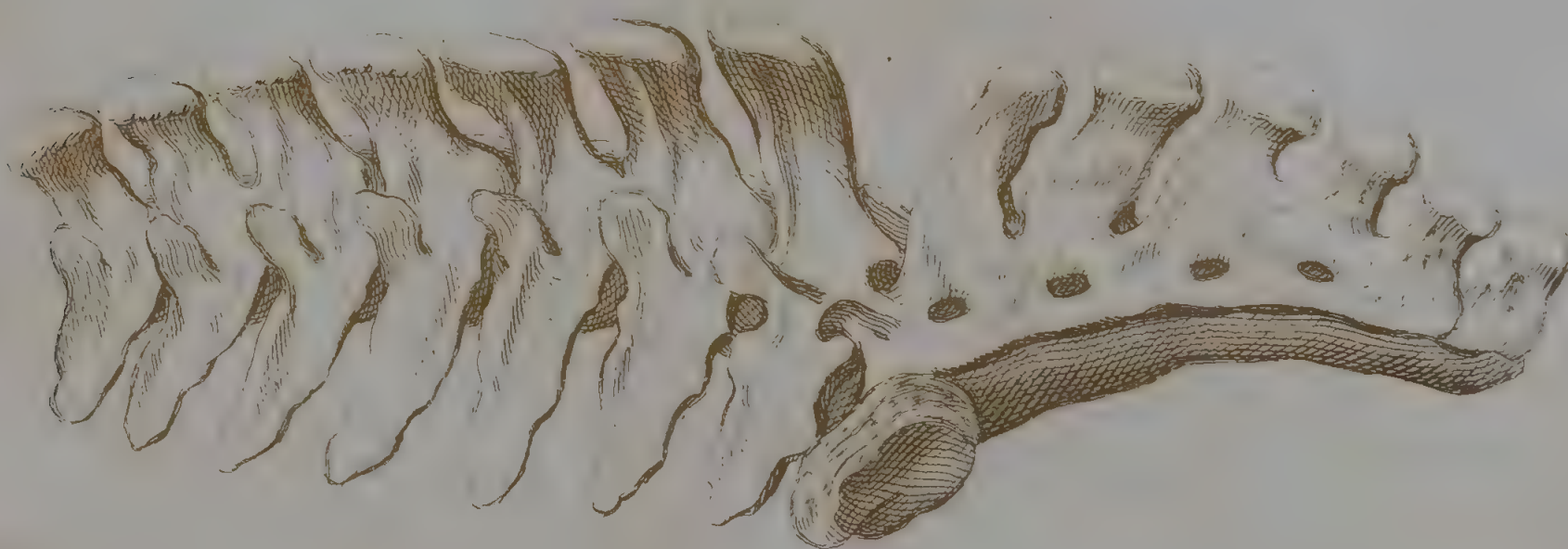


Fig. 27.

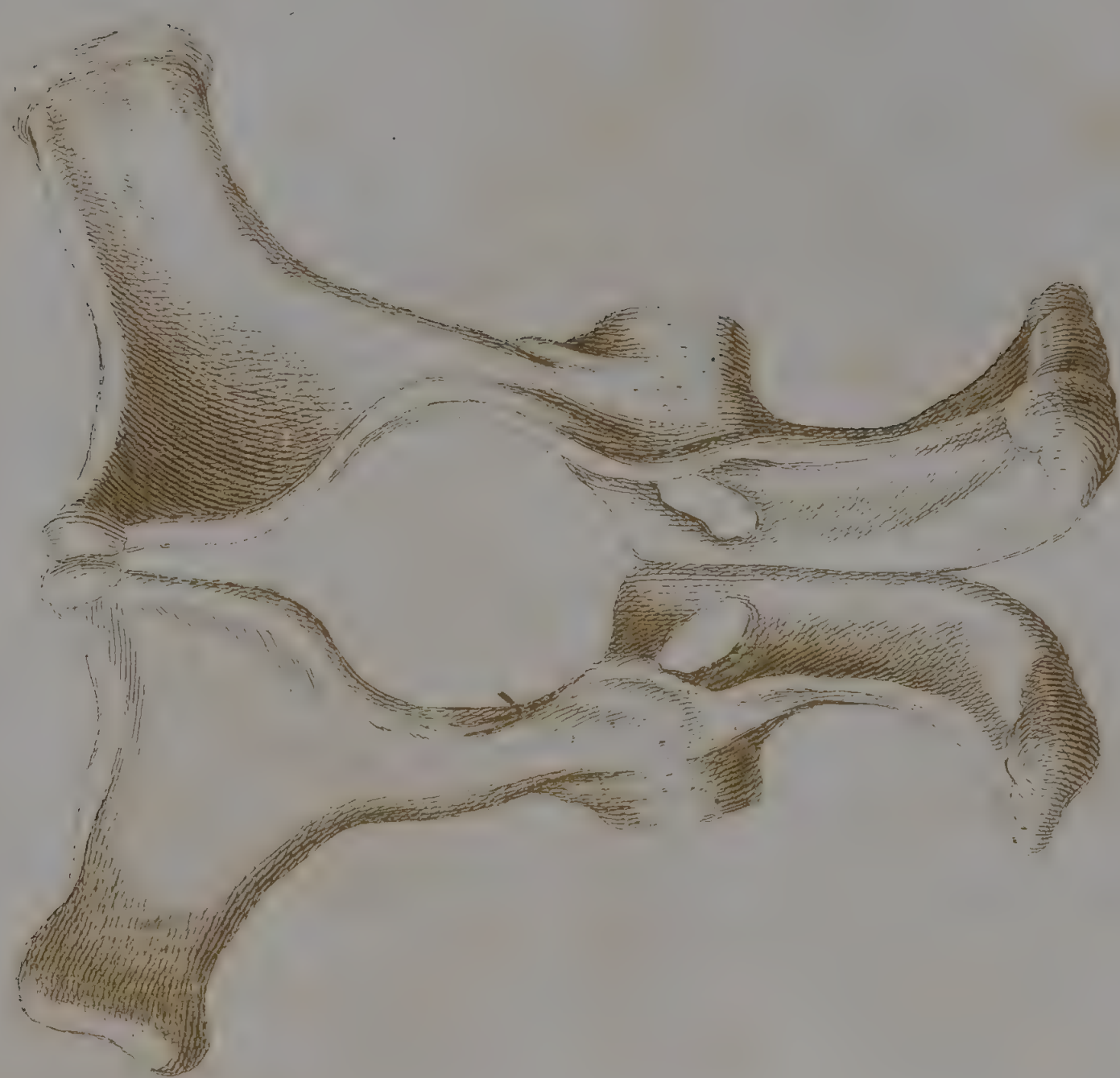








*Fig. 28.*



*Fig. 29.*

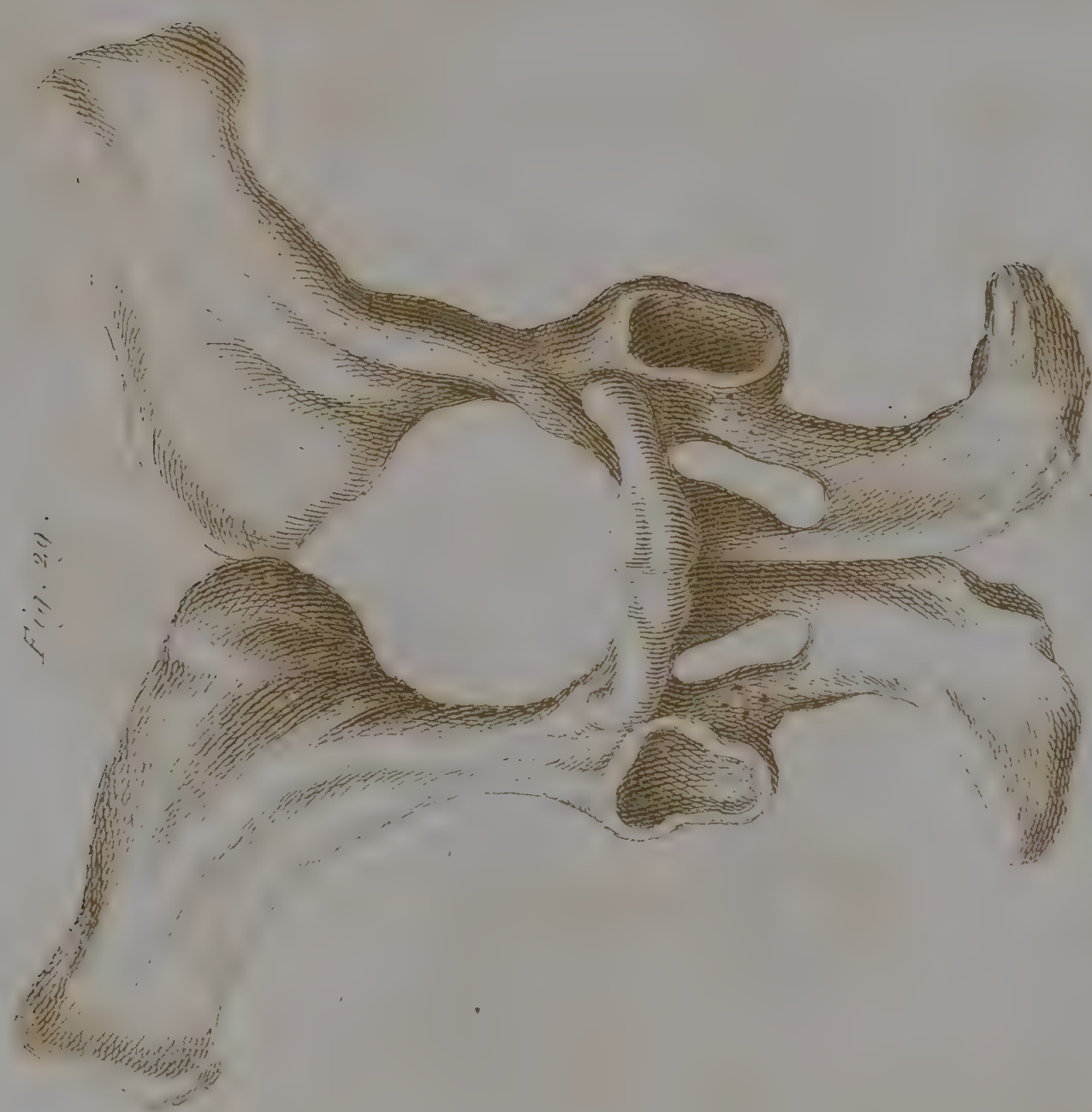








PLATE. VI.



R. Parr Sculp













Andrea del.





*R. Tarr Sculp.*





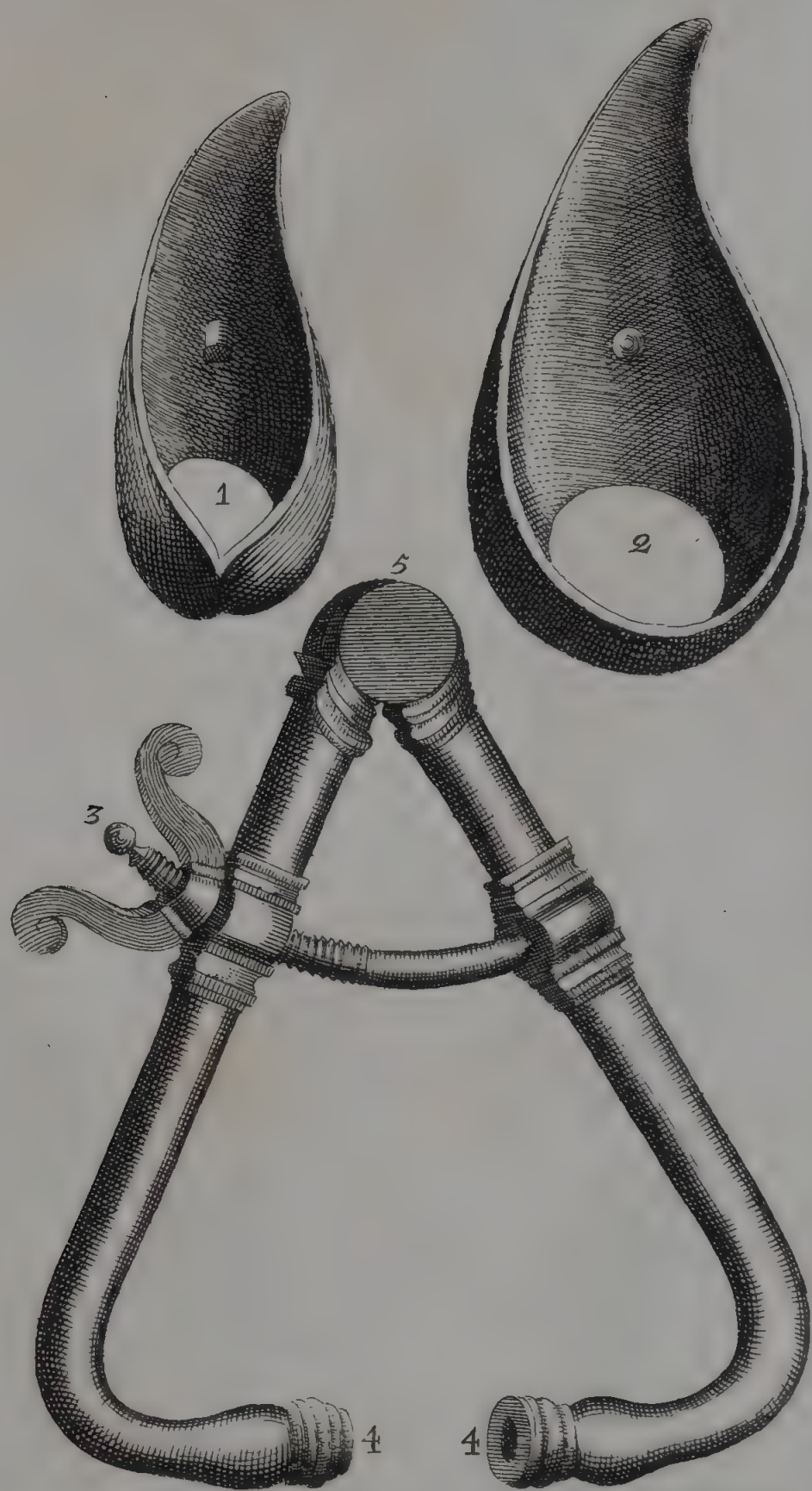
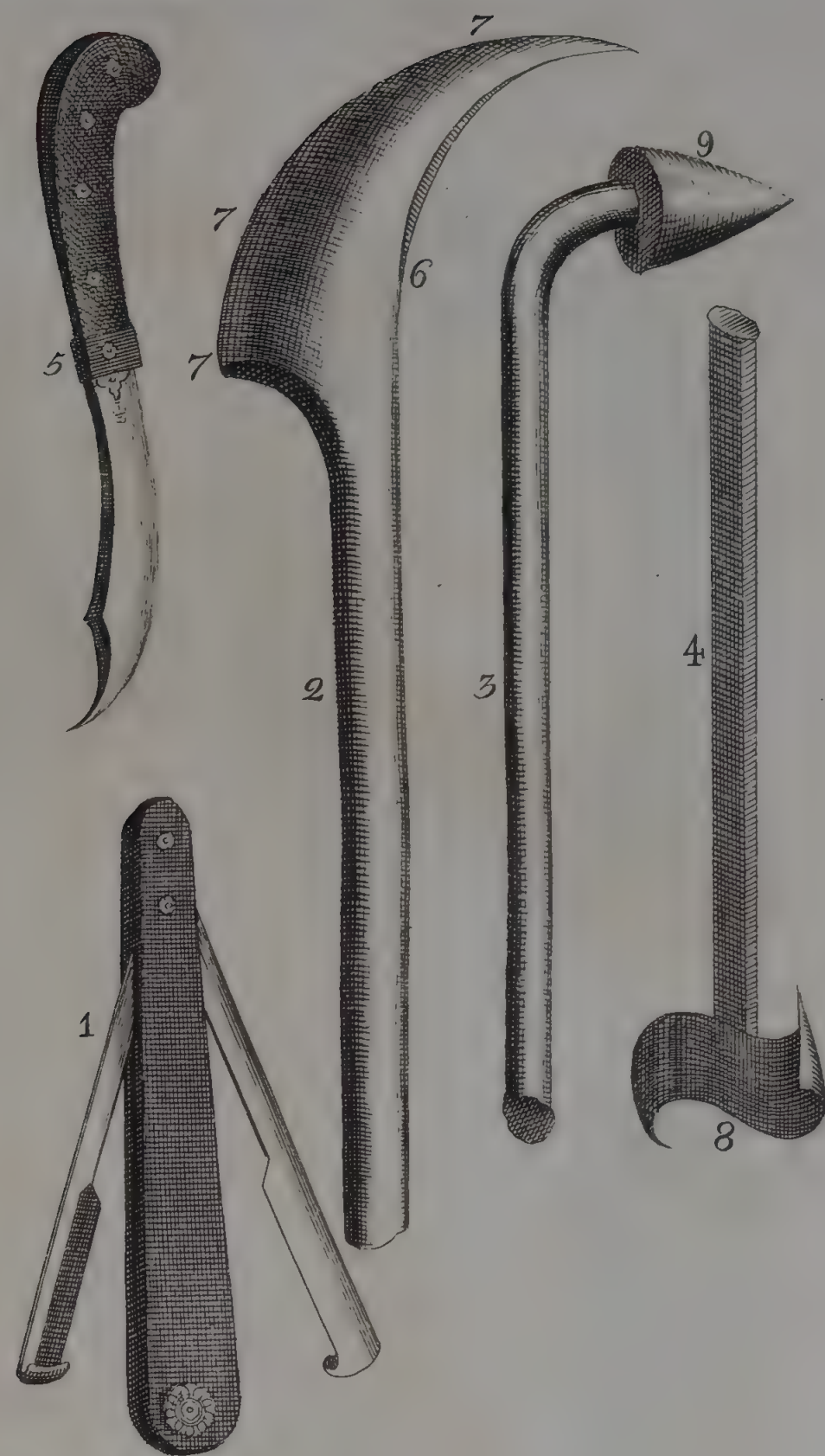
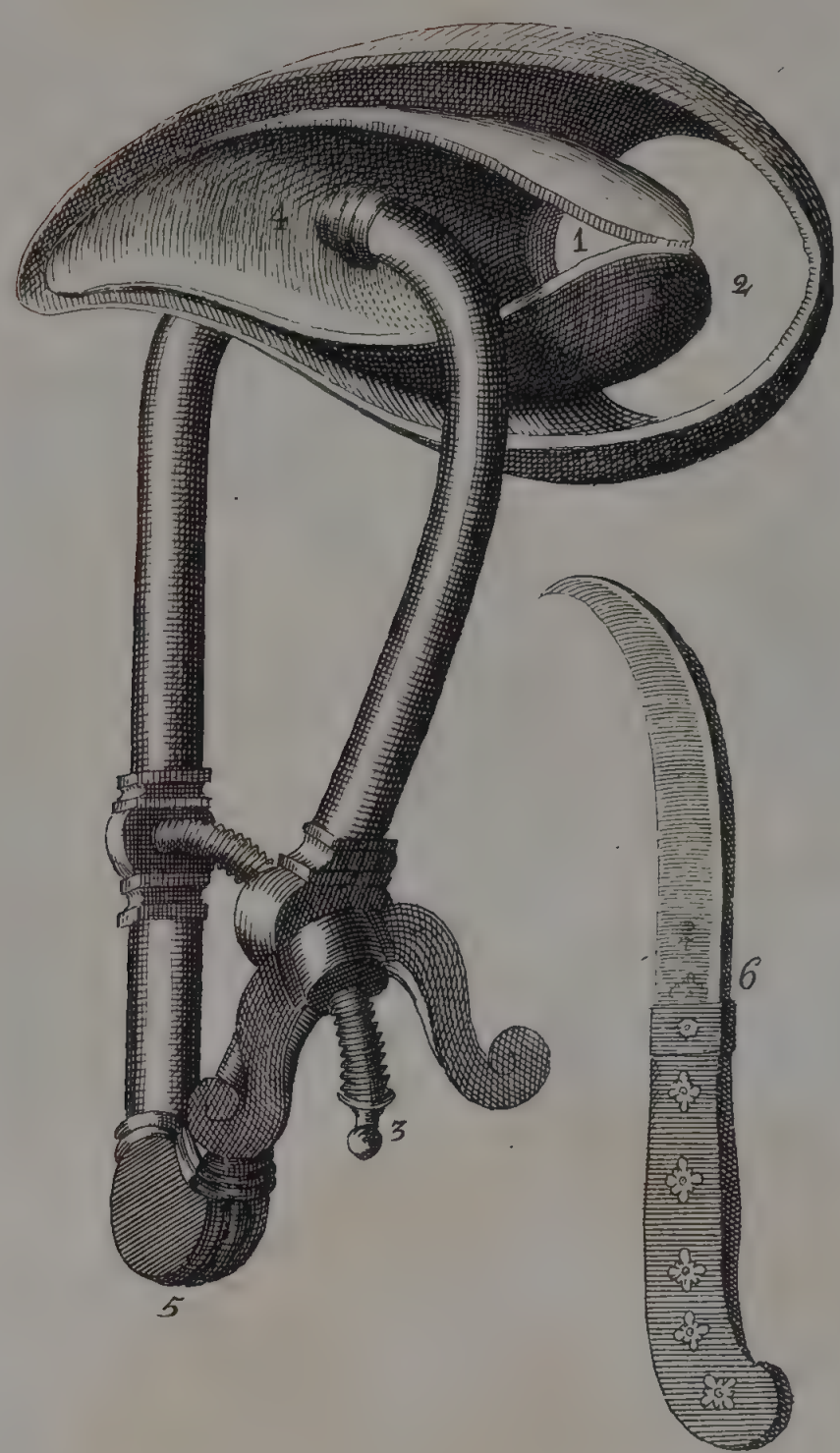








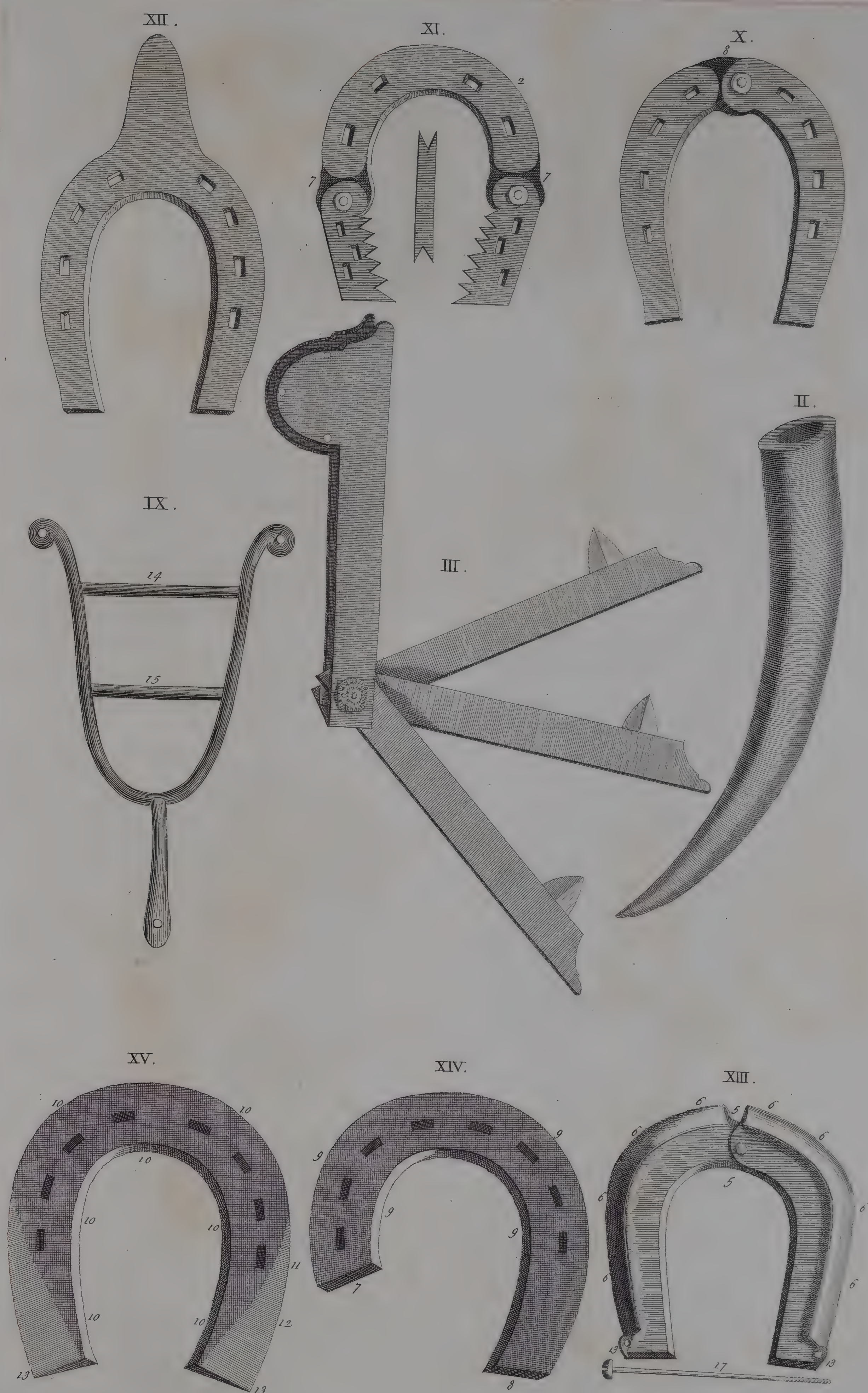










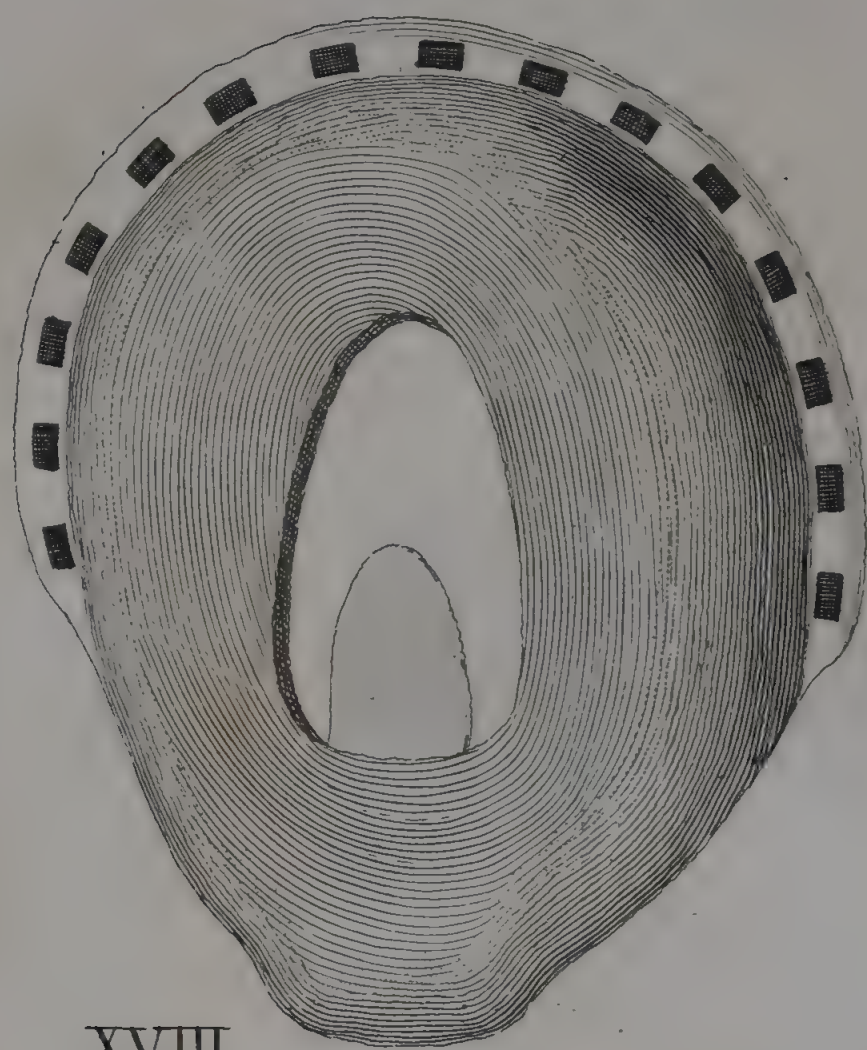








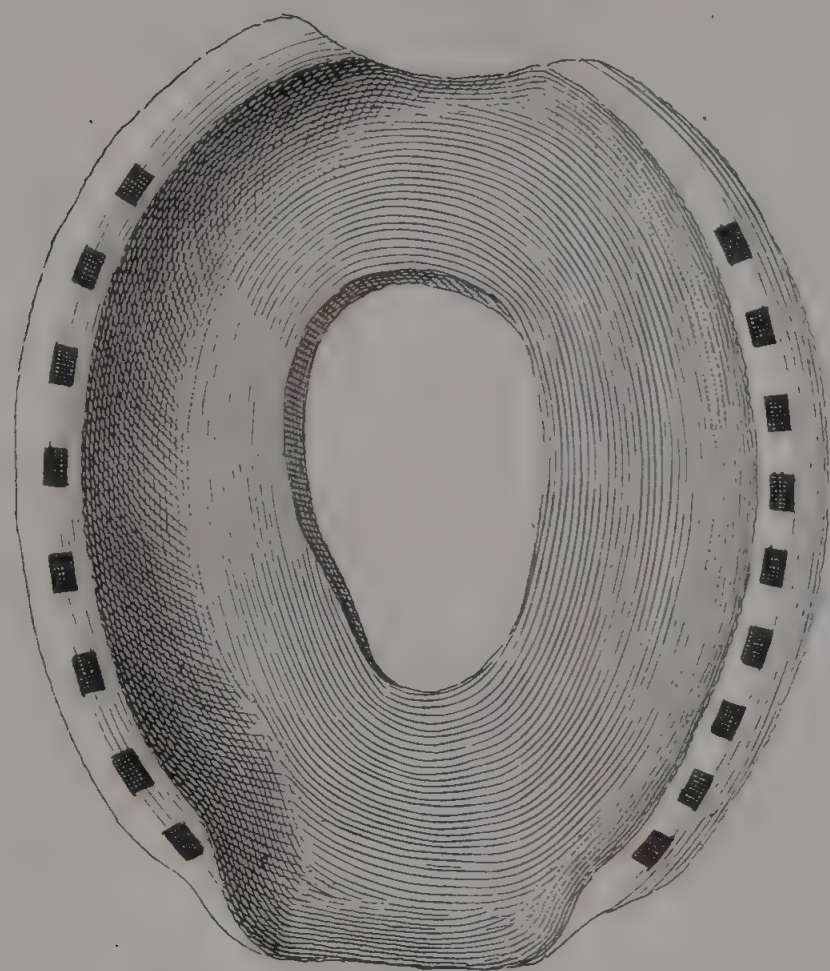
XVI.



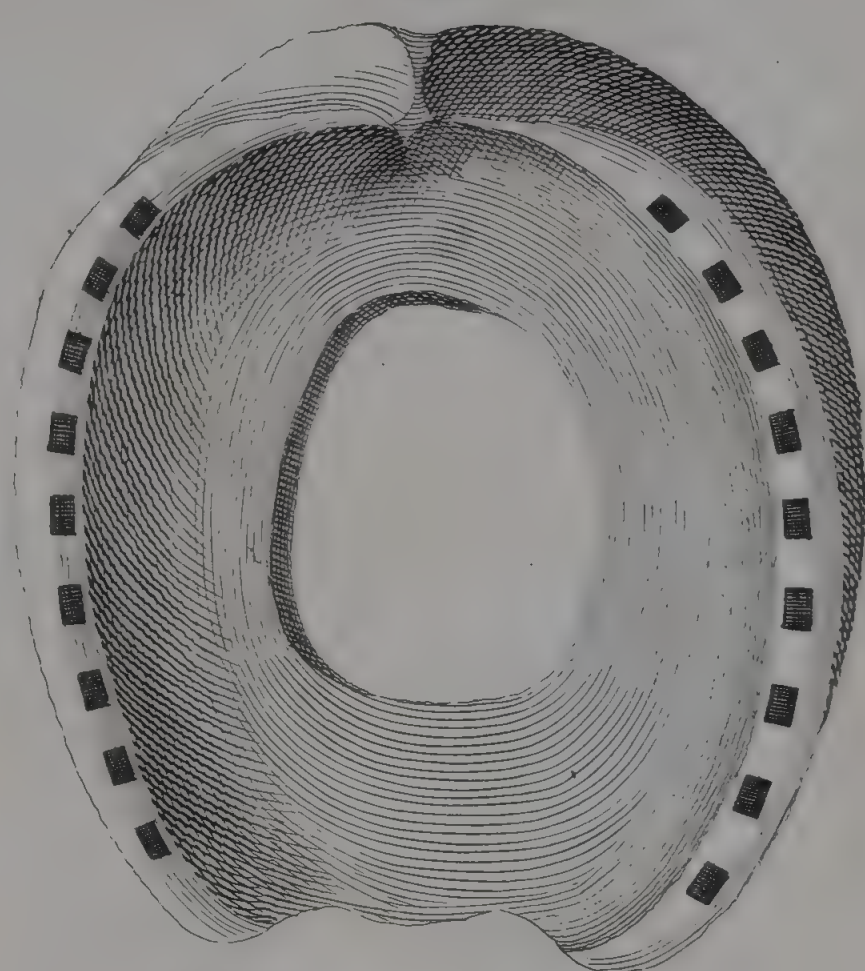
XVII.



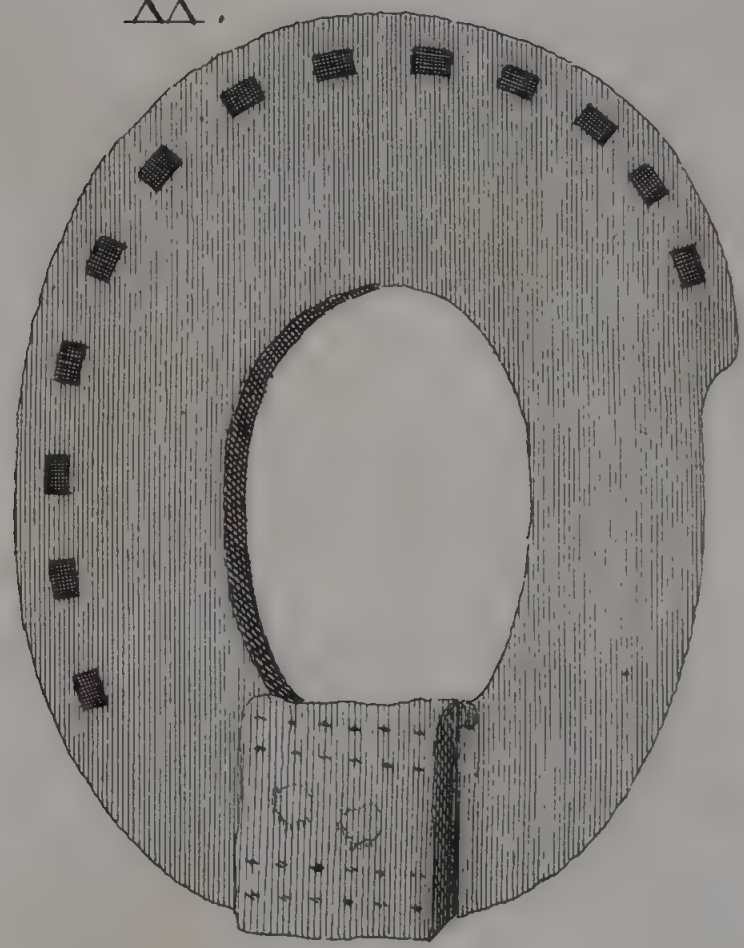
XVIII.



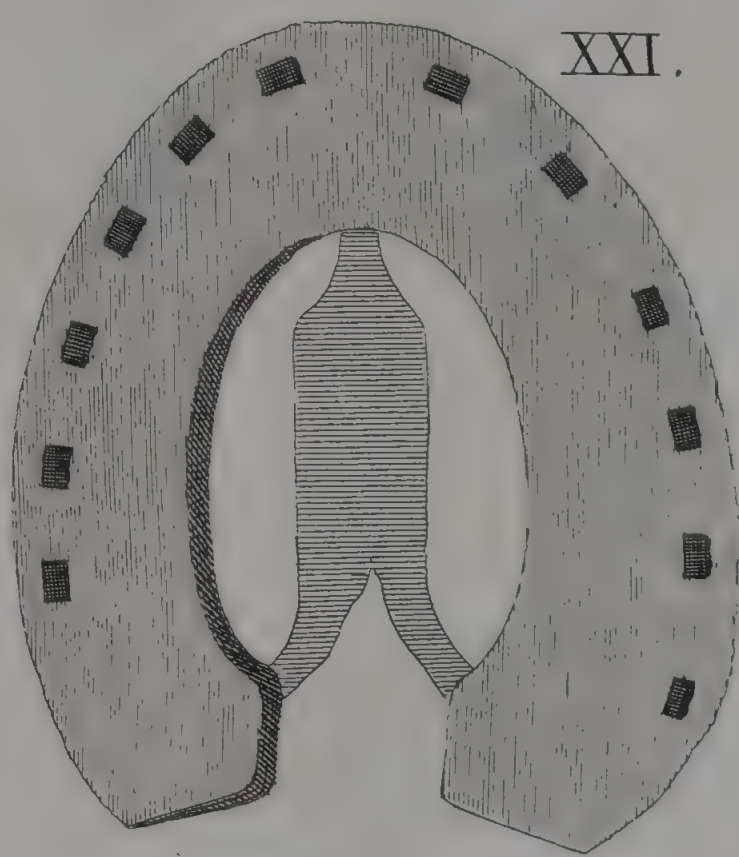
XIX.



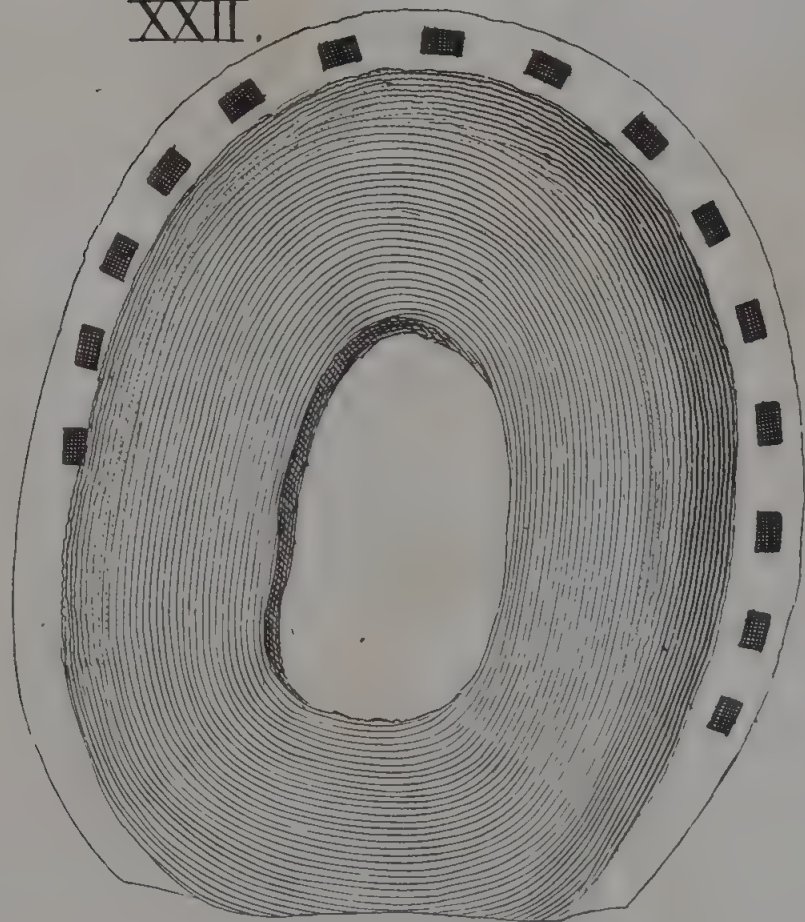
XX.



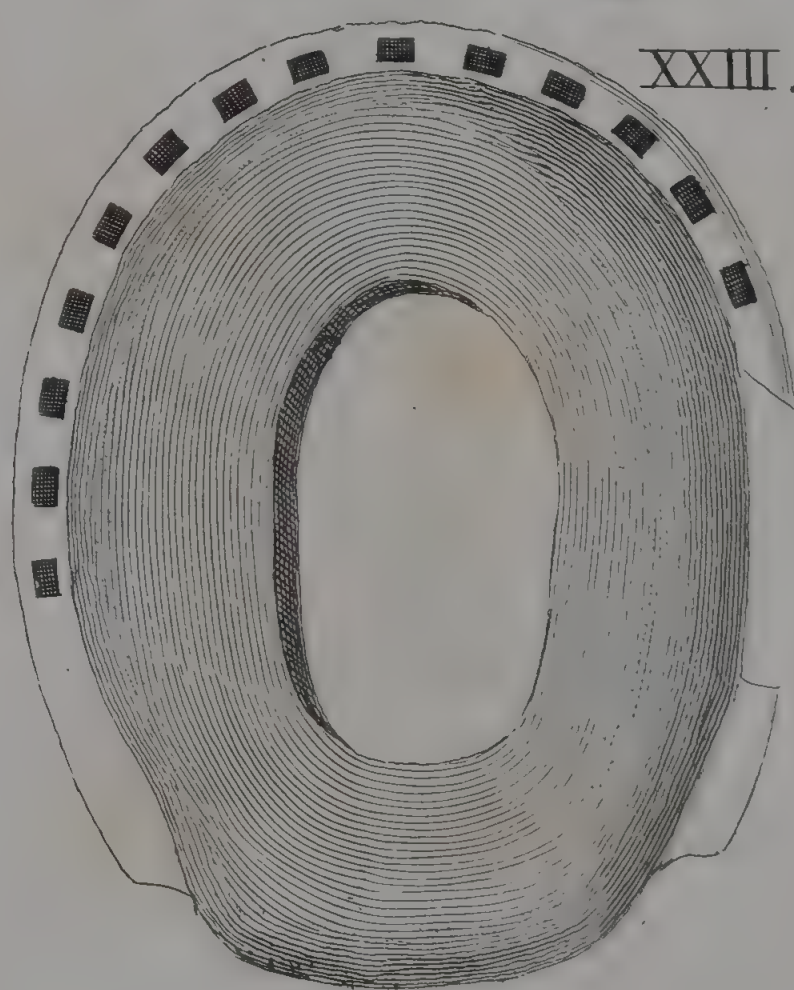
XXI.



XXII.



XXIII.

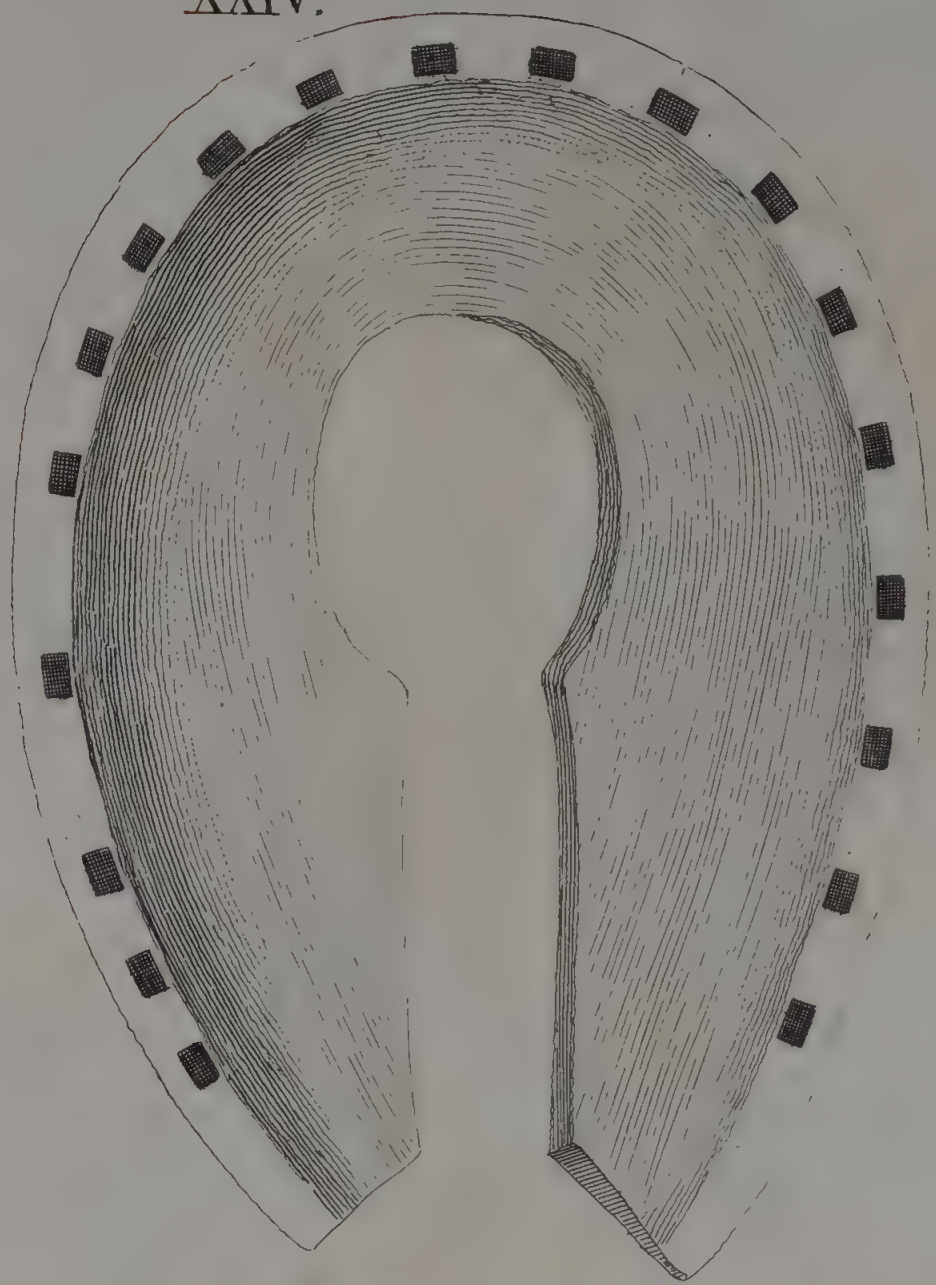




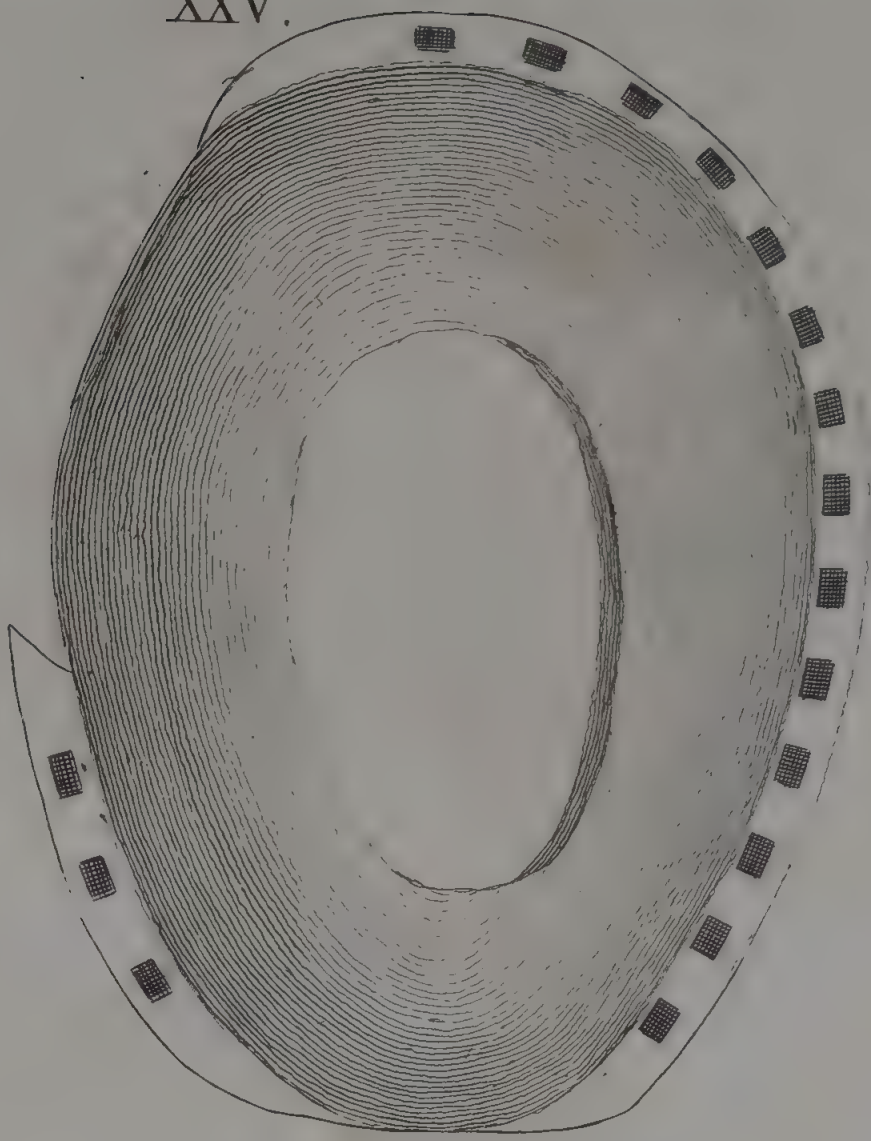




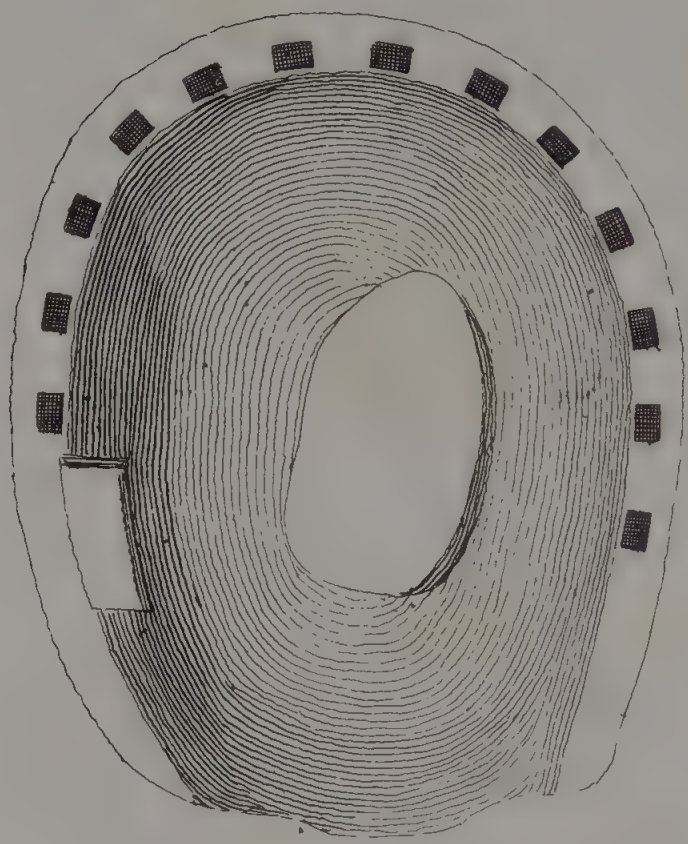
XXIV.



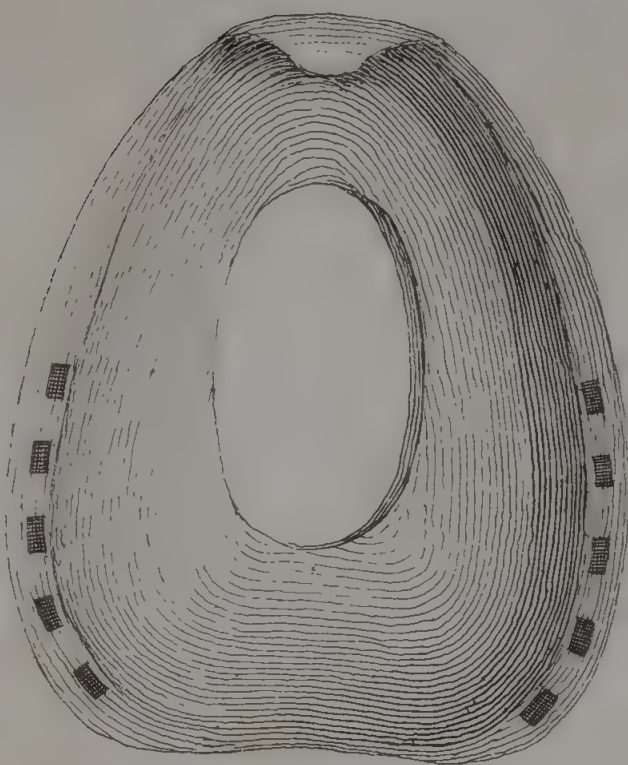
XXV.



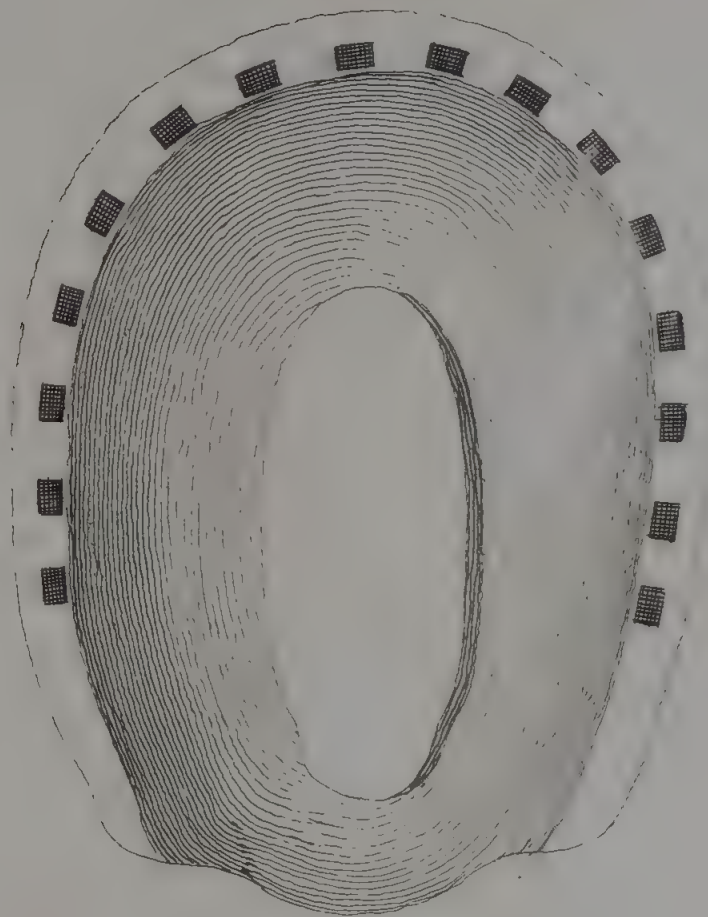
XXVI.



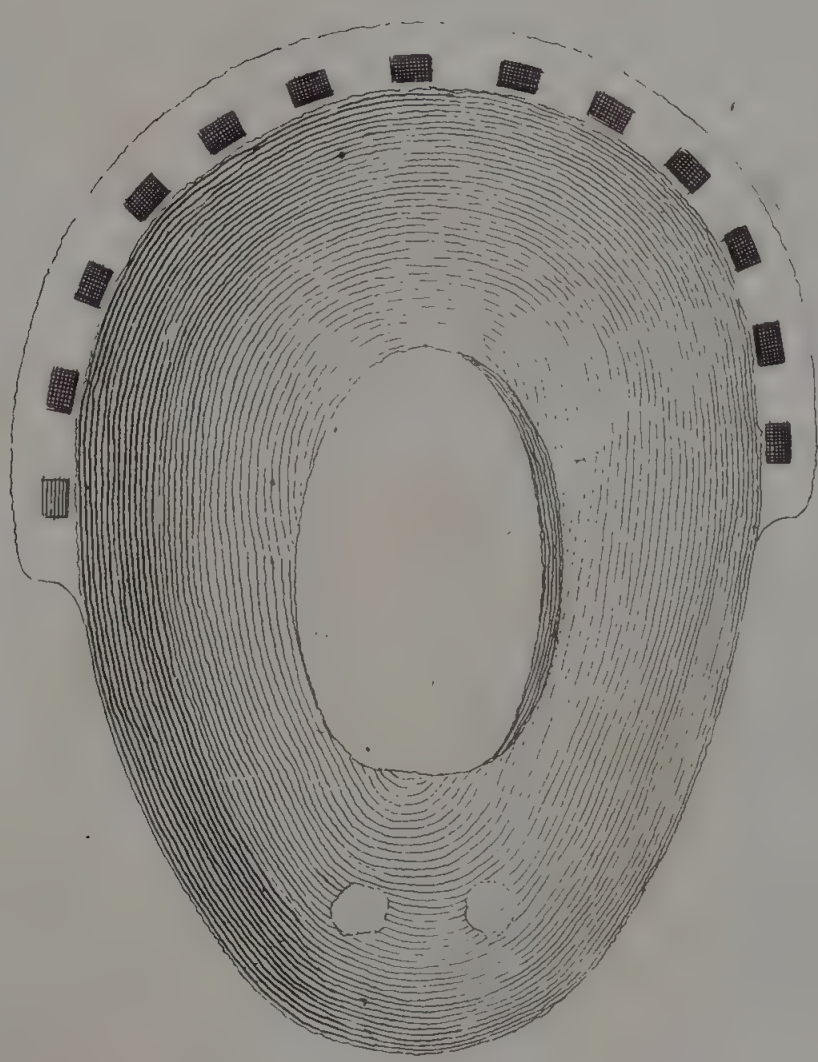
XXVII.



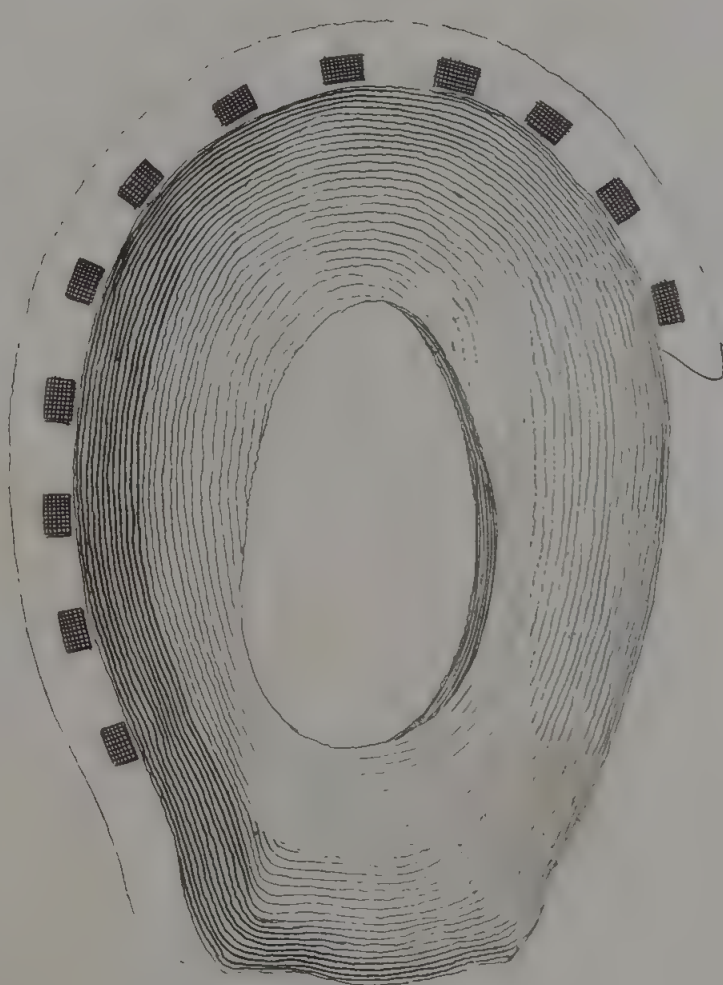
XXVIII.



XXIX.



XXX.









---

---

A

# DICTIONARY

EXPLAINING THE

## TECHNICAL TERMS

THAT BELONG TO THE

### STUD, STABLE, MANAGE, AND FARRIERY;

Or Whatever else relates to HORSES.

A.

**A**BATE; a horse is said to abate, or take down, his curvets, when working upon curvets, he puts his two hind legs to the ground both at once, and observes the same exactness in all the times.

**ABSCESS**, proceeds from a blow, hurt, or some violence.

**ACHE**, a pain in any part of the Body; a disease that causes numbness in the joints, and proceeds from cold, taken upon hard and violent exercise or labour.

**ACOPUM**, a fomentation to allay the sense of weariness; also a medicine for horses, used for the same purpose.

**ACTION** of the mouth, is the agitation of the tongue, and the mandible of a horse, that by champing upon the bridle, keep his mouth fresh. You may see by the white ropy foam, that a horse has the action of the mouth, which is a sign of vigour, mettle, and health.

**ACULER**, a French word, used in the academies, importing that a horse working upon volts in the Manage, does not go far enough

forwards at every time or motion, so that his shoulders embrace, or take in, too little ground, and his croupe comes too near the center of the volt.

**AID**; to aid, assist, or succour, a horse, is to sustain and help him to work true, and mark his times or motions with a just exactness.

**AIR** is a cadence and liberty of motion, accommodated to the natural disposition of the horse, which makes him work in the manage, and rise with obedience, measure, and justness of time. Some riding-masters take the word Air in a strict sense, as signifying the manage that is higher, slower, and more artful or designed than the *terra a terra*; but others gives it a larger signification, including under that sense *terra a terra*.

**AMBLING**; a motion in a horse that is much desired, very useful, but not easily to be obtained the right way, notwithstanding the vain confidence of the various professors of it, who, tho' they so confidently assert the success, yet differ in their methods to affect it.

**ANBURY**, a kind of wen, or spungy wart, growing upon any part of a horse's body, full of blood.

A a a

APPUL



## B A R

**APPUI**, or *stay upon the hand*, is the reciprocal sense between the horse's mouth and the bridle-hand, or the sense of the action of the bridle in the horseman's hand.

**ARCHED**; a horse is said to have arch-ed-legs when his knees are bended arch-wise.

To **ARM**; a horse is said to arm himself when he presses down his head, as if he would check, and bends his neck so as to rest the branches of his bridle upon his counter, in order to disobey the bit mouth, and guard his bars and his mouth, which are relieved by over-bending his neck.

**ARMAN**, a confection of wonderful efficacy to prevent a total loss of appetite in horses.

**ARRESTS**, are mangy humours upon the sinews of the hinder legs of a horse, between the ham and the pastern. They seldom appear upon the flank sinew.

**ARZEL**, a horse is said to be arzel, that has a white mark upon his far foot behind.

**ATTAINT**, is a blow, or wound, received by a horse in his inner feet.

**AUBIN** is a broken going, or pace, of a horse between an amble and a gallop.

**AVERTI**, a French word used in the manage, as applied to the pace or motion of a horse; signifying a motion that is impeded, regulated, and required in the lessons.

*Pas ecoute*, and *Pas d'ecole*, (*i.e.* listening paces, or school paces) signify the same thing.

## B.

**BALOTADES** are the leaps of a horse between two pillars, or upon a straight line, made with justness of time, with the aids of the hands, and the calves of the legs; and that in such manner, that when his fore-feet are in the air, he shews nothing but the shoes of his hinder feet without jerking out.

**BANQUET**, is that small part of the branch of the bridle that is under the eye, which being rounded like a small rod, gathers and joins the extremities of the bitt to the branch, and that in such a manner that the banquet is not seen, but covered by the cap, or that part of the bit that is next the branch.

**BANDS** of a saddle are two pieces of iron flat, and three fingers broad, nailed upon the bows of the saddle, one on each side, contrived to hold the bows in the situation that maketh the form of the saddle.

**BARBLES** are knots of superfluous flesh, that grow up the channels of a horse's mouth; that is the interval that separates the bars, and lies under the tongue.

## B L O

**BARDELLE**, is a saddle made in the form of a great saddle, but only of cloth stuffed with straw, and tied tight down with pack-thread, without either leather, wood or iron.

**BARNACLES**, horse twitchers, or brakes; these are things which Farriers use to put upon horses noses, when they will not stand quietly to be shod, blooded, or dressed of any sore.

**BARS** of a horse's mouth, are the ridge, or highest parts of that place of the gum that never bears any teeth, and is situated between the grinders, and the tusks, on each side of the mouth: so that the part of the gum which lies under, and at the side of the bars, retains the name of gum.

**BAY** colour. A bay horse is what we commonly call red inclining to chestnut.

This colour varies several ways; it is a dark bay, or a light bay, according as it is more or less deep: and we have likewise dapple bays. See **MIROUETTE**.

**BAYARD**, a bay horse.

**BEAT**. To beat the dust or powder, is said of a horse that at each time, or motion, does not take in ground or way enough with his fore-legs.

**BELLY**; a thick-bellied, a well-bodied, a well thick-flanked horse; that is, a horse that has large, long, and well made ribs; or such as are neither too narrow nor too flat.

**BELLY-FRETTING**, is a grievous pain in the belly of a horse, besides the cholic.

**BISHOPING**, a term amongst horse-couriers, which they use for those sophistications they use to make an old horse appear young, and a bad one good, &c.

**BITT**, or horse-bitt, in general, signifies the whole machine of all the iron appurtenances of a bridle; as the bitt-mouth, the branches, the curb, the sevil-holes, the tranchevil, and cross chains; but oftentimes it signifies only the bitt-mouth in particular.

**BITT-MOUTH**, is a piece of iron forged several ways, in order to be put into a horse's mouth, and to keep it in subjection.

**BLAZE**. See **STAR** and **WHITE-FACE**.

**BLEYNE**, or Bleyne, [*in Horses*] an inflammation occasioned by the blood's putrifying in the inner part of the coffin, towards the heel, between the sole and the coffin-bone. See **HOOF-CAST**.

**BLINDNESS** [*in Horses*] may be thus discerned: The walk, or step of a blind horse, is always uncertain and unequal.

**BLOOD-LETTING**; the signs or indications of blood-letting in a horse are these; his eyes will look red, and his veins swell more than ordinary; he will also have an itching about his mane



mane and tail; and be continually rubbing them, and some times will shed some of his hair; otherwise he will peel about the roots of his ears, in the places where the head-stall of the bridle lies; his urine will be red and high coloured, and his dung black and hard; likewise if he has red inflammations, or little bubbles on his back, or does not digest his meat well; or if the white of his eyes be yellow, or the inside of his upper or nether lip be so, these are signs he stands in need of bleeding.

**BLOOD RUNNING ITCH**, happens to an horse by an inflammation of the blood, being overheated by hard riding.

**BOAR**; A horse is said to boar when he shoots out his nose as high as his ears, and tosses his nose in the wind.

**BOLSTERS** of a saddle, are those parts of a great saddle which are raised upon the bows, both before and behind, to hold the rider's thigh, and keep him in a right posture, notwithstanding the disorders the horse may occasion.

**BOUILLON** is a lump or excrescency of flesh that grows either upon or just by the frush, insomuch that the frush shoots out like a lump of flesh, and makes the horse halt; and this we call the flesh blowing upon the frush.

**BOULETTE**; a horse is called boulette, when the fetlock, or pastern joint, bends forward and out of its natural situation; whether through violent riding, or by reason of being too short jointed, in which case the least fatigue will bring it.

**BOUTE**; a horse is called bouite, when his legs are in a straight line from the knee to the coronet.

**BOWS** of a saddle, are two pieces of wood laid arch-wise, to receive the upper part of a horse's back, to give the saddle its due form, and keep it tight.

**BRANCHES** of a bridle, are two pieces of iron bended, which, in the interval between one and the other, bear the bitt-mouth, the cross-chains, and the grub; so that on one end they answer to the head-stall, and on the other to the reins, in order to keep the horse's head in subjection.

**BRASSICOURT**, or brachicourt; is a horse whose forelegs are naturally bended arch-wise; being so called by way of distinction from an arched horse, whose legs are bowed by hard labour.

**BRAYE**, an obsolete French word, made use of by some to signify the entry of the horse's throat, or the extremity of the channel towards the maxillary bones.

**BREAK**; to break a horse in trotting, is

to make him light upon the hand by trotting, in order to make him fit for a gallop. To break a horse for hunting, is to supple him, to make him take the habit of running.

**BREATH**, or wind. This word signifies sometimes the easy respiration of a horse, and sometimes it implies the ease and rest, or repose of a horse.

**BREED** is a place where mares for breed, and stallions are kept in order to raise a stud.

**BREEDING** of horses. See *Stud* in the *Index*.

**BRIDLE** is so termed when all its appurtenances are fixed together in the several parts of it for the government of a horse.

**BRILLIANT**; a brisk, high-mettled; stately horse is so called, as having a raised neck, a fine motion, excellent haunches, upon which he rises, tho' never so little put on.

**BRING** in a horse, is to keep down the nose of a horse that bores and tosses his nose to the wind.

**BROUILLER**, is when a horse, put to any manage, plunges, traverses, and appears in disorder.

**BUTTERESS** is an instrument of steel fitted to a wooden handle, with which they pare the foot, or cut the hoof of a horse.

## C.

**CADENCE**, is an equal measure or proportion, observed by a horse in all his motions.

**CALADE**, or Basse, is the descent, or sloping declivity, of a rising manage ground; being a small eminence, upon which we ride down a horse several times, putting him to a short gallop, with his fore-hams in the air, to make him learn to ply and bend his haunches, and form his stop upon the aids of the calves of the legs, the stay of the bridle, and the cavesson, seasonably given: for without these aids he would throw himself too much upon his shoulders, and not bend his haunches.

**CALKINS**, a sort of horse-shoes for frosty weather.

**CANNON-MOUTH** of a bit, is a round but long piece of iron, consisting sometimes of two pieces that couple and bend in the middle, and sometimes only of one piece that does not bend, as in the cannon mouth a *trompe*.

**CAPARASSON**, or horse-cloth, is a sort of cover for a horse.

**CAPRIOLES** differ from croupades in this, that in a croupade the horse does not show his



his shoes; and from a balotade in this, that in a balotade he does not yerk out.

**CARACOL**, is an oblique piste or tread traced out in a semi-round, changing from one hand to another, without observing a regular ground.

**CAREER**; this word signifies both the ground that is proper for the manage and course, and race of a horse that does not go beyond two hundred paces.

**CAVALCADOUR**, is a word used at the court of *France*, and among the families of the blood, signifying the quarry; that is, master of the horse.

**CAUTING-IRON**, an iron with which farriers sear those parts of a horse that require burning.

**CHANFRIN**, is the fore-part of a horse's head, extending from under the ears, along the interval, between the eye-brows, down to the nose.

**CHANGE** a horse, or change hand, is to turn, or bear the horse's head from one hand to another, from the right to the left, and from the left to the right.

**CHANNEL** of a horse, is the hollow between the two bars, or the nether jaw-bones, in which the tongue is lodged.

**CHAPELET**, is a couple of stirrup-leathers, mounted each of them with a stirrup, and joined at top in a sort of leather buckle, called the head of the chapelet, by which they are made fast to the pommel of the saddle.

**CHAPERON** of a bit-mouth, is a word only used for scatch-mouths, and all others that are not cannon-mouths.

**CHARBON**, an obsolete French word, signifying that little black spot or mark, that remains after a large spot, in the cavity of the corner teeth of a horse, about the seventh or eighth year.

**CHASTISEMENTS**, or corrections, are the severe and rigorous effects of the aids; for when the aids are given with severity they become punishments.

**CHAUSSE trop-haut**; a white-footed horse is said to be such, when the white marks run too high upon the legs.

**CHEVALER** (a French word): a horse is said to be chevaler, when in passing upon a walk or a trot his far fore leg crosses or overlaps the other fore leg every second motion. See to **PASSAGE**.

**CHOPS, CLEFTS, RIFTS**, are maladies in the palate of an horse's mouth, caused either by eating coarse or rough hay full of thistles and other prickly stuff; or by foul provender full of sharp seeds, which by frequent pricking of the

bars of his mouth causes them to wrinkle and breed corrupt blood.

**CLAMPONNIER**, or Claponnier; an obsolete word signifying a long jointed horse.

To **CLOSE** a *passade justly*, is when the horse ends the passade with a demivolt, in good order, well narrowed and bounded, and terminates upon the same line upon which he parted, so that he is still in a condition to part from the hand handsomely at every last time or motion of his demivolt.

**CLOYED, ACCLOYED**, a term used by Farriers of a horse, when he has been pricked by a nail in shoeing.

**COFFIN**, or hoof of a horse.

**COILING** of the *Stud*, is the first making choice of a colt, or young horse, for any service.

**COLT**, a word in general, signifying the male and female of the horse kind.

**COLT-EVIL**, a disease to which both stone-horse and gelding are subject.

To **COMMENCE**, or *initiate*, a horse, is to put him to the first lessons, in order to break him.

**CORNERS**, or angles of the volt, are the extremities of the four lines of the volt when you work in square.

**CORONET**, or crosset of a horse, is the lowest part of the pastern which runs round the coffin, and is distinguished by the hair which joins and covers the upper part of the hoof.

**CURVET**, (*in the Manage*) an air, when the horse's legs are more raised than in the *demivolts*, being a kind of leap up, and a little forward, wherein the horse raises both his fore-feet at once, equally advanced, (when he is going strait forward, and not in a circle) and as his fore-legs are falling, he immediately raises his hind-legs, as he did his fore; that is, equally advanced, and not one before the other: so that all his four legs are in the air at once.

**CRAPAUDINE**, or *tread upon the coronet*, is an imperfection in a horse's foot.

**CREPANCE**, is a scratch or chap in a horse's legs, given by the spunges of the hinder feet crossing and striking against the other hinder foot.

**CRESCENT** (among *Farriers*): a horse is said to have *crescents*, when the point, or that part of the coffin bone, or little foot, which is most advanced, falls down, and presses the sole outwards; and the middle of the hoof above the toe shrinks and becomes flat by reason of the hollowness beneath it.

**CREST FALLEN** is an imperfection or infirmity in a horse, when the upper part of his neck, on which his mane grows, called the crest,



crest, hangs either on the one side or the other, not standing upright as it ought to do.

**CROUP** of a horse ought to be large and round, so that the tops of the two haunch bones be not within view of each other; the greater distance between these two bones the better.

A *racking* **CROUP**, is when a horse's fore quarters go right, but his croup in walking swings from side to side.

**CROWNED**; a horse is said to be crowned, when, by a fall or other accident, he is so hurt or wounded in the knee, that the hair sheds and falls off without growing again.

**CRUPPER**, the buttocks of a horse; the rump: also a roll of leather put under a horse's tail.

**CURB** is a chain of iron made fast to the upper part of the branches of the bridle.

To **CURTAIL** a horse, *i. e.* to dock him, or cut off his tail.

To **CUT the round**, or **CUT the volt**, is to change the hand when a horse works upon volts of one tread; so that dividing the volt in two, he turns and parts upon a right line to recommence another volt.

## D.

**DEVUIDER**, a term, in the academies, applied to a horse, that in working upon the volts, makes his shoulders go too fast for the croupe to follow; so that instead of going upon two treads, as he ought, he endeavours only to go upon one: which comes from the resistance he makes in defending against the heels, or from the fault of the horseman, that is too hasty with his hand. See **HASTEN**.

**DISARM**; to disarm the lips of a horse, is to keep them subject, and out from above the bars, when they are so large as to cover the bars, or prevent the true pressure, or *appui* of the mouth, by bearing up the bitt, and so hindring the horse from feeling the effects of it upon the bars.

To **DISGORGE**, is to discuss, or disperse an inflammation or swelling.

**DISUNITE**; a horse is said to disunite that drags his haunches; that gallops false, or upon an ill foot.

**DOCK** (or *Troussesqueue*) is a large case of leather, as long as the dock of a horse's tail, which serves as a cover to the tails of leaping horses.

**DOCK-PIECE** of a horse, should be large and full, rather than too small: if a horse gall beneath the dock, grease the part every day, and

wash it with salt and water, or good brandy: the latter is the most effectual remedy.

**DRAUGHT horse**, a horse destined for the cart, plough, &c.

**DRENCH**, is a sort of decoction prepared for a sick horse.

**DRINKING** of horses immediately after hard riding, is very dangerous.

**DRY**, to put a horse to dry meat is to feed him with corn and hay after taking him from grass, or housing him.

**DUST and SAND** will so dry the tongues and mouths of horses, that they lose their appetite.

## E.

**EBRIDLADE**, is a check of the bridle which the horseman gives to the horse, by a jerk of one rein, when he refuses to turn.

**ECAVESSADE**, is a jerk of the cavesson.

**ECHAPE**; an echape is a horse got between a stallion and a mare of a different breed, and different countries.

**ECHAPER**, to suffer a horse to escape or slip from the hand.

**ECOUTE**; a pace or motion of a horse.

**ECURIE**, is a covert-place for the lodging and housing of horses.

**ECUYER**, a French word, (in English querry) has different significations in France.

**EEL-BACK'D horses**, are such as have black lists along their backs.

**ENLARGE** a horse, or make him go large, is to make him embrace more ground than he covered.

**ENTABLER**; a word used in the academies, as applied to a horse whose croupe goes before his shoulders in working upon volts.

**ENTERFERING**; a disease incident to horses.

**ENTREPAS** is a broken pace or going, and indeed properly a broken amble.

**EPARER**; a word used in the manage, to signify the flinging of a horse; or his jerking or striking out with his hind legs.

**ERGOT**, is a stub-like a piece of soft horn about the bigness of a chestnut, placed behind and below the pastern joint, and commonly hid under the tuft of the fetlock.

**ESQUIAVINE** an old French word signifying a long and severe chastisement of a horse in the manage.

**ESTRAPADE** is the defence of a horse that will not obey; who to get rid of his rider, rises



rises mightily before; and while his fore-hand is yet in the air, yerks out furiously with his hind legs, striking higher than his head was before, and during his counter time goes back rather than advances.

To **EXTEND** a horse, some make use of this expression, importing to make a horse grow large.

## F.

**FALCADE**; a horse makes falcades when he throws himself upon his haunches two or three times, as in very quick curvets; which is done in forming a stop, and half-stop.

**FALLING-EVIL** a disease proceeding from ill blood.

**FALSE QUARTER** is a cleft, crack, or chink, sometimes on the outside, but for the most part on the inside of his hoof.

**FARCIN, FARCY, FASHIONS**, a creeping ulcer.

**FEATHER** in a Horse's forehead, &c. is nothing else but the turning of the hair.

**FEATHER** also upon a horse, is a sort of natural frizzling of the hair, which in some places rises above the lying hair, and there casts a figure resembling the top of an ear of corn.

**FEEL**; to feel a horse in the hand, is to observe that the will of a horse is in the hand, that he tastes the bridle, and has a good *appui* in obeying the bitt.

**FERME** a *ferme*; a word peculiar to the manage schools, signifying in the same place, without stirring or parting.

**FETLOCK** is a tuft of hair as big as the hair of the mane, that grows behind the pastern joint of many horses.

**FIG** [*in Horses*] a disease that takes its name from a wart or broad piece of flesh growing upon the frush towards the heel, resembling a fig in shape.

**FILLETS**, the loins of a horse.

**FIRE**, to give the fire to a horse, is to apply the firing iron red hot to some preternatural swelling in order to discuss it.

**FIRING IRON** is a piece of copper or iron about a foot long, one end of which is made flat, and forged like a knife, the back of it being half an inch thick, and the fore edge about five or six times thinner.

**FLEAM**, is a small instrument of fine steel, composed of two or three moveable lancets for bleeding a horse.

To **FLING**, is the fiery and obstinate action of an unruly horse.

To **FLY the heels**: a horse is said to fly the heels when he obeys the spur.

**FONCEAU**, is the bottom, or end, of a cannon-bitt-mouth; that is, the part of the bitt that joins it to the banquet.

**FOOT** of a horse, consists of the hoof or coffin; which is all the horn that appears when the horse's foot is set on the ground.

**FORE-LEGS** of a horse, consist of an arm, a fore-thigh and the flank.

To **FOUNDER** a horse, is to over-ride him, or to spoil him with hard working.

*Chest* **FOUNDING**, a distemper proceeding from crudities in the stomach, or other weaknesses obstructing the passage of the lungs.

## G.

**GALLOP**, is a motion of a horse that runs at full speed.

**GALLOP**, or *Canterbury-rate*, is a pace between a full speed and a swift running.

**GALLOPADE**; the fine gallopade, the short gallop, the listening gallop, the gallop of the school: 'Tis a hand gallop, or gallop upon the hand, in which a horse galloping upon one or two treads, is well united, well *raccourci*, knit together, well coupled, and well set under him.

**GASCOIN**, the hinder thigh of an horse, which begins at the *stifle*, and reaches to the *ply*, or bending of the ham.

**GATE**, is the going, or pace of a horse.

**GAUNT BELLY'D**, or *light belly'd horse*, is one whose belly shrinks up towards his flanks.

**GENET**, a kind of *Spanish* horse.

**GIGS**, otherwise called bladders, or flaps, are a disease in the mouth of a horse.

**GIRTH**, a kind of saddle buckled upon a horse's belly; also a saddle that is buckled and compleat for use.

**GLANDERS**, a distemper in horses, proceeding, according to the *French* accounts, from corrupt humours about the lungs and heart, arising neither from the blood nor phlegm, but from the one and the other *bile*, and therefore it is called dry.

**GOING**, is the pace or gate of a horse.

**GORGED**, *i. e.* swelled.

**GOURDY LEGS**, a distemper in horses, caused by pains and other fleshy sores.

To **GRAPPLE**; a horse is said to grapple, either in one or both legs; the expression being peculiar to the hinder legs.

**GRAVELLING**, a misfortune that happens to a horse by travelling, by little gravel-stones getting



## H I P

getting between the hoof and the shoe, which settle at the quick, and there fester and fret.

**GREASE MOLTEN**, a distemper in a horse, when his fat is said to be melted by over hard riding or labour. See the *Index*.

**GROOM**, a man who looks after horses.

**GROUPADE** a lofty kind of manage, and higher than the ordinary curvets.

## H.

**HALBERT** is a small piece of iron one inch broad, and three or four inches long, soldered to the toe of a horse's shoe, which jets out before, to hinder a lame horse from resting or treading upon his toe.

**HALTER CAST** is an excoriation of the pastern, occasioned by the halter being entangled about the foot; upon the horse's endeavouring to rub his neck with his hinder feet.

**HALTING** happens sometimes before, and sometimes behind; if it be before, the ailment must of necessity be in the *shoulder, knee, flank, pastern, or foot*.

**HAM, HOUGH** of a horse is the ply or bending of the hind legs, and likewise comprehends the point behind, and opposite to the ply, called the hock.

**HAND** is a measure of a fist clinched, by which we compute the height of a horse.

**HAND-HIGH** is a term used in horsemanship, and peculiar to the *English* nation.

**HARD Horse**, is one that is insensible of whip or spur.

**HARNESS GALLS**; sometimes the breasts of coach-horses are galled by the harness.

**HAUNCH**, or hip of a horse.

**HEARTS**; a horse of two hearts, *i. e.* a horse that works in the manage with constraint and irresolution, and cannot be brought to consent to it.

**HEAVY**; to rest heavy upon the hand, is said of a horse, who, thro' the softness of his back, and weight of his fore-quarters, or thro' weariness, throws himself upon the bridle, but withal, without making any resistance, or any effort to force the horseman's hand.

**HEEL of a horse**, is the lower hinder part of the foot.

**HIDE-BOUND**, a distemper in horses when the skin sticks so fast to the back and ribs, that you cannot pull it from the flesh with your hand.

**HIP-SHOT**; a horse is said to be such, when he is wrung, or has sprained his haunches or hips, so as to relaxate the ligaments that keep the bone in its due place.

## I N T

**HOOF** of a horse, is all the horn that appears when his foot is set to the ground.

**HOOF-BOUND**, is a shrinking of of the *hoof* at the top, and at the heel, which makes the skin stare above the *hoof*, and so grow over it.

**HOOF-BRITTLE**, an infirmity in horses, proceeding either naturally or accidentally; naturally from the fire or dam; accidentally from a surfeit, that falls down from the feet; or else from the horse's having been formerly foundered.

**HOOF-CAST**, or, *casting of the hoof*, is, when the coffin falls clean away from a horse's foot.

**HOOF-SWELLED**; an infirmity that sometimes happens to young horses by being over-ridden, or too hard wrought, which causes them to swell in that part, by reason of the blood falling down and settling there, which, if not speedily removed, will beget a wet spavin.

**HOOF-LOOSENED**, is an infirmity in a horse, it is a dissolution or dividing of the horn or coffin of his hoof from his flesh, at the setting of the coronet. See more upon the *Articles of Diseases*, &c. in the *Index of Diseases*.

**HORSE-MEASURE**, a rod of box to slide out of a cane, with a square at the end, being divided into hands and inches, to measure the height of horses.

**HORSE-SHOE**; of these there are several sorts. See the *Supplement*.

**HORSE-RACING**; a diversion more used in *England* than in all the world beside, and for which the *English* horses are better than any other.

**HOUGH**, or *ham of a horse*, is the joint of the hinder quarter, which joins the thigh to the leg.

**HUNGRY EVIL**, is an inordinate desire, in horses, to eat.

## I.

**JARDES, JARDONS**, are callous and hard swellings in the hinder legs of a horse, seated on the outside of the hough, as the spavin is on the inside.

**IMPOSTHUME** in horses, is an unnatural swelling of humours or corrupt matter in any part of the body.

**INSTEP**, is that part of the hinder leg of a horse that corresponds to the flank in the fore-leg, extended from the ham to the pastern-joint.

**INTERFERE**, or *Cut*; to knock or rub one heel against another in going.

**JOCKEY**,



L O C

**JOCKEY**, one that trims up horses, and rides about with horses for sale.

**ITCH** [*in Horses*], a distemper which may be perceived by their rubbing their legs till the hair comes off.

K.

**K**NEE of a horse, is the joint of the fore-quarters, that joins to the fore-thigh in the flank.

L.

**L**AMPAS, LAMPERS, LAMPRESS, is a sort of swelling in the palate of a horse's mouth, *i. e.* an inflammation in the roof of his mouth behind the nippers of his upper jaw; so called, because it is cured with a lamp or hot iron.

**LARGE**; a horse is said to go large and wide when he gains or takes in more ground in going wider off the center of the volt, and describing a greater circumference.

**LASSITUDE**, or *Weariness* in a horse.

**LEAD**; a horse going in a strait line, always leads and cuts the way with his right foot.

**LEAPING-HORSE**, one that works in the high manage, a horse that makes his leaps in order, with obedience, between two pillars, upon a strait line, in volts, caprioles, balotades, or croupades.

**LEGS of the Horseman**, the action of the horseman's legs given seasonably, and with judgment, is an aid that consists more or less with the calf of the leg to the flank of the horse, and in bearing it more or less off, as there is occasion.

**LENGTH**; to passage a horse upon his own length, &c.

**LESSONS for a Horse**; when your horse will receive you to and from his back gently, trot forward willingly, and stand still obediently, then he is said to have learnt his lessons for what purpose soever he is intended.

**LIGHTEN**; to *lighten a horse*, to make a horse lighter in the fore-hand, is to make him free and lighter in the fore-hand than behind.

**LIGS in a Horse**, are little pushes, wheals, or bladders, within the lips of a horse.

**LISTENING**; a horse is said to go a listening pace.

**LOCKS**, are pieces of leather two fingers broad, turned round, and stuffed on the inside, to prevent their hurting the paster of a horse.

M O O

**LONG-JOINTED Horse**, is one whose paster is slender and pliant.

M.

**M**ALANDERS, MALENDERS, a disease in horses.

**MALT-LONG, MALT-WORM**, is a cancerous forrance about the hoof of an horse, just upon the coronet, which breaks out into knobs and bunches that run with a waterish, sharp lee, and humour, which will, if let alone, envenom the whole foot.

**MANAGE**, is a word that signifies a place, not only set a-part for the exercise of riding the great horse, but likewise the exercise itself.

**MANE**, the hair hanging down on a horse's neck.

**MANGER**, is a little raised bench under the rack in the stable, made hollow, for receiving the grain or corn that a horse eats.

**MARE-S**, the female of the *horse kind*.

**MARK**; a horse marks, that is, he shews his age by a black spot, called the bud or eye of a bean, which appears at about five and a half, in the cavity of the corner teeth.

**MARTINGAL**, a thong of leather, fastened to one end of the girths under the belly of a horse, and at the other end to the mus-roll, to hinder him from rearing.

**MASTIGADOUR**, or *Slabbering-bitt*, is a snaffle of iron, all smooth, and of a piece, guarded with *paternosters*, and composed of three halves of great rings, made into demi-ovals, of unequal bigness, the lesser being inclosed within the greatest, which ought to be about half a foot high. A *mastigadour* is mounted with a head-stall and two reins.

**MELLIT**, a distemper in a horse, being a dry scab growing upon the heels of his fore-feet.

**MES-AIR**, is a manage half *terra a terra*, and half corvet.

**MIDDLING-TEETH of a Horse**, are the four teeth that come out at three years and a half, in the room of other four foal-teeth, seated between the nippers and the corner-teeth.

**MOLTEN GREASE**, is a fermentation or ebullition of pituitous and impure humours, which precipitate and disembody the guts, and oftentimes kill a horse.

**MONTER a des**, or, *a poil*; a French expression, signifying, to mount a horse bare backed, or without a saddle.

**MOON-EYES**; a horse is said to have moon-eyes when the weakness of his eyes increases or decreases, according to the course of the



# O P E

the moon; so that in the wane of the moon his eyes are muddy and troubled, and at new moon clear up; but still he is in danger of losing his eye-sight quite.

**MOUTH** of a Horse, should be moderately well cloven; for when it is too much, there is much difficulty to bitt a horse so as that he may not swallow it, as horsemen term it.

**MULE, MOIL**, is of two sorts, the one engendred of a horse and a female ass, and the other of a male ass and a mare.

# N.

**NAG**, *Little Nag*, or *Tit*, is a horse of a small, low size.

**NARROW**, a horse that narrows, is one that does not take ground enough; that is, does not bear far enough out to the one hand or to the other.

**NAVEL-GALL**, is a bruise on the back of a horse, or pinch of a saddle behind, which if let alone long will be hard to cure.

**NEEZINGS**; helps to purge a horse's head when it is stopped with phlegm, cold, and other gross humours.

**NEIGHING**, is the cry of a horse. Such a horse neighs.

**NIGHT-MARE**, a malady incident to horses as well as human bodies, proceeding from a melancholy blood oppressing the heart.

**NIPPERS**, are four teeth in the fore-part of a horse's mouth, two in the upper and two in the lower jaw.

**NOSE-BAND**, or *Muf-roll*, that is, the part of a head-stall of a bridle that comes over a horse's nose.

**NOSTRILS** of a Horse, should be large and extended, so that the red within them may be perceived, especially when he sneezes: the wideness of the nostrils does not a little contribute to the easiness of breathing.

# O.

**OBEY**; a horse is said to obey the hands and the heels, to obey the aids and helps, (*i. e.*) to know or answer them according to demand.

**OPENING** of a Horse's heels, is when the smith, in paring the foot, cuts the heel low, and takes it down within a finger's breadth of the coronet, so that he separates the corners of the heel, and by that means impairs the substance of the foot, causing it to close, and become narrow at the heel.

# P A R

**OSSELETS**, (*i. e.*) *little Bones*, are hard excrescences in the knees of some horses.

**OVER-DONE**, *over-rid*, or *over-worked*; a horse is so called, when his wind and strength are broke and exhausted with fatigue.

**OVER-REACH**, a horse is said to over-reach when he brings his feet too far forwards, and strikes his toes against the sponges of his fore-shoe.

**OX-FEET** in a Horse. See *Index of Diseases*.

**OX-LEGS**, an imperfection in some horses, which, tho' they have the back-sinew of their fore-legs somewhat separate from the bone, yet their sinews are so small, and so little set off, that their legs will become round after small labour.

# P.

**PACES** of a Horse; the natural paces of a horse's legs are three, *viz.* a *walk*, a *trot*, and a *gallop*; to which may be added, an *amble*, because some horses have it naturally; and such horses are generally the swiftest *amblers* of any.

**PAINS** in Horses, is a distemper, a kind of ulcerous scab, full of a fretting mattery water, breeding in the pasterns, between the fetlock and the heel; which comes for want of clean keeping and good rubbing, after the horses are come off a journey, by means of which, sand and dirt remaining in the hair, frets the skin and flesh, which turns to a scab.

**PALATE**, the upper part or roof of the mouth.

**PALSEY** in Horses, a disease that sometimes deprives the whole body of sense.

**PANNELS** of a Horse, are two cushions or bolsters, filled with cow's, deer's, or horse-hair, and placed under the saddle, one on each side, touching the horse's body, to prevent the bows or bands from galling or hurting his back.

**PANTONS**, or *Pantable-shoes*, are a sort of horse-shoes that serve for narrow or low heels, and to hinder the sole from growing too much downwards, so that the foot may take a better shape.

**PARE**; to pare a horse's foot, is to cut his nails, that is, the horn and sole of the foot, with a bittrice, in order to shoe him.

**PARTS** of a horse's body proper to bleed in:

1. It is usual to bleed horses in the *jugular veins*, which lie on each side the neck, for the *farcy*, *mange*, *repletion*, and several other distempers; and also by way of evacuation twice a-year,

C c c



## P A T

a-year, to all horses that feed well and labour but little.

2. Blood is usually taken from the temples, with a small lancet, for bites or blows on the eyes.

3. *Farriers* have a lancet made on purpose for opening of veins beneath the tongue, for *head-aches*, or for being disgusted or over-heated by excessive labour, or for *cholics*, and the *vives*.

4. It is usual to bleed horses in the gristle of the nose, without any regard whether they hit the vein or not; and this is also for *cholics*, *vives*, and being much over-heated.

5. Horses are let blood in the middle of the palate, above the fourth bar, with a lancet or sharp horn, when they have been disgusted, harrassed, or over-heated and dull.

6. Blood is taken from the *basilisk*, or thigh-veins of horses, for strains in the shoulders, or the mange in those parts.

7. Horses are blooded in the pasterns, with a fleam or a lancet, for strains or infirmities in the hams or knees.

8. They are let blood in the toes, with a buttrice, or drawing iron, for beating in the feet, and infirmities in the legs, such as swellings and oppressions of the nerves.

9. The flank-veins are sometimes opened, with a small lancet made for that purpose, for the *farcy*.

10. Blood is drawn with fleams in the flat of the thighs, for blows and strains in the *haunches*.

11. They bleed in the tail or dock, with a long lancet, for a fever and putrefaction.

**PASSADE** is a tread, or way, that a horse makes oftener than once upon the same extent of ground, passing and repassing from one end of its length to the other; which cannot be done without changing the hand, or turning and making a demi-tour at each of the extremities of the ground.

**PASSAGE**; to passage a horse, is to make him go upon a walk or trot upon two paces or treads, between the two heels, and side-ways, so that his hips make a track parallel to that made by his shoulders.

**PASTERN of a Horse**, is the distance between the joint of that name and the coronet of the hoof.

**PATIN-SHOE**, a horse-shoe so called, under which is soldered a sort of half ball of iron, hollow within: 'Tis used for hip-shot horses, and put upon a sound foot, to the end that the horse, not being able to stand upon that without pain, may be constrained to support himself upon the lame foot, and so hinder the

## P L A

sinews from shrinking, and the haunch from drying up.

**PAW the Ground**; a horse paws the ground, when his leg being either tired or painful, he does not rest it upon the ground, and fears to hurt himself as he walks.

**PESATE**, or *Pesade*, or *Posade*, is when a horse in lifting or raising his fore-quarters, keeps his hind-legs upon the ground without stirring, so that he marks no time with his haunches till his fore-legs reach the ground.

**PIAFFEUR**, is a proud stately horse, who being full of mettle, or fire, restless and forward, with a great deal of motion, and an excessive eagerness to go forwards, makes this motion. The more that you endeavour to keep him in, he bends his leg the more up to his belly: He snorts, traverses, if he can, and by his fiery action shews his restiveness.

**PICKER**, is an iron instrument five or six inches long, bent or crooked on one side, and flat and pointed on the other, used by grooms to cleanse the inside of the manage horses feet.

**PILLAR**; most great manages have pillars fixed in the middle of the manage-ground, to point out the center; but all manages in general have upon the side or circumference, other pillars placed two and two, at certain distances, from whence they are called the two pillars, to distinguish them from that of the center.

**PINCHING** is when a horse standing still, the rider keeps him fast with the bridle-hand, and applies the spurs just to the hair of his sides.

**PISSING of Blood**, may proceed from divers causes; for which, with the Cure, see the *Index*.

**PISTE**, is the tread, or track, that a horse makes upon the ground he goes over.

**PLANET-STRUCK**, or *shrew-running*, as it is called by some, is a distemper in horses, being a deprivation of feeling or motion.

**PLANTED** [*with Farriers*], a term used of a horse, who is said to be *right planted on his limbs*, when he stands equally firm on his legs, and not one advanced before the other; his legs should be wider above than below, that is, the distance between his feet should be less than between his fore-thighs, at that part next to the shoulders; the knees ought not to be too close, but the whole leg should descend in a strait line, to the very *pastern-joint*, and the feet should be turned neither out nor in, the pastern being placed about two fingers breadth more backwards than the coronet.

**PLATE-LONGE**, is a woven strap, four fathom long, as broad as three fingers, and as thick as one, made use of in the manage for raising



## P U N

ling a horse's legs, and sometimes for taking him down, in order to facilitate several operations of the Farrier.

PLAT-VEIN, is a vein on the inside of each fore-thigh, a little below the elbow.

POGE, a cold in a horse's head.

POINSON, is a little point, or piece of sharp-pointed iron, fixed in a wooden handle, which the cavalier holds in his right hand when he means to prick a leading-horse in the croupe, or beyond the end of the saddle, in order to make him jerk out behind.

POINTS, or *Toes* of a bow of a saddle.

POINT; a horse is said to make a point, when in working upon volts he does not observe the round regularly, but putting a little out of his ordinary ground, makes a sort of angle, or point, by his circular tread.

POLL-EVIL, is a sort of *fistula*, or deep ulcer between the ears of the poll, or in the nape of the horse's neck, which proceeds from corrupt humours falling upon it.

PONT-LEVIS, is a disorderly resisting action, in disobedience to his rider, in which the horse rears up several times running, and rises so upon his hind-legs that he is in danger of coming over.

PORTER, [*to carry*], used in the *French* manage, for directing or pushing on a horse at pleasure, whether forwards, upon turns, &c.

PRESS *upon the Hand*; a horse is said to resist, or press upon the hand, when either thro' the stiffness of his neck, or from an ardour to run too much a-head, he stretches his head against the horse's hand, refuses the aid of the hand, and withstands the effects of the bridle.

To PRICK, or *pinch*, is to give a horse a gentle touch of the spur, without clapping them hard to him.

PRICKER, [*Hunting-Term*], a hunter on horseback.

PRICKT, otherwise called *avcloyed*, *cloyed*; or *retrait*, &c. in respect to horses, signifies only the having a prick by the negligence of the Farrier in driving the nails, by their weakness, ill pointing, or breaking them; which, if not presently taken out, will, in time, break out into a foul sore. You may discern it by the horse's going lame; but if you would know it more certainly, pinch him round the hoof with a pair of pincers, and when you come to the place aggrieved he will shrink in his foot; or else you may try where he is pricked by throwing water on his hoof, for that place where he is hurt will be sooner dry than the rest.

PUNCH; a well-set, well-knit horse, is short backed, and thick shouldered, with a broad neck, and well lined with flesh.

## R A C

PURSINESS in *Horses*, is a shortness of breath, either *natural* or *accidental*. The *natural* is when the horse is cock thropped; for that his thropple or wind-pipe being so long, he is not able to draw his breath in and out with so much ease as other horses do which are loose thropped, because the wind-pipe being too streight, which should convey the breath to the lungs, and vent it again at the nose, makes him pant and fetch his breath short; and in like manner when his pipe is filled with too much fat, or other phlegmatic stuff, which suffocates him, and makes his lungs labour the more.

PUT; 'tis used for the breaking or managing of a horse; as, *Put your horse to corvets, put him to caprioles.*

PYE-BALD *Horse*, is one that has white spots upon a coat of another colour.

PYROET; some are of one tread or pifte, and some of two.

Those of one tread are otherwise called, *Pirouettes de la tete a la queue.*

*Pyroets de la tete a la queue*, are entire and narrow turns made by the horse upon one tread, and almost in one time, in such a manner, that his head is placed where his tail was, without putting out his haunches.

## Q.

QUARTER; to work from quarter to quarter, is to ride a horse three times in end, upon the first of the four lines of a square; then changing your hand, and riding him three times upon a second; at the third line changing your hand, and so passing to the third and fourth, observing the same order.

QUARTERS of a *Saddle*, are the pieces of leather, or stuff, made fast to the lower part of the sides of a saddle, and hanging down below the saddle.

QUARTERS. *Fore-Quarters*, and *Hind-Quarters*; the fore-quarters are the shoulders and the fore-legs; the hind-quarters are the hips and the legs behind.

QUITTER-BONE, a hard round swelling upon the coronet, between a horse's heel and the quarter, which most commonly grows on the inside of the foot.

QUITTER, the matter of an ulcer or sore.

## R.

RACK, a wooden frame made to hold hay or fodder for cattle.

RACK,



## R E M

**RACKING**, a certain pace of a horse, or a motion in going, in which he trots nor gallops, but is between both.

**RAGOT**, is a horse that has short legs, a broad croupe, and a strong thick body.

**RAISE**; to raise a horse upon corvets, upon caprioles, upon pesades, is to make him work at corvets, caprioles, or pesades.

**RAISE** is likewise used for placing a horse's head right, and making him carry well; and hindering him from carrying low, or arming himself.

**RAISTY, RESTIVE**, a term used in respect of a horse, when he will go neither backwards nor forwards.

**RAKE**; a horse rakes, when being shouldered-splait, or having strained his fore-quarters, he goes so lame, that he drags one of his fore-legs in a semicircle, which is more apparent when he trots than when he paces.

*To RAKE a Horse*, is to draw his ordure with one hand out of his fundament, when he is coltish, or cannot dung; in doing this the hand is to be anointed with *jallad oil, butter, or hog's grease*.

**RAMINGUE**; a horse called in *French ramingue*, is a restive sort of a horse, that resists the spurs, or cleaves to the spurs, that is, defends himself with malice against the spurs, sometimes doubles the reins, and frequently yerks, to favour his disobedience.

**RASE**; to rase, or glance upon the ground, is to gallop near the ground, as our *English* horses do.

**RATS-TAILS**, a most venomous disease in horses.

**RAT-TAIL**; a horse is so called when he has no hair upon his tail.

**RAZE**; a horse razes, or has razed, that is, his corner teeth cease to be hollow, so that the cavity where the black mark was, is now filled up.

**REARING an End**, is when a horse rises so high before, as to endanger his coming over upon his rider.

**RECHEAT**, a lesson which huntsmen wind upon the horn when the hounds have lost their game, to call them back from pursuing a counter game.

**RHEUM**, is a flowing down of humours from the head, upon the lower parts.

**RHEUMATIC Eyes in Horses**, are caused by a flux of humours from the brain, and sometimes by a blow.

**REINS**, two long slips of leather fastened on each side the curb or snaffle.

**REMOLADE**, is a less compounded *honey charge* for horses.

## S A C

**RENETTE**, is an instrument of polished steel, with which they sound a prick in a horse's foot.

**REPART**, is to put a horse on, or make him part a second time.

**REPOLON**, is a demi-volt; the croupe is closed at five times.

**REPOSTE**, is the vindictive motion of a horse, that answers the spur with a kick of his foot.

**REPRISE**, is a lesson repeated, or a manege recommended.

**RETTY**, a resty horse, is a malicious unruly horse.

**RETRAITS**, or *Pricks*; if a prick with a nail is neglected, it may occasion a very dangerous sore, and fester so in the flesh, that the foot cannot be saved without extreme difficulty.

**RIBS of a Horse**, should be circular and full, taking their compass from the very backbone.

**RIDGES**, or *Wrinkles of a Horse's mouth*, are the risings of the flesh in the roof of his mouth, which run a-crofs from one side of the jaw to the other.

**RIDGELING**, the male of any beast that has been but half cut

**RIG**, a horse that has had one of his stones cut out, and yet has got a colt.

**RING-BONE in a Horse**, is a hard, callous, or brawny swelling.

**RIVET**, is that extremity of the nail that rests or leans upon the horn when they shoe a horse.

**ROAN**; a *Roan* horse is one of a bay sorrel, or black colour, with grey or white spots interspersed very thick.

**ROPE, Cord, or Strap**, is a great strap tied round a pillar, to which a horse is fastened when we begin to quicken and supple him, and teach him to fly from the chambriere, and not to gallop false.

**ROPES of two pillars**, are the ropes or reins of a cavesson, used to a horse that works between two pillars.

**ROUND**, or *volt*, is a circular tread.

**ROUSSIN**, is a strong, well knit, well stowed horse.

**ROWEL**, the goad or pricks of a spur.

## S.

**SACCADE**, is a jerk more or less violent, given by the horseman to the horse in pulling or twitching the reins of the bridle all on a sudden, and with one pull, and that when



## S I G

a horse lies heavy upon the hand, or obstinately arms himself.

**SADDLE**, is a seat upon a horse's back, contrived for the conveniency of the rider.

**SADDLE-GALL**, when a horse's back is hurt or fretted by the saddle.

**SALLENDERS**, are chops or mangy fores in the bending of the horse's hough.

**SAULTS**, the leaping or prancing of horses, a kind of curvetting.

**SCAB**, or *itch*, a distemper in horses, proceeding from their being over-heated, and corrupt blood.

**SCABBARD**, is the skin that serves for a sheath or case to a horse's yard.

**SCABBED HEELS** *in Horses*, a distemper, called also the *frush*.

**SCATCH-MOUTH**, is a bitt-mouth, differing from a cannon-mouth in this, that the cannon is round, and the other more oval.

**SEAMS**, **SEYMES**, *in Horses*, are certain clefts in their quarters, caused by the dryness of the foot, or by being ridden upon hard ground.

**SEAT**, is the posture or situation of a horseman.

**SEELING**, a horse is said to *seel*, when, upon his eye-brows, there grow white hairs, mixed with those of his usual colour.

**SEVIL** *of the branches of a bridle*, is a nail turned round like a ring, with a large head made fast in the lower part of the branch, called *gargouille*.

**SHAMBRIER**, or *Chambriere*, is a long thong of leather, made fast to the end of a cane or stick, in order to animate a horse, and punish him if he refuses to obey the rider.

**SHANK**, *in a horse*, is that part of the fore-leg, which is between the knee and second joint, next to the foot, called a fet-lock, or pattern joint.

**SHORT-JOINTED**, a horse is said to be short-jointed that has a short pattern.

**SHOULDER** *of a Horse*, is the joint in the fore-quarters that joins the end of the shoulder-blade with the extremity of the fore-thigh.

**SHOULDER-PIGHT** *in a Horse*, is a malady, being the displacing of the point of the shoulder by some great fall, rack, or pain, which may be known by one shoulder-point's sticking out farther than its fellow.

**SHOULDER-PINCHING**, a misfortune that befalls a horse by labouring or straining when too young, or by being over-loaded.

**SIDE**, to ride a horse side-ways, is to passage him, to make him go upon two treads, one of which is marked by his shoulders, and the other by his haunches.

**SIGUETTE**, is a cayeſſon with teeth or

## S O L

norches; that is, a semi-circle of hollow and vaulted iron, with teeth like a saw.

**SINEW**, to *unſinew a horse*, is to cut the two sinews on the side of his head.

**SINEW sprung**, is a violent attaint, or overreach, in which a horse strikes his toe, or hinder-feet, against the sinew of his fore-leg.

**SKITTISH Horse**, is one that leaps instead of going forward, and does not set out or part from the hand freely, nor employ himself as he ought to do.

**SLACK a leg**, is said of a horse, when he trips or stumbles.

**SNAFFLE**, or *small watering bitt*, is commonly a scatch-mouth accounted, with two very little strait branches, and a curb, mounted with a head-stall, and two long reins of *Hungary* leather.

**SNORT**, is a certain sound, that a horse, full of fire, breaths through his nostrils, and sounds as if he had a mind to expel something that is in his nose, and hindred him from taking breath.

**SOLE of a Horse**, is a nail, or sort of horn, that is much tenderer than the other horn that encompasses the foot, and by reason of it's hardness, is properly called the horn or hoof.

**SORRANCES**, maladies incident to horses.

**SPAVIN**, a disease among horses, which is a swelling or stiffness in the hams.

**SPEAR**, the feather of a horse.

**SPLENTS**, a disease in horses, which is a callous, hard, insensible swelling, or a hard gristle, breeding on the shank bone. It spoils, in time, the Shape of the Leg.

**SPUNG** *of a Horse-shoe*, is the extremity or point of the shoe that answers to the horse's heel.

**STARS**, are distinguishing marks in the fore-heads of horses.

**STEP and LEAP**, is one of the seven airs, or artificial motions of a horse.

**STIFLE in a Horse**, a large muscle, or that part of the hind-leg which advances towards his belly, and is a most dangerous part to receive a blow upon.

**STONE-BRUISE**, a misfortune that befalls the cuds of a horse.

**STOP**, is a pause or discontinuation.

**STRAIN**, **SPRAIN**, a misfortune that befalls a horse when his sinews are stretched beyond their due tone.

**STRING-HALT** [*in a Horse*], an imperfection which is a sudden twitching or snatching up of his hinder leg.

**STUD**, a place where stallions and mares are kept to propagate their kind.

**SUMPTER-HORSE**, a horse that carries provisions and necessaries for a journey.

**SOLE of a Horse**, is, as it were, a plate of horn,



T U E

horn, which encompassing the flesh, covers the whole bottom of the foot.

SORREL, is a reddish colour, with which the mane ought to be red or white; it is distinguished, according to the degrees of it's deepness, into a burnt sorrel, and a bright or light sorrel; but, generally speaking, 'tis the sign of a good horse.

SOUND; a horse is such that does not halt.

T.

TEDDER, TETHER, a rope where-with the leg of a horse is tied, that he may graze within a certain compass.

TEETH, are little bones in a horse's jaws, which serve not only to facilitate the nourishment, but likewise to distinguish the age of horses.

TERRA A TERRA, or *terre a terre* is a series of low leaps, which a horse makes forwards, bearing side-ways, and working upon two treads.

TERRAIN, is the managed ground upon which the horse marks his piste or tread.

THIGHS of a Horseman: The effect of the rider's thighs is one of the aids that serves to make a horse work vigorously in the manage.

TICK, an infirmity in an horse, when he presses the edge of the manger with his upper teeth.

TOE *before, and quarter behind*, [*with Farriers*] a rule which they observe in shoeing horses.

TRAMEL, a machine for teaching a horse to amble.

TRANCHE-FILE, is the cross-chain of a bridle that runs along the bitt-mouth from one branch to the other,

TRAVES, a kind of shackles for a horse that is in teaching to amble or pace.

TRAVERSE, a horse is said to traverse when he cuts his tread cross-wise, throwing his croupe to one side, and his head to the other.

TRAVICE, is a small inclosure or oblong quadrangle, placed before a farrier's shop.

TREPINGER, is the action of a horse, who beats the dust with his fore-feet in managing; without imbracing the volt; and who makes his motions and times short, and near the ground, without being put upon his haunches.

TRIP, a stumbling, a false step.

TRUSSED; a horse is said to be well trussed, when his thighs are large, and proportioned to the roundness of the croup.

TUEL; the fundament of a horse.

Z A I

TURN, is a word commonly used by the Riding-Masters, when they direct their scholars to change hands.

TURNING *straight* [*in the Manage*], an artificial motion of a horse.

TUSHES, are the fore teeth of a horse, seated beyond the corner teeth, upon the bars.

TWIST; the inside, or flat part of a man's thigh; upon which a true horseman rests upon horse-back.

TROT, is one of the natural paces of a horse.

V.

VARISSE, [*in Horses*] an imperfection upon the inside of the ham, a little distant from the curb, but about the same height.

To VAULT a shoe, is to forge it hollow, for horses that have high and round soles.

UNITE; a horse is said to unite, or walk in union, when in galloping the hind-quarters follow and keep time with the fore.

VOLT, signifies a round or circular tread.

URINE; a ferous or waterish excrement derived from the blood, which passes from the reins, and is discharged through the bladder.

W.

WALK, is the slowest, and least raised of a horse's goings.

WIND-GALLS, a disease, being bladders full of a corrupt jelly.

WIND-GALL, is a soft swelling, occasioned by over-working, just by the horse's fetlock.

WITHERS of a Horse begins where the mane ends, being joined to, and ending at the tip of the shoulder-blades.

WITHER-WRUNG; a horse is said to be wither-wrung when he has got a hurt in the withers.

Y.

YARD-FALLEN; a malady in a horse which proceeds from want of strength to draw it up within the sheath.

YIELD, is to slack the bridle, and give the horse head.

Z.

ZAIN, is a horse of a dark colour, neither grey nor white, and without any white spot or mark upon him.

F I N I S.















